



**DELHI UNIVERSITY**  
**LIBRARY**

*Presented by*

**SHRI K. M. SHAHANI**

*in Memory of his Father*

**LATE SHRI M S SHAHANI**

*Reader, Faculty of Law*

UNIVERSITY OF DELHI

DELHI UNIVERSITY LIBRARY

Cl. No. P121:7 D3

Ac No. 201837

Date of release for loan

This book should be returned on or before the date last stamped below. An overdue charge of 0.5 nP will be charged for each day the book is kept overtime.

---



DEDICATED, BY PERMISSION, TO  
LORD TENNYSON, POET LAUREATE,  
DCL, 185, &c



# AN ITALIAN CONVERSATION GRAMMAR

COMPRISING THE MOST IMPORTANT RULES OF ITALIAN GRAMMAR, WITH  
• NUMEROUS EXAMPLES AND EXERCISES THEREON, ENGLISH-ITALIAN  
DIALOGUES, HINTS ON ITALIAN VERSIFICATION, AND EXTRACTS  
IN ITALIAN POETRY,  
FOLLOWED BY  
A SHORT GUIDE TO ITALIAN COMPOSITION ,  
ALSO AN ENGLISH-ITALIAN AND ITALIAN-ENGLISH VOCABULARY.

Throughout this Grammar the tonic accent on words is marked in darker  
type, and the proper pronunciations of the letters "E," "O," "B,"  
and "Z," are indicated

By N. PERINI, F.R.A.S.,

*Professor of Italian at King's College, London, and at the Royal College of Music, and at University College, Bristol, and Italian Examiner to the University of London, the Victoria University, Manchester, the Civil Service Commissioners, the Staff College, the Royal Military Academy, Woolwich, and the Society of Arts*

FIFTH EDITION—CAREFULLY REVISED

LIBRAIRIE HACHETTE & C<sup>IE</sup>

LONDON . 18, KING WILLIAM STREET, CHANCING CROSS, W C  
PARIS 79, BOULEVARD SAINT GERMAIN  
BOSTON U S CARL SCHÖNHOF

1903

[ALL RIGHTS RESERVED]



**A KEY.**

*(For Teachers and Private Students only)*

**Price 3s. 6d**

## PREFACE.

IN bringing before the public this grammar, which is arranged in a way different from that generally adopted, I feel it incumbent on me to offer a few words of explanation

I have throughout adhered to the deductive method, that is, I do not set any exercise before the student, except on points previously explained I have always regarded as mischievous the system of setting exercises beyond the knowledge of the student, and in which one-half of the words are translated, these may be called exercises in writing, rather than exercises on grammar, and in doing them the student often loses sight of the very points the grammarian wishes to elucidate

I have made the verb the framework of the whole grammar, as it is impossible to form a sentence without it I have also discarded the usual method of separating Accidence from Syntax, for it seems to me that such a separation has no existence in reality, I have combined the two parts, and gradually introduced the Syntax as I thought its knowledge would be required by the student.

Being convinced, as most people now are, that the best way of learning a foreign language is to translate into it from one's own language, I have added to this grammar a Short Guide to Italian Composition, comprising extracts in English prose, with notes to facilitate their translation into Italian. I have also given some hints on Italian versification, and extracts in Italian Poetry, so that the student may, at an early stage, learn how to read, and, if so disposed, commit to memory some of the



finest verses in the Italian language, and thus acquire a correct Italian accent. I have supplemented the whole with Vocabularies, which will enable the student not only to dispense with any other book for the first lessons, but to find without loss of time the word he wants

The meaning of the letters in darker type, which will be found in many Italian words throughout this grammar, and the directions for the proper pronunciation of the letters "E," "O," "S," and "Z," which is a very important feature in my book, are given in rules 5, 9, 48, 53, and 63

I hope that the improvements I have made in my book will increase the favour I have already received from my colleagues and from the public, and for which I am very grateful

N. PERINI.

KING'S COLLEGE, LONDON

*November, 1895*

#### NOTE BY THE EDITOR.

PROFESSOR PERINI, who died in the early part of 1903, was at the time preparing the copy for the fifth edition of this work. Those corrections and alterations have been adopted, and it is hoped the grammar is now as nearly perfect as possible, and that it will be found of that assistance to students of the Italian language which it was the author's ambition to make it.

*June, 1903*

# TABLE OF CONTENTS.

	PAGE
INTRODUCTION	I
The Alphabet Pronunciation of the Vowels Pronunciation of the Consonants Rules for Dividing Words into Syllables On the Pronunciation of Words The Written Accent The Apostrophe Use of Capital Letters On Reading and Speaking Italian Reading Exercises	
LESSON	
I On the Definite Article	13
On the Propositions, "Di," "A," "Da"	14
II On the Verb, <i>Avere</i> , "to have"	16
III On the Modes of Addressing People in Italian	19
On the Interrogative and Negative Forms of Verbs	20
IV On the Partitive Article	22
On the Indefinite Article	23
V. On the Verb <i>Essere</i> , "to be"	25
On the Verb <i>"Essere,"</i> with "Ci," and "Vi"	27
VI On the Verbs	28
On the First Conjugation in "Are"	29
VII. On the Personal Pronouns	34
On the Conjunctive Personal Pronouns	35
On the Disjunctive Personal Pronouns	38
VIII On the Double Conjunctive Pronouns	40
IX On the Words, "Ci," "Vi," and "Ne"	43
X On the Second Conjugation in "Ere"	46
XI On the Third Conjugation in "Ire"	50
XII On Verbs conjugated Passively	54
XIII On the Neuter Verbs	56
XIV On the Reflective and Reciprocal Verbs	59
XV On the Impersonal Verbs	62
XVI On the Impersonal Verbs expressive of the State of the Weather	65
XVII On the Irregular Verbs	66
XVIII. On the Use of the Definite and Partitive Articles	93
XIX On the Use of the Indefinite Article	97
XX On the Gender and Number of Nouns	99
XXI On the Compound Nouns	109
XXII On the Italian Suffixes	111
On the Collective Nouns	113

LESSON	PAGE
XXIII. On Qualitative Adjectives . . . . .	115
On "Bello," "Grande," "Buono," "Santo," "Tutto," "Mezzo," "Ogni," "Altio," "Molto," "Tanto," &c	117
XXIV On the Formation of Adverbs . . . . .	122
On the Degrees of Comparison . . . . .	123
XXV On the Numeral Adjectives . . . . .	128
XXVI On the Possessive Adjectives . . . . .	132
On the Possessive Pronouns . . . . .	136
XXVII On the Demonstrative Adjectives . . . . .	138
On the Demonstrative Pronouns . . . . .	140
On the Demonstrative Personal Pronouns . . . . .	141
XXVIII On the Relative Pronouns . . . . .	143
XXIX On the Indefinite Pronouns . . . . .	147
On "Niente," "Nulla," "Quanto," and "Per Quanto"	152
XXX On the Infinitive Mood . . . . .	154
XXXI On the Indicative Mood . . . . .	156
XXXII On the Subjunctive Mood, and "Se" . . . . .	161
XXXIII On the Form and Use of Passive Verbs . . . . .	168
XXXIV On "Volere," "Dovere," "Potere," and "Sapere"	171
XXXV On the Negation . . . . .	173
XXXVI On the Past Participle . . . . .	176
XXXVII On the Verbs "Avere," "Essere," "Andare," "Dare," "Fare," "Stare," "Sapere," "Tenere" "Volere," and "Venire" used idiomatically . . . . .	179
XXXVIII On the Adverbs . . . . .	190
On the words "Onde," "Bene," and "Pure"	196
XXXIX On the Prepositions . . . . .	198
XL On the Complements of Verbs . . . . .	205
XLI On the Conjunctions and Interjections . . . . .	209
Transpositions of Words in Italian Sentences . . . . .	212
Italian Idioms and Sayings . . . . .	213
Italian Proverbs . . . . .	215
English-Italian Dialogues . . . . .	216
Titles and Expressions used in Italian Letters . . . . .	222
A Guide to Italian Composition . . . . .	224
Italian Poetry . . . . .	235
English-Italian Vocabulary . . . . .	246
Italian-English Vocabulary . . . . .	259

# ITALIAN GRAMMAR.

## INTRODUCTION

### ON THE PRONUNCIATION AND SPELLING OF THE ITALIAN LANGUAGE

#### THE ALPHABET.

1. The Italian Alphabet consists of the following twenty-one letters —

A, B, C, D, E, F, G, H, I, L, M, N, O, P, Q, R, S, T, U, V, Z.

A, E, I, O, U, are vowels, and the other letters are consonants.

2. The Italian language is very nearly pronounced as it is written. There are no *real* diphthongs in Italian

#### PRONUNCIATION OF THE VOWELS.

3. A is pronounced like the *a*, in *artist* Ex. “*amara*,” *bitter*.

4. E has two different sounds, one like that of the *e* in the English word *emigrant* Ex. “*pena*,” *punishment*, “*fedele*,” *faithful*, the other a broad sound, like that of the *a* in the English word *gate*. Ex. “*balęstra*,” *cross-bow*, “*bella*,” *beautiful*

5. Throughout this grammar a dot is placed under the letter *e*, thus *e*, when it has the broad sound of the *a* in the English word *gate*.

---

6 \* The Letters, K, W, X, Y, are not made use of in spelling Italian words. The letter J was formerly used in spelling many Italian words, but it is now generally discarded, the letter *z*, which has very nearly the same sound as *j* (see rule 7), being used instead.

7. I is pronounced like the *ee*, in *eel*. Ex. "vita" *life*.
8. O has two different sounds, one like that of the *o*, in the English word *vote*, as "fiore," *flower*, "colpo," *blow*, "molto," *much*; the other like that of the *o* in the English word *orphan*. Ex. "oro,"\* *gold*, "corpo," *body*, "tosto," *soon*.
9. Throughout this grammar a dot is placed under the letter *o*, thus *o*, when it has the broad sound of the *o* in the English word *orphan*.
10. U is pronounced like the *oo*, in the English word *moon*. Ex. "uno," *one*, "universo," *universe*, "volume," *volume*.

### PRONUNCIATION OF THE CONSONANTS.

11. The consonants B, D, F, † L, M, N, P, R, ‡ T, § and V, are pronounced in the same manner as in English.

#### PRONUNCIATION OF THE LETTER C.

C, followed by A, O, or U, has a hard sound.

12. CA is pronounced like the *ca*, in *cart*. Ex. "capo," *head*.
13. CO is pronounced like the *co*, in *comet*. Ex. "colombo," *dove*.
14. CU is pronounced like the *cu*, in *cuckoo*. Ex. "cura," *cure*

C, followed by E or I, has a soft sound.

15. CE is pronounced like the *cha*, in *chase*. Ex. "cena," *supper*.
16. CI is pronounced like the *chi*, in *chip*. Ex. "cibo," *food*.

H hardens the sound of C before E and I.

17. CHE is pronounced like the *ca*, in *cake*. Ex. "cheto," *quiet*.
18. CHI is pronounced like the *kee*, in *keep*. Ex. "chiave," *key*.

#### PRONUNCIATION OF SCE, AND SCI.

19. SCE is pronounced like the *sha*, in *shape*. Ex. "scena," *scene*.
20. SCI is pronounced like the *shet*, in *sheep*. Ex. "sciame," *swarm*.

21. \* When there are two or three o's in a word, the second and third always have the same sound as the first. Ex. "oro," *gold*, "cronologia," *chronology*.

22. † The Italians always substitute *f* for *ph*, in words derived from the Greek. Ex. "filosofia," *philosophy*.

23. ‡ Notice that the "r," is pronounced much more emphatically in Italian than in English. Ex. "burro," *butter*.

24. § Notice that in Italian "t" has always the sound of the *t* in the English word *native*, and never the sound of the *t* in the English word *nature*.

## PRONUNCIATION OF THE LETTER G.

G, followed by A, O, or U, is pronounced hard.

- 25 GA is pronounced like the *ga*, in *garden*. Ex. "gabbia," *cage*  
 26. GO is pronounced like the *go*, in *goblet*. Ex. "gola," *throat*.  
 27. GU is pronounced like the *goo*, in *goose*. Ex. "gufo," *owl*.

G, followed by E or I, has a soft sound.

28. GE is pronounced like the *ge*, in *gem*. Ex. "gente," *people*.  
 29. GI\* is pronounced like the *gi*, in *gin*. Ex. "giro," *turn*.

H, hardens the sound of G before E and I.

30. GHE is pronounced like the *ga*, in *gate*. Ex. "leghe," *leagues*.  
 31. GHI is pronounced like the *gi*, in *gunlet*. Ex. "laghi," *lakes*.

## PRONUNCIATION OF GLI.

32. GLI is pronounced like the *lli*, in *postillion*. Ex. "giglio," *lily*.  
 33 Notice, however, that "gh" is pronounced like the *gli*, in *glimmer*, in the words "Anglia," *England*, "anglicano," *Anglican*, "geroglifico," *hieroglyphic*, "negligenza," *negligence*, and in the verb "negligere," *to neglect*

## PRONUNCIATION OF GN.

- 34 GN is pronounced like the *gn*, in *design*. Ex. "agnello," *lamb*.

## ON THE LETTER H

35. H has no sound by itself, and may be considered as an auxiliary letter

36. The principal use of the letter H in Italian is, as already explained in rules 17, 18, 30, 31, to give to the letters *c* and *g* a hard sound, when they are followed by *e* or *i*.

37 H is also used at the beginning of the words "ho," *I have*, "hai," *thou hast*, "ha," *he has*, and "hanno," *they have*, in which words the *h* is retained only to distinguish them from "o," meaning *or*, "ai," *to the*, "a," *to* or *at*, and "anno" *year*. The *h* is further used in the interjections "ah!" "oh!" "ahh!" "ehh!"

38 \* The student should pay great attention to the pronunciation of the letters *c* and *g*, and to bear well in mind that the *z* serves only to soften the sound of *c*, and *z*, in the syllables "cia," "cio," "ciu," "gia," "gio," and "giu," which must be pronounced as *one*, and not as two syllables. Ex. "ciarlare," *to chat*, "ciotto," *pebble*, "ciuffo," *lock of hair*, "giallo," *yellow*, "giorno," *day*, "maggiore," *greater*, "gusto," *just*.

## PRONUNCIATION OF QUA, QUE, QUI, and QUO.

39. QUA\* is pronounced like the *qua*, in *quality* Ex. 'quadro," *picture*  
 40. QUE is pronounced like the *que*, in *question* Ex. "questo," *this*.  
 41. QUI is pronounced like the *qui*, in *quick* Ex. "quanto," *fifth*  
 42. QUO is pronounced like the *quo*, in *quotation*. Ex "quota," *share*.

## PRONUNCIATION OF THE LETTER S.

43. S has two different sounds, a sharp hissing sound, and a soft one.

44. S, at the beginning of a word, and followed by a vowel, has a hard sound, like the *s* in the English word *spirit* Ex. "sito," *sit*

45. S, at the beginning of a word, and followed by one of the consonants *c, f, p, q, t*, has a hard sound, like the *s* in the English word *spirit* Ex. "scanno," *bench*, "sforzo," *effort*, "spia," *spy*, "squadrone," *squadron*, "storpio," *lane*.

46. S, at the beginning of a word, and followed by one of the consonants *b, d, g, l, m, n, r, v*, has a soft sound, like the *s* in the English word *rose* Ex. "sbaglio," *mistake*, "sdegno," *disdain*, "sgabello," *stool*, "sleale," *disloyal*, "smalto," *enamel*, "snello," *nimble*, "sregolato," *disorderly*, "svelare," *to unveil*

47. S, between two vowels, has, as a rule, the soft sound of the *s* in the English word *rose*. Ex. 'sposo," *bridegroom*, "chiesa," *church*, but this rule has numerous exceptions

48. Throughout this grammar a dot is placed under the *s*, thus *ſ*, when it has the soft sound of the *s* in the English word *rose*.

49. When the *s* is doubled it always has a hard, hissing sound. Ex. "rarissimo," *very rare*

## PRONUNCIATION OF THE LETTERS Z AND ZZ.

50. Z has two sounds, one sharp, like that of the *ts* in the English word *wits*. Ex. "zampa," *paw*, "zio," *uncle*, "amicizia," *friendship*, "piudenza," *prudence*, the other sound like that of the letter *z* in the English word *zeal*. Ex. "zelo," *zeal*, "garzone," *youth, waster*.

51 \* Notice that the letter *q*, in Italian, is always followed by *u*

52 ZZ have two different sounds, one like that of the *ts* in the English word *mits*. Ex. "piazza," *square*, "bellezza," *beauty*, "prezzo," *price*, "nozze," *wedding*. "mezzo," *over-ripe*, the other sound like that of the *zz* in the English word *muzzle*. Ex. "dozzina," *dozen*, "orizzonte," *horizon*, "gazza," *magic*, "gazzetta," *gazette*, "mezzo," *muddle, means, half*

53. Throughout this grammar a dot is placed under the *z*, thus *z*, when it has the soft sound of the *z* in the English word *zeal*; and dots are placed under the two *zz*, thus *zz*, when they have the soft sound of the *zz* in the English word *muzzle*.

### RULES FOR DIVIDING WORDS INTO SYLLABLES.

54. (i) One or two consonants at the beginning of a word, followed by one, two, or even three vowels, form a syllable. Ex. "ve-de-re," *to see*, "pre-ga-re," *to pray*, "fic-le," *gall*, "que-to," *quiet*, "scuo-la," *school*. Except when the stress of the voice, or what is called the "Tonic Accent," falls upon one of the vowels, in that case that vowel marks the end of the syllable. Ex. "Dì-o," *God*, "mì-o," *my*.

55 (ii) A consonant between two vowels makes a syllable with the second vowel. Ex. "a-ni-co," *friend*, "o-no-re," *honour*.

56. (iii) When two consonants are in the middle of a word, one of them makes a syllable with the preceding, and the other with the following vowel. Ex. "al-ber-go," *inn*, "ac-cen-to," *accent*. But if the second of the two consonants is either *l*, *m*, *n*, or *r*, the two consonants are united to the following vowel. Ex. "mi-gho," *mule*, "sti-gma," *stigma*, "can-pa-gna," *country*, "ve-dre-mo," *we shall see*

57 (iv) When there are three consonants in the middle of a word, the first of them makes a syllable with the preceding, and the two others with the following vowel. Ex. "om-bra," *shade, shadow*, "sem-pre," *always*.

58 (v) The consonant *s*, with any other consonants which may follow it, always form a syllable with the following vowel. Ex. "que-sto," *this*, "a-spet-to," *aspect*, "vo-stro," *your*. Except in compound words. Ex. "dis-a-gio," *discomfort*, "dis-giun-ge-re," *to unconnect, &c.*

---

\* Notice that the sound of the *e* in "mezzo," meaning *muddle, means, half*, is broad



## ON THE PRONUNCIATION OF WORDS.

"PAROLE PIANE," *flat words*.

59. In pronouncing most Italian words the stress of the voice, or what is called the "Tonic Accent" falls upon the penultimate, or last syllable but one. Ex. "piato," (the stress on the *a*) *meadow*, "felice," (the stress on the *i*) *happy*, "parlare," (the stress on the second *a*) *to speak*, "finivamo," (the stress on the *a*) *we were finishing*, "castello," (the stress on the *e* and the first *l*) *castle*. These words are called "parole piane," *flat words*.

"PAROLE SDRUCCIOLLE," *slippery words*.

60. In some words (perhaps one out of every eighteen) the tonic accent falls on the ante-penultimate, that is to say, on the last syllable but two. Ex. "tavola," *table*, "carcere," *prison*, "docile," *docile*, "vendere," *to sell*, "compravano," *they were buying*, "altissimo," *very high*. These words are called "parole sdruciole," *slippery words*.

"PAROLE BISDRUCCIOLLE," *very slippery words*.

61. In about eighty words (third persons plural of verbs of the first conjugation, see rule 176) the tonic accent falls upon the last syllable but three. Ex. "terminano," *they end*, "rotolano," (21) *they roll*. These words are called "parole bisdruciole," *very slippery words*.

"PAROLE TRONCHE," *curtailed words*.

62. There are besides the "parole piane," "sdruciole," and "bisdruciole," some words which have lost the final syllable, and are therefore called "parole tronche," *curtailed words*. The tonic accent in these words falls upon the last vowel, which is always marked by the grave accent ( ` ), and is strongly pronounced. Ex. "carità" (*caritate*), *charity*, "crede" (*credeo*), *he believed*, "finì" (*finio*), *he finished*, "parlò" (*parlo*), *he spoke*, "virtù" (*virtude*), *virtue*.

## VERY IMPORTANT RULE

63. The way adopted to indicate the "Tonic Accent," throughout this grammar is this. IN ALL THE "PAROLE SDRUCCIOLLE" and "BISDRUCCIOLLE," THE LETTER OR LETTERS UPON WHICH THE STRESS OF THE VOICE SHOULD FALL ARE PRINTED IN DARKER TYPE. No difference is made in the type on "parole piane," and "tronche."

64. \* It is to be observed that the tonic accent in verbs never changes its place when a pronoun, or pronouns are joined to it, so that a "parola piana," by taking a pronoun after it, becomes "sdruciole," and when two pronouns are joined to it, it becomes "bisdruciole." Ex. "vendere," *sell*, "vendete," *sell it*, "vendetelo," *sell it to me*.

## THE WRITTEN ACCENT.

65. There is only one written accent in Italian orthography, namely the grave accent, marked thus ( ` ), and which is written on the final vowel of the "parole tronche" (curtailed words), which have been explained in rule 62, such as "carità," *charity*, "credè," *he believed*, "finì," *he finished*, "parlò," *he spoke*, "virtù," *virtue*.

66. The grave accent is also written on the words "più," *more*, "può," *he or she can*, "già," *already, of course*, "giù," *down, below*, to prevent them being mispronounced

67. Notice that there is no need of writing the accent on monosyllabic words, such as "re," *king*, "fu," (*he*) *was*, "su," *on or upon*, except however on the following monosyllables, to distinguish them from others spelt in the same manner, but written without accent, and which have a different meaning.

È means ( <i>he</i> ) <i>is</i> ,	E means <i>and</i>
Dà means ( <i>he</i> ) <i>gives</i> ,	DA means <i>from, by, &amp;c.</i>
Dì means <i>day</i> ,	DI means <i>of</i> Di' means <i>say (thou)</i>
Là means <i>there</i> ,	LA means <i>thú, (art), and her, it, (pron.)</i>
Lì means <i>there</i> ,	LI means <i>them, (conj. pron.)</i>
Nè means <i>neither and nor</i> ,	NE means <i>of it, us, to us, (pron)</i>
Sè means <i>one's self, (conj. pron.)</i>	SE means <i>if.</i>
Sì (short for <i>così</i> ) means <i>yes</i> ,	SI means <i>one's self, (conj. pron.)</i>
Tè means <i>tea</i> ,	TE means <i>thee, (conj. pron)</i>

68. The grave accent is also used in the following words and a few others to indicate where the stress of the voice should be laid in pronouncing them —

ÀNCORA means <i>anchor</i> ,	ANCÒRA means <i>again, still, yet.</i>
BÀLIA, (f.), means <i>nurse</i> ,	BALÌA, (m.), means <i>magistrate, power.</i>
CÀNONE, means <i>canon, rule</i> ,	CANÒNE, means <i>big dog.</i>
CÙPIDO, means <i>greedy</i> ,	CUPÌDO, means <i>Cupid.</i>
TÈNDINE means <i>tendon</i> ,	TENDÌNE means <i>curtains.</i>

69 \* The vowels over which the grave accent is placed must be pronounced with a broad, emphatic sound

## THE APOSTROPHE.

70. The apostrophe (') in Italian takes the place of a final vowel, preceding a word beginning with another vowel. Ex. "l'albero," instead of "lo albero," *the tree*, "l'anima," instead of "la anima," *the soul*, "gl'insetti," instead of "gli insetti," *the insects*, una "bell' opera," instead of una "bella opera," *a fine work*, un "grand'uomo," instead of un "grande uomo," *a great man*.

71. In a few words the apostrophe takes the place of a syllable. Ex. "un po'," instead of "un poco," *a little*, "me'," instead of "meglio," *better*, "vo'," instead of "voglio," *I will*, "to'," instead of "togh," *take*, "di'," instead of "dici," *say*.

72. It is to be observed that in poetry the apostrophe is sometimes placed before a consonant, in the place of a vowel which has been left out. Ex.

"E'l sospirar dell' aura infra le fronde."	} And the sighing of the breeze among the trees.	
<i>instead of</i>		
"E il sospirar della aura infra le fronde "		
(Petrarca )		

73. All Italian words except "il," *the*, "un," *a or an*, "in," *in*, "per," *for, through*, "con," *with*, "non," *not*, end with one of the vowels *a, e, i, o, u*, and this vowel indicates the gender, number, and verbal inflection of words.\*

## USE OF CAPITAL LETTERS.

74. In Italian the names of the months, the names of the days of the week, and adjectives begin with a small letter, when not at the commencement of a sentence. Ex.

Mi mandò la grammatica fran-	He sent me the French gram-
cese lunedì.	mar on Monday.

75 \* Besides the words given above (in rule 73), which always end with a consonant, the Italians suppress the last vowel, or syllable, in many words, to avoid the monotony which would be produced by the use of too many ending vowels, so that they use "bel," instead of "bello," *beautiful*, "gran," instead of "grande," *great*, "tall," *large*, "san," instead of "santo," *saint, holy*, "buon," instead of "buono," *good*. They also suppress the final vowel in many words, especially in the infinitive of verbs. Ex. "Aver avuto" instead of "Avere avuto," *to have had*, "Parlar francese," instead of "Parlare francese," *to speak French*. There is no rule for these curtailments; the judgment and ear decide.

## ON READING AND SPEAKING ITALIAN.

76. Now that the student is in possession of the rules for the pronunciation of Italian words, he should read aloud to his teacher, and by himself. As far as reading goes, the Italian language is most attractive, it offers no serious difficulty to the English student, who, under the guidance of an able teacher can, after two or three hours' practice, read it far better than an Italian could possibly know how to read English after as many weeks' or months' practice.

77. In reading and speaking Italian, great care must be taken to UTTER THE DOUBLE CONSONANTS *bb, cc, dd, &c*, DISTINCTLY, after having pronounced the first of the two consonants, the voice is kept lingering for a short while, and then the other consonant, with its accompanying vowel, is pronounced. Ex "avieb be," *he would have*, "ec citare," *to excite* (the *cc* sound like the *chi*, in *chicory*, because the *cc* are followed by *i*), "zoc colo," *sandal* (the *cc* sound like *kk*, because the *cc* are followed by *o*), "ad dio," *good-bye*, "ef ficace," *efficacious*, "corag gio," *courage*, "bel lo," *beautiful*, "fum mo," *we are*, "saran no," *they will be*, "cop pa," *nape of the neck*, "tor re," *tower*, "bonis simo," *very good*, "dot to," *learned*, "bev vi," *I drank*, "delicatez za," *delicacy*.

78. The student must also be very careful NOT TO PRONOUNCE THE WORDS SEPARATELY, but RAFLIR TO LET THEM RUN INTO ONE ANOTHER, except, of course, when they are divided by punctuation.

79. The student must also remember that, although the ending vowels indicate the gender, number, and verbal inflection of Italian words, yet, IN READING AND SPEAKING, THE LAST SYLLABLE OF WORDS MUST BE PRONOUNCED SOFTLY, LOWERING THE VOICE, EXCEPT WHEN THE LAST VOWEL IS ACCENTED, in this latter case all the stress of the voice must be laid on the accented vowel, without however leaving any pause between it and the word which follows. Ex "Parlerò a Carlo, e gli (32) dirò la verità," *I shall speak to Charles, and will tell him the truth*. Which must be pronounced as if it were written thus "Parlerò a Carlo, e gli dirò la verità."

80. It is characteristic of the Italians to express a great deal more emphasis than the English in pronouncing phrases in the interrogative and exclamative forms. Ex.

Ha Carlo portato il mio libro?†	Has Charles brought my book?
Che bel cavallo!†	What a beautiful horse!

\* The voice must be gradually raised from the first to the last word in this phrase.

† The emphasis must be increased from the first to the last word in this phrase

## READING EXERCISES.

## EXERCISE I. (ON CA, CO, AND CU.)

Carlo (12) ha (35) trovato il libro nella (77) mia camera (63).  
 Charles has found the book in my room  
 Ho sempre (5) creduto che fosse italiano È (69) vestito come (13)  
 I always thought that he was an Italian He is dressed like  
 mio nipote. Vostro (9) padre non ha cura (14) della sua salute  
 my nephew Your father does not take care of his health  
 La sua tema di mostrarmi il suo tema è ridicola Ci sono quasi  
 His fear of showing me his exercise is ridiculous There are nearly  
 venti nomi di diversi venti Hanno fatto un foro nella porta del  
 twenty names of different winds They have made a hole in the door of the  
 Foro Quando diede il suo voto il Senato era quasi vuoto (21).  
 Forum When he gave his vote the Senate was almost empty

## EXERCISE II. (ON CE AND CI.)

Tua sorella ha una bella voce (15) di soprano Sì, tu dici (16)  
 Your sister has a fine soprano voice Yes, you say  
 la verità (69) Il fanciullo era nascosto (21) nell' armadio. Enrico  
 the truth The child was hidden in the cupboard Henry  
 è un uomo di buona natura Hanno portato la mia cena ? (80)  
 is a good natured man Have they brought my supper?  
 No, non ancora Ora il cielo è sereno Mi piace tanto respirare  
 No, not yet Now the sky is bright I am very fond of breathing  
 l'aria della mattina Nell' autunno (2) l'aurora non è mai molto  
 the morning In autumn the dawn is never very  
 lucente. Ella cominciò (79) a parlare con una certa autorità.  
 bright She began to speak with a certain authority

## EXERCISE III (ON CHE, CHI, SCE AND SCI)

Che (17) bel libro ! (80) Di chi (18) è ? Veramente non saprei  
 What a fine book ! Whose is it ? Really I cannot  
 dirlo, ma credo che sia di Odoardo Le antiche cronache  
 say, but I believe it belongs to Edward Ancient chronicles give  
 istruiscono molto Il vostro fanciullo non ha più (69) paura del  
 much instruction Your child is no longer afraid of  
 mio cane. Dov' è la chiave (18) della mia camera ? Il facchino  
 my dog Where is the key of my room ? The porter  
 l'ha attaccata al chiodo. Mio fratello ha veduto tutte le principali  
 has hung it on the nail My brother has seen all the principal  
 città dell' Europa. La Maria ha scelto (19) un bel colore. Antonio  
 cities of Europe Mary has chosen a beautiful colour Anthony  
 sciupa (20) tutti i suoi abiti. C'erano cento uomini nella miseria.  
 spoils all his clothes There were a hundred men in poverty.

\* Notice that, in nouns and qualificative adjectives, the *e* followed by two *ll* (*ello, ella, ellis, elle*), has always the broad sound of *a* in the word *gate*

\* Notice that the *e* preceded by a *u* has always the broad sound of *o* in the word *orphan*

EXERCISE IV (ON *GA, GO, GU, GE, GI, GHE, GHI* AND *GLI*)

Il gatto (25) guarda (27) sempre la gabbia dell' uccello. Io ho  
 The cat is always looking at the bird's cage I have  
 male alla gola (26) Il generale (28) è un uomo giusto (29),  
 a sore throat The general is a just man, he  
 comprò le ghette (30), e le pagò una ghinea (31). La geografia  
 bought the gaiters and paid a guinea for them Geography  
 e la cronologia (21) sono gli (32) occhi della storia. Guglielmo è  
 and chronology are the eyes of history William is  
 andato nel giardino a cogliere dei fiori Che bel giglio! (80).  
 gone into the garden to gather flowers What a beautiful lily!  
 Ciò accadde al tempo degli dei falsi e bugiardi. Il Lago Maggiore  
 That happened at the time of the false and lying gods Lago Maggiore

EXERCISE V. (ON *GN, QUA, QUE, QUI, AND QUO*)

I miei fratelli hanno viaggiato in Italia e in Francia durante i  
 My brothers travelled in Italy and France during the months  
 mesi di maggio, giugno (34) e luglio. Il postiglione fu molto  
 of May, June and July The postilion was  
 negligente (33) verso la mia famiglia. Chi può sciogliere il  
 very negligent towards my family Who can untie the  
 nodo? (80) Io, ecco l'ho già sciolto. Voglio del caffè di buona  
 knot? I, see I have already untied it I want some coffee of a good  
 qualità (39) Giuseppe ed io siamo stati alla campagna; abbiamo  
 quality Joseph and I have been in the country, we walked  
 camminato tre leghe (30) Questa (40) è la quinta (41) questione  
 three leagues This is the fifth question that my  
 che i miei fratelli hanno avuta insieme. Un sogno di buon augurio.  
 brothers have had together A dream of good omen

EXERCISE VI (ON THE LETTER *S*.)

Questa signora (44) ha molto spirito Abbiamo udito uno  
 This lady is very witty We have heard  
 squillo (45) di tromba. Allo sbocco (40) del fiume l'acqua è molto  
 a trumpet peal At the outlet of the river the water is very  
 turbata. Suo suocero ha mostrato troppo sdegno (46), ciò è uno  
 muddy Your father-in-law has shown too much anger, that is a  
 sbaglio (46). Il prato era smaltato (46) di fiori. Questo giovanotto  
 mistake This meadow was full of flowers This young man is  
 è svelto (46). È venuto a dirmi che ha disegnato il suo quadro  
 active He came to tell me that he has drawn his picture  
 Non è lecito di susurrare in compagnia. Tutto l'edificio risonava |  
 It is not proper to whisper in company The whole building resounded  
 di applausi. Stefano ha disugillato | la mia lettera.  
 with applause Stephen has unsealed my letter.

\* Notice that an *o* followed by two *ts* (*otto otta, otti, otte*), has always the broad sound of *o* in the word *orphan*.

† Notice that an *s* preceded by *ti*, meaning *again*, and *di*, meaning *um*, has the hard sound of *s* in the word *sperit*.

## EXERCISE VII. (ON THE S, SHARP)

Che cosa c'è? La casa del piovano è incendiata. Il riso rallegra.

What is it? The parson's house is on fire. Laughter cheers.  
Mi piace il riso. Ho desiderio di vederlo. Non è così facile di  
I like rice. I wish to see him. It is not so easy to punish  
punirlo. La Giovanna portava una vesta di raso. Egli è molto  
him. Joan wore a satin dress. He is very  
geloso. La sua gelosia gli sarà fatale. Questo Inglese ha  
jealous. His jealousy will be fatal to him. This Englishman has  
sposato una Francese. Abbiamo fatte molte spese.  
married a Frenchwoman. We have incurred a great deal of expense.

## EXERCISE VIII. (ON THE Z, AND ZZ, SHARP)

Vo altero della sua amicizia (50, 53) per me. La bellezza (52, 53)

I am proud of his friendship for me. The beauty  
della natura. Non vanno mai in carrozza. Ho comprato quattro  
of nature. They never go in a carriage. I have bought four  
fazzoletti da naso. Ammiro la sua presenza di spirito e la sua  
pocket handkerchiefs. I admire his presence of mind and  
costanza. Ho incontrato mio zio nella piazza di San Marco, mi  
constancy. I met my uncle in the Square of Saint Mark, he  
ha dato quattro biglietti per le "Nozze di Figaro". Cameriere,  
gave me four tickets for the "Nozze di Figaro". Waiter,  
portatemi una tazza di caffè nero, la zuccheriera, e una scatola di  
bring me a cup of black coffee, the sugar-basin, and a box of  
zolfanelli. Che scherzo! Non voglio questa pera perchè è mezza  
matches. What a joke! I will not have this pear because it is over ripe.

## EXERCISE IX. (ON THE Z, AND ZZ, SOFT)

La Signorina Bianchini ha una bellissima voce di mezzo-soprano

Miss Bianchini has a beautiful light soprano voice.  
"Nel mezzo (53) del cammino di nostra vita" (Dante). La rappre-  
Midway the journey of our life. The repre-  
sentazione dell'opera "La Gazza Ladra" del Rossini durò due ore  
sentation of the opera "La Gazza Ladra" of Rossini, lasted two hours and  
e mezzo. "I Promessi Sposi" del Manzoni (53) è un bellissimo  
a-half. "The Betrothed," of Manzoni is a very beautiful  
romanzo. Egli ha scelto una magnifica statua di bronzo.  
novel. He has chosen a magnificent bronze statue.  
Quest' uomo è molto bizzarro e rozzo, non ha il menomo zelo per il  
This man is very eccentric and rude, he has not the slightest zeal for his  
suo lavoro. L'orizzonte era del colore azzurro del più puro zaffiro.  
his work. The horizon was of the azure colour of the purest sapphire.

\* Notice that the *s* in adjectives ending in *oso*, and words derived from them, is sharp, like the *s* in the word *spirit*.

† Notice that the *s* in adjectives indicating nationality, ending in *ese*, is sharp, like the *s* in the word *spirit*, except in "Francese," *French*, and "Lucchese," *Lucchese*.

‡ Notice that the *s* in nouns ending in *esa*, *ese*, is sharp, like the *s* in the word *spirit*, except in the words "chiesa," *church*, "Agnese," *Agnes*, and a few others.

## LESSON I.

## § 1. ON THE DEFINITE ARTICLE.

81. The definite article *The* is translated into Italian by "il" in the singular, and "i" in the plural, before masculine nouns beginning with a consonant. Ex.

"Il libro," the book, "i libri, the books.

82. *The* is translated by "lo" in the singular, and "gli" in the plural, before masculine nouns† beginning with an s followed by another consonant, or with a z. Ex.

Lo sperone,‡ the spur, gli speroni, the spurs

Lo zingaro, the gipsy, gli zingari, the gipsies.

83. *The* is translated by "lo,"§ or rather "l'" in the singular, and "gli"|| in the plural, before masculine nouns† beginning with a vowel, the "i" of "gli" may be replaced by an apostrophe before a noun| beginning with an "i." Ex.

L'albero, the tree, gli alberi, the trees

L'idolo, the idol, gl'idoli, the idols

84. *The* is translated by "la" in the singular, and "le" in the plural, before feminine nouns| beginning with a consonant. If the feminine noun| begins with a vowel, the *a* in "la" is suppressed and replaced by an apostrophe, the *e* in "le" may be replaced by an apostrophe before a noun† beginning with *e* Ex.

La penna, the pen, le penne, the pens

L'anima, the soul, le anime, the souls

L'elegia†† the elegy, l'elegie, the elegies.

85 \* There are only two genders in Italian, masculine and feminine. Nearly all nouns ending in *o* are masculine, and form their plural by changing *o* into *i*

† Also before adjectives, as it is a question of euphony

86 ‡ Nouns ending in *e* are of both genders, and form their plural by changing *e* into *i*

87 § The only words before which "lo" is used for the sake of euphony instead of "il" are "più" and "meno," in the expressions "per lo più," for the most part, and "per lo meno," at least

88 || The only word before which "gli," "degli," "agli," &c, are used for the sake of euphony instead of "i," "dei," "ai," &c, is "dei," gods Ex.

"Al tempo degli dei falsi e bugiardi" — (Dante).

*During the time of the false and lying gods*

¶ See rule 63, to understand the meaning of the letters in the darker type

89 \*\* Most nouns ending in *a* are feminine, and form their plural by changing the *a* into *e*

†† An *e*, dotted thus *e* has a broad sound, like the *a* in *gate*



## § 2. ON THE PREPOSITIONS "DI," "A," "DA."

## THE PREPOSITION "DI"

90. The preposition "di" corresponds to the preposition *of*. Ex.

Il padrone di questa casa.	The master of this house.
Il regno di Spagna.	The kingdom of Spain.
Il duomo di Milano.	The cathedral of Milan.

91. "D", ' instead of "di," is used before words beginning with an *i*; when the word begins with any other vowel either "di" or "d'" may be used. Ex.

Il regno d' Italia.	The kingdom of Italy
---------------------	----------------------

92. The English possessive case, expressed by 's, as *Peter's book*!, is rendered in Italian by inverting the position of the two words, and placing the preposition "di," between them. Ex.

"Il libro di Pietro"	"Peter's book."
----------------------	-----------------

## THE PREPOSITION "A"

93. The preposition "a" corresponds to the prepositions *to* and *at*. Ex.

Vado a Parigi.	I am going to Paris
Ho parlato a Carlo.	I have spoken to Charles.
Mio padre è a casa.	My father is at home.

94. "Ad" may be used instead of "a," before a word beginning with a vowel, especially before an *a*. Ex.

Sono stato ad Atene.	I have been to Athens.
----------------------	------------------------

## THE PREPOSITION "DA"

95. The preposition "da" is used in the sense of *from*. Ex.

Vengo da Firenze	I come from Florence.
------------------	-----------------------

96. The *a* of "da" is never replaced by an apostrophe in Italian prose. Ex.

È partito da Edimburgo.	He has left Edinburgh.
-------------------------	------------------------

97. The preposition "da" is also used in the sense of *by*, when preceded by a past participle. Ex.

Egli è stimato da tutti.	He is esteemed by everybody.
--------------------------	------------------------------

98. The preposition "da" is also used in the sense of *fit for*, *like*. Ex.

Carta da scrivere	Writing paper.
Egli combattè (69) da eroe.	He fought like a hero.

\* The preposition "da" has also other meanings which the student will find explained further on, pages 201 and 202

99. When "di," "a," "da," and the prepositions "in," "in," "con," *with*, "per," *for*, "su," *on*, and "fra" or "tra," *among*, *between*, are followed by the articles "il," "lo," "la," "l'," "i," "i," "gli," "le," the two words are contracted as shown in the subjoined table —

100.	Di il	into	del,	and	di i	into	dei,*	of the.
	A il	"	al,	"	a i	"	al,	to the
	Da il	"	dal,	"	da i	"	dai,	{ from } the.
	In il	"	nel,	"	in i	"	nei,	{ by } in the.
	Con il	"	col,	"	con i	"	col,	with the.
	Per il	"	pel,	"	per i	"	pei,	for the.
	Su il	"	sul,	"	su i	"	sui,	on the.
	Fra il	"	fral,	"	fra i	"	fral,	among the.
101.	Di lo	"	dello,	"	di gli	"	degh,	of the.
	A lo	"	allo,	"	a gli	"	agh,	to the.
	Da lo	"	dallo,	"	da gli	"	dagli,	{ from } the.
	In lo	"	nello,	"	in gli	"	negh,	{ by } in the, &c.
102	Di la	"	della,	"	di le	"	delle,	of the.
	A la	"	alla,	"	a le	"	alle,	to the
	In la	"	nella,	"	in le	"	nelle,	in the, &c.
103.	Di l'	"	dell,'	"	di gli	"	degh,	of the.
	A l'	"	all,'	"	a gli	"	agh,	to the, &c.

## VOCABULARY.

Il libro,	the book.	Il giardino,	the garden.
Il tema,†	the exercise.	L'albero,	the tree.
La tavola,	the table	Il ramo,	the branch.
La donna,	the woman.	Il pane,	the bread.
Il ragazzo,	the boy.	L'uccello,	the bird
La ragazza,	the girl	La gabbia,	the cage.

## EXERCISE I.‡

The boy's (92) book. The girl's exercise. The branch of the tree. The woman in the garden. The bird in the cage. The woman with the bread. The book on the table. The birds (85) among the branches of the trees. In the boys' gardens

\* Instead of "dei," "ai," "dai," &c., "de'," "a'," "da'," are often used.

104 † There are only a few nouns masculine ending in *a*, they form their plural in *i*. See rule 397

‡ For the numeral adjectives see page 128

## LESSON

## ON THE VERB "AVERE," TO HAVE.

## INFINITIVE MOOD.

PRESENT.		PAST.	
Avere, <i>to have</i> .		Avere avuto, <i>to have had</i> .	
GERUND.*	PAST PARTICIPLE.	PAST GERUND.	
Avendo,† <i>having</i> .	Avuto, <i>had</i>	Avendo avuto, <i>having had</i> .	

## INDICATIVE MOOD

PRESENT.		IMPERFECT.	PAST DEFINITE		
Io ho, ‡	} ha,	Avevo,	Ebbi,	} I had, &c.	
Tu hai,		Avevi,	Avesti,		
Egli, <i>or</i> esso, }		I have, &c.	Aveva, *		Ebbe,
Ella, <i>or</i> essa, §			Avevamo,		Avemmo,
Noi abbiamo,			Avevate,		Aveste,
Voi avete,	} hanno	Avevano *	Ebbero		
Eglino, <i>or</i> essi, }					
Elleno, <i>or</i> essc,					

105 \* The Gerund in Italian always remains invariable. Besides a Gerund, most Italian verbs have a Present Participle, ending in "ente," and "enti," or in "ante," and "anti." *Ex.* "Una finestra avente carta, invece di vetri" (Pellico). *A word which has paper, instead of glass.* But as this form of the verb is seldom used, it is not given in the verbal paradigms, in this grammar.

† The *e*, dotted thus *e*, has a broad sound, like the *a* in *gate*.

106 ‡ As the termination of the verb is sufficient to indicate the person and number of the subject in the sentence, the personal pronouns, used as subjects, are not expressed in Italian, except (*a*)—to avoid ambiguity, (*b*)—when two or more pronouns (used as subjects), are employed in the same sentence, (*c*)—when a particular stress is to be laid on the pronoun, so the Italian for "I have the book," is simply "Ho il libro."

107 § "Io," "egli," "ella," "eglino," "elleno," are used only in speaking of persons, whilst "esso," "essa," "essi," "esse," are employed with reference to persons, animals and things. "Eglino" and "elleno" are becoming obsolete, "essi" and "esse" being used instead of them.

108 || Both the first and the third persons singular of the Imperfect Indicative, of all verbs, formerly ended in *a*, but now the general tendency of Italian writers is to make the termination of the first person in *o*, and that of the third in *i*, by this means it is easier to mark the distinction between the first, and the third person singular, without the aid of the personal pronouns.

109 ¶ The letter *v* in the third persons of the Imperfect Indicative of all verbs, except those of the first conjugation, is often omitted. *Ex.* "avei," "aveano."

PAST INDEFINITE.	PLUPERFECT	PAST ANTERIOR.
Ho avuto, -a-i-e, &c.* <i>I have had, &amp;c.</i>	Avevo avuto, &c. <i>I had had, &amp;c.</i>	Ebbi avuto, &c. <i>I had had, &amp;c.</i>
FUTURE	CONDITIONAL.	IMPERATIVE MOOD
Avrò,	Avrei,	<i>No first person</i>
Avrai,	Avresti,	Abbi, <span style="font-size: 2em; vertical-align: middle;">}</span> <i>Have (thou), &amp;c.</i>
Avrà,	Avrebbe,	Abbia ;
Avremo,	Avremmo,	Abbiamo,
Avrete,	Avreste,	Abbiate,
Avranno ,	Avrebbero.†	Abbiano
FUTURE ANTERIOR Avrò avuto, &c. <i>I shall have had, &amp;c.</i>	CONDITIONAL PAST Avrei avuto, &c. <i>I should have had, &amp;c.</i>	<i>The Past of the Imperative is seldom used</i>

## SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD

PRESENT	IMPERFECT	
Che io abbia,	Che or se io avessi,	}
Che tu abbia,	Che or se tu avessi,	
Che { egli } abbia	Che { or se egli } avesse,	
Che { ella } abbia	Che { or se ella } avesse,	
Che abbiamo,	Che or se avessimo,	
Che abbiate,	Che or se aveste.	}
Che { } abbiano.	Che or se { essi } avessero	
	Che or se { esse } avessero	
PAST.	PLUPERFECT	
Che io abbia avuto, &c. <i>That I may have had, &amp;c.</i>	Che or se io avessi avuto, &c. <i>That or if I might have had, &amp;c.</i>	

110 \* The Past Participle in Italian is variable, it ends in *a*, when it is used in connection with a noun masculine singular, in *a* for the feminine singular, in *i* for the masculine plural, and in *e* for the feminine plural. The rules for the Past Participle are given further on. For the present the student had better to leave it invariable, in *o*.

111 † In poetry "avria" is often used instead of "avrei" and "avrebbe," and "avriano" instead of "avrebbero."

112 ‡ The Italian conditional conjunction "se," *if*, when it precedes a verb used in the present or past tense, is followed by the Imperfect Subjunctive (followed by the Conditional Present), or by the Pluperfect Subjunctive (followed by the Conditional Past). Ex.

Se io avessi del denaro, avrei  
degli amici.

Se io avessi avuto del denaro,  
avrei avuto degli amici

If I had money, I should have  
friends

If I had had money, I should  
have had friends

## VOCABULARY.

Carlo,	Charles.	Maria,*	Mary.
Elsabetta,	Elizabeth.	Guglielmo,†	William.
Enrico,	Henry.	Giovanni,‡	John.
<hr/>			
La lezione,	the lesson	Il dizionario,	the dictionary.
La penna,	the pen	La grammatica,	the grammar
La matita,§	the pencil	Lo (82) scrittoio,	the writing-desk.
La lettera,	the letter.	Il pennello,	the paint-brush
La carta,	the paper	L'uomo,	the man.
Il calamaio,	the ink-stand.	Gli uomini,	the men.
La lavagna,	the slate	La chiave,	the key.
Il temperino,	the penknife	La casa,	the house.
<hr/>			
E, and	Oggi, to-day.	Sotto,	under
Anche, also	Ieri, yesterday	Vicino a,	near to
Già, already	Domani, to-morrow.	Accanto a,	by the side of

## EXERCISE II

1 (106) have the dictionary. Charles has the paper Mary had (Imp Ind) the pen, she had also the grammar We had Henry's (92) writing-desk William and John have the ink-stand. Yesterday Elizabeth had (Imp Ind) the letter and¶ the penknife, she had already had (Pluperf. Ind) the books\*. I shall have the lesson to-morrow William and Charles will have the slate and†† ink-stand. The man has the key of the (102) house The men have had (Past Ind) the books from (95, 96) Henry We have John's paint-brushes in the (101) writing-desk, under the table

113 \* In speaking of women the Italians often put the definite article before their names Ex "La Maria"

† An *e*, dotted thus *e*, has the broad sound of the *a* in the word *gate*

‡ An *o*, dotted thus *o*, has the broad sound of the *o* in the word *orphan*

§ Another word frequently used in Italian for *pencil* is "*lapis*" (the *s* pronounced), written the same in the singular as in the plural

|| See rule 63, to understand the meaning of the letters in the darker type

114 ¶ *Ed*, instead of *e*, may be used before a word beginning with a vowel, for the sake of euphony Ex "Carlo ed io" *Charles and I*

\*\* This word was given in the previous Vocabulary, and, with all the words which occur in the exercises, is contained in the General Vocabulary at the end of this grammar

115 †† In Italian the definite article must be repeated before each noun

## LESSON III

## § 1. ON THE MODES OF ADDRESSING PEOPLE IN ITALIAN.

116. The Italians have three ways of addressing one another; they employ the second person singular, "Tu," *thou*, or the second person plural, "Voi," *you*, or the third person singular, feminine, "Ella," *she*.

117. The second person singular, "tu," is used by parents when they speak to their children, and when husband and wife, brothers and sisters speak to one another. This form is used also when speaking to very intimate friends. *Ex*

Amo la tua conversazione I like your (thy) conversation.

118 In Italian "tu" is further used, as *thou* is in English, in poetry, and sometimes to express anger or scorn towards the person addressed

119. The second person plural "voi," is used by ladies and gentlemen towards their inferiors. It is also employed in commerce. *Ex*

Voi parlate troppo You speak too much.

120 But when the Italians wish to show respect to the person they address (*whether man or woman*) instead of "voi," *you*, they use the third person singular feminine, "ella," *she*, which pronoun in that case stands for "Vostra Signoria" (*your Lordship, or Ladyship*). The words spoken are supposed to be addressed to the title and not to the person. *Ex* 'Ella ha il temperino,' *instead of* "Voi avete il temperino" *You have the penknife*

121 In speaking to more than one person "loro," or "elleno" (see rule 107), *they*, which stand for "le Vostre Signorie," or "lor Signori," or "lor Signore" (*your Lordships, or Ladyships*), are used \*

122 In writing the exercises in this grammar, the student is strongly advised to write as many sentences as he can in the three forms, that is, in the second and third persons singular, and in the second person plural, as explained in rules 117, 119, and 120, thus —

Ha (tu) tuo  
Ha ella mandato il suo quadro all' esposizione ?  
Avete (voi) vostro  
*Have you sent your picture to the exhibition ?*

123 \* All the words in sentences employed in connection with "Ella," "Lei" and "Loro" *should* have the feminine inflection, but many people, ignoring the pronouns ("Ella," "Lei" and "Loro") give to words the masculine or feminine inflection, according as they speak to a woman or a man, to women or men. *Ex*

To a woman	"E Ella stata invitata al ballo?"	} <i>Have you been invited to the ball?</i>
To a man	"E Ella stato invitato al ballo?"	
To women	"Sono Loro state invitate al ballo?"	
To men	"Sono Loro stati invitati al ballo?"	

## § 2. ON THE INTERROGATIVE AND NEGATIVE FORMS OF VERBS

124. In Italian, a verb is conjugated interrogatively, simply by placing the mark of interrogation after it,\* and, in speaking, by raising the voice towards the end of the sentence.† Ex.

Avete il libro di Guglielmo? Have you William's book?

125. A verb is conjugated negatively, by placing the negative particle "non" before it. Ex.

Carlo non ha l'orologio. Charles has not the watch.

126. It is very important to notice that in Italian the Present of the Infinitive is used instead of the second person singular of the Imperative Mood when the verb is used negatively. Ex.

Non avete il cappello. Do not (thou) have the hat.

Non abbia il cappello.

Non abbiate il cappello. } Do not (you) have the hat

127. A verb is conjugated interrogatively negatively, by placing the negative particle "non" before it, and the mark of interrogation at the end of the sentence: in speaking the voice must be raised towards the end of the sentence. Ex.

Non ha ella il libro di Carlo? Have you not Charles' book?

## VOCABULARY.

Il cappello.	the hat.	La sciarpa.	the scarf.
Il cappellino.	the bonnet.	Il giornale.	the newspaper.
L'abito.†	the coat.	Il francobollo.	the postage-stamp.
La vesta,	the dress.	Il danaro.	the money.

Si.	yes.	Ma.	but.	O	either or.
No.	no.	Quando.	when.	Non averò né...né	neither . nor.

## EXERCISE III.

William has Henry's (121) coat. Has Elizabeth the money? Yes. We (120) have neither the newspaper nor the postage-stamp. Have you (122) Charles' grammar? No. I have not (125) the books. When shall we have (124) the dictionary? To-day or to-morrow. Do not have (126) the bonnet, but not to be less.

\* A verb which is not sometimes required to stand with *qualcuno*. Ex. "Havete il libro?" *Avete il libro?*

† When an interrogative sentence begins with an interrogative pronoun or an adverb, the use of the voice in Italian is much the same as in English. Ex. "Perché non avete il libro?" *Why have you not the book?*

‡ See the note on the use of the verb *essere* in the chapter on the verb.

## VOCABULARY.

Mio padre,	my <sup>i</sup> father.	Il loro† nipote,	their nephew.
Mia madre,	my mother	Il signore,	the gentleman.
Tuo fratello,	thy brother.	La signora,	the lady.
Tua sorella.	thy sister	Il mio‡ scolare,	my pupil
Suo figlio,	his or her son	Il tempo,	the time.
Nostro cugino,	our cousin	La canzone,	the song.
Vostro zio,	your uncle	L'inchostro.	the ink.

Gennaio,	January.	Maggio,	May	Settembre,	September.
Febbraio,	February	Giugno,	June	Ottobre,	October.
Marzo,	March	Luglio,	July	Novembre,	November.
Aprile,	April	Agosto,	August,	Dicembre,	December.

Eccolo,	here he is,	Eccoli, m	here they are	Prima di,	before.
Eccola,	here it is,			Dopo,	after.
	here she is.	Eccole, f		Mentre,	whilst

## EXERCISE IV.

My sister has the ink-stand, but she has not (125) the ink Charles has my (131) money My brother has Henry's song. The woman had (Imp Ind) my mother's dress. We had already had (Pluperf Ind) our (129) uncle's letter. Have you (122, 124) the postage-stamp, for the (100) newspaper? Yes, here it is Have you William's exercises (104)? Yes, here they are. Has John my pupil's pens (100, 131)? Yes, here they are. I shall have (the) time for my lesson to-day Their (130) nephew shall have my coat and what after May! We shall not have my father's writing desk before to-morrow We should have had the ink.

129 \* *My, thy, his, her, our, your*, are translated by "mio," "tuo," "suo," "nostro," "vostro," "mia," "tua," "sua," "nostra," "vostra," before names of kindred *in the singular*: Ex "mio padre," *my father*

130 † But before "loro" and when the names of kindred are *in the plural*, the article is used. Ex "Il loro nipote," *their nephew* "I miei fratelli," *my brothers*.

131 ‡ Before any nouns but names of kindred, *my, thy, his, her, our, your*, are translated in the singular by "il mio," "il tuo," "il suo," "il nostro," &c, and in the plural by "i miei," "i tuoi," "i suoi," "i nostri," "i vostri," "i loro" Ex "Il mio scolare," *my pupil*

132 § "Mio," "tuo," &c, "il mio," "il tuo," &c, must be repeated before each noun, when there are several "Ecco qui mia madre e mia sorella," *here are my mother and sister*

|| See rule 74



## LESSON IV.

## ON THE PARTITIVE ARTICLE

133. The partitive articles *some* and *any*, are translated into Italian by "del," "dello," "della," to express *quantity*. Ex.

Ho comprato della carta	I have bought some paper
e dell' inchiostro	and ink.

134. The partitive articles *some* and *any* are translated by "dei," "degli," "delle," to express *number*. Ex.

Gli mandai degli abiti francesi e delle armi inglesi.	I sent him some French clothes and English arms
---	---

135. When *some* means a limited number, it is translated either by "qualche," which is invariable, and is followed by a noun in the singular, or by "alcuno," which agrees in gender and number with the noun to which it refers. Ex.

Vado a comprare qualche libro spagnolo	I am going to buy some (a few) Spanish books.
Non aveva seco che alcuni amici	He only had with him some (a few) friends

136. The partitive articles "del," "dello," "della," "qualche," "alcuno," "alcuni," "alcune," must be repeated before each noun, when there are several. Ex.

Ho comprato della carta e dei libri.	I have bought some paper and books
--------------------------------------	------------------------------------

137. When *some* and *any* are omitted, or could be omitted in English, the partitive articles are omitted, or could be omitted in Italian. Ex.

V'erano uomini, donne, e persino fanciulli.	There were men, women, and even children
Ho veduto in Inghilterra cavalli bellissimi.	I have seen in England very fine horses

138. When in a sentence there is the partitive article "del," "della," &c., in a subsequent sentence referring to it, in Italian, the partitive article must be represented by the pronoun "ne," *some, of it, of them*; and the verb must be repeated in full. Ex.

Ha, or ha ella del denaro?	Have you any money?
Sì, ne ho	Yes, I have.
Avremo dell' acqua?	Shall we have some water?
Sì, ne avremo.	Yes, we shall.

\* An *s* dotted thus *s*, has the soft sound of the *s* in the word *rose*

139. † But when the number is very limited (*few, a few*) *some* is translated by "pochi," *m.*, or "poche," *f*. Ex.  
Egli aveva pochi amici. He had few friends

## VOCABULARY.

L'oro (21), gold.	L'acciaio, steel	Il lottone, brass.
L'argento, silver.	Il ferro, iron.	Lo stagno, tin.
Il platino, platina.	Il rame, copper	Il piombo, lead.

## EXERCISE V.

I have some (133) silver. Has your brother any iron? Yes, he has some iron, (136) copper, and brass. Mary had (Imp Ind) some paper, but she had not any pens. Charles has neither the grammar, nor the dictionary. My father has some money. We have not any ink. Have we any postage-stamps? Yes, we have (138). Yesterday we had (Imp Ind) my uncle's dictionary. Have you (124) any pencils? No, I have not any. Henry and William have money, but John has not any (138).

## ON THE INDEFINITE ARTICLE.

140 The indefinite article *a* or *an* is translated into Italian by "un," before a masculine noun beginning either with a consonant or a vowel. Ex.

Un giorno felice	A happy day
Un uomo amabile	An amiable man.

141. The indefinite article *a* or *an* is translated by "uno" before a masculine noun beginning with an *s* followed by another consonant, or with a *z*. Ex.

Uno scolare diligente	A diligent pupil.
Uno zio ricchissimo.	A very rich uncle

142 The indefinite article *a* or *an* is translated by "una," before a feminine noun beginning with a consonant. Ex.

Una signora francese.	A French lady.
-----------------------	----------------

143 The indefinite article *a* or *an* is translated by "un'," before a feminine noun beginning with a vowel. Ex.

Un'anima sensibile.	A sensitive soul.
---------------------	-------------------

144. When in a sentence there is an indefinite article, "un," "uno," &c, in a subsequent sentence referring to it, the indefinite article preceded by the pronoun "ne" (*of them*), must be repeated, if the answer be in the affirmative, but if the answer be negative "ne" only is expressed, "uno" and "una" being omitted. Ex.

Ha ella un dizionario?	Have you a dictionary?
Sì, ne ho uno. No, non ne ho.	Yes I have. No, I have not.

145 \* But when *a* or *an* are numeral adjectives they are translated by "uno" or "una." Ex.

Ella ha due libri, ma io non ne ho che uno	You have two books, but I have but one
--	--

## VOCABULARY.

L'aria,*	air	Il fuoco,†	fire.	Il fumo,	the smoke.
La luce,	light.	L'acqua,	water.	Il vento,‡	the wind

Un secolo,	a century.	Lunedì, (69)	Monday.
Un anno,	a year	Martedì,	Tuesday.
Un mese,	a month.	Mercoledì,	Wednesday.
Una settimana,	a week.	Giovedì,	Thursday.
Un giorno, di,	a day	Venerdì,	Friday.
Un'ora,	an hour	Sabato,	Saturday.
Un minuto,	a minute.	Domenica,	Sunday.

Una chiesa.	a church.	Una stanza, }	a room.
Un palazzo,	a palace.	Una camera, }	
Una strada,	a street.	La sedia,	the chair.

Perchè ? why	No, mai, giammai, }	never,	Sempre, always.
Perchè, because.	Non (verb) mai,		Subito, at once.
Mai ? ever ?	Spesso, sovente,	often.	Fra poco, very soon.

## EXERCISE VI.

Mary has a pencil We have a writing-desk. Have you (124) ever had a lesson from my (131) master ? Never Charles has never had a penknife When shall I have my dictionary ? Very soon, on Friday, or Saturday (74) To-morrow Elizabeth will have a dress, and Mary will have a bonnet. Henry shall not have my brother's slate Shall we not (127) have some water ? Yes, we shall (138). William, do not (126) have (thou) any (133) fire in your (thy) room to-day. He had (Imp. Ind.) his book on a chair, in my cousin's garden We shall have the book at once.

\* See rule 63, in order to understand the meaning of the letters in the darker type

† Notice that an *o* preceded by a *u* has always the broad sound of the *o* in the word *ophan*

‡ An *e*, dotted thus *e*, has the broad sound of the *a* in the word *gate*

146 § *Master* is translated into Italian by "maestro," when it means a *teacher*, and by "padrone," when it means a *master* (an owner)

147 ¶ *On* is not translated into Italian before Monday, Tuesday, &c., nor before any name of time Ex "Il primo gennaio," *On the first of January*.

148 ¶ The preposition "su," *on*, *upon*, takes an *r* ("sur"), before a vowel, for the sake of euphony Ex

L'ho trovato sur una tavola I found it on a table

## LESSON V

## THE VERB "ESSERE," TO BE

## INFINITIVE MOOD

PRESENT.		PAST.
Essere, <i>to be.</i>		Essere stato, * <i>to have been</i>
GERUND	PAST PARTICIPLE.	PAST GERUND
Essendo, <i>being.</i>	Stato-a-i-e, <i>been.</i>	Essendo stato, <i>having been</i>

## INDICATIVE MOOD.

PRESENT.		IMPERFECT.	PAST DEFINITE.	
Sono,	I am, &c.	Ero, †	Fui,	I was, &c.
Sei,		Eri,	Fosti,	
E, (69)		Era,	Fu,	
Siamo, †		Eravamo,	Fummo,	
Siete,		Eravate,	Foste,	
Sono		Erano.	Furono.	
PAST INDEFINITE		PLUPERFECT	PAST ANTERIOR.	
Sono stato, &c. <i>I have been, &amp;c.</i>		Ero stato, &c. <i>I had been, &amp;c.</i>	Fui stato, &c. <i>I had been, &amp;c.</i>	
FUTURE.		CONDITIONAL	IMPERATIVE MOOD.	
Sarò,	I shall be, &c.	Sarei,	No first person.	
Sarai,		Saresti,	Sii,	Be (thou), &c.
Sarà,		Sarebbe,	Sia,	
Saremo,		Saremmo,	Siamo,	
Sarete,		Sareste,	Siate,	
Saranno.		Sarebbero.	Siano	
FUTURE ANTERIOR		CONDITIONAL PAST.	The Past of the Imperative is seldom used.	
Sarò stato, &c. <i>I shall have been, &amp;c.</i>		Sarei stato, &c. <i>I should have been, &amp;c.</i>		

149 \* Notice that the compound tenses of "essere," are formed by using the same verb as auxiliary, or that its past participle "stato," is variable Ex

Sono stato, or stata (110) a Parigi I have been to Paris

150 † The following forms are often used in poetry "semo," instead of "siamo," "sete," instead of "siete," "fue," instead of "fu," "furo," instead of "furono," "fia," instead of "sarà," "flano," or "flenno," instead of "saranno," "saria," instead of "sarei" and "sarebbe," "sariano," instead of "sarebbero," "fora," instead of "sarebbe" and "sarebbero," "sie," instead of "sia," and "steno" instead of "siano"

† O, "era," see rule 108.

## SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD.

## PRESENT

Che io sia,	} <i>That I may be, &amp;c.</i>
Che tu sia,	
Che [egli] sia ;	
Che siamo,	
Che siate,	
Che [essi] siano,	

## IMPERFECT.

Che or se (i i 2) io fossi,	} <i>That I might be, &amp;c.</i>
Che or se tu fossi,	
Che [or se egli] fosse ,	
Che or se fossimo,	
Che or se foste,	
Che [or se essi] fossero	

## PAST.

Che io sia stato, &c  
*That I may have been, &c.*

## PLUPERFECT

Che or se io fossi stato, &c.  
*That I might have been, &c.*

## VOCABULARY.

Buono,	good	Uno,	1	Primo—a,	I.
Felice,	happy	Due,	2	Secondo—a,	II.
Grande,	tall, large	Tre,	3	Terzo—a,	III.
Piccolo,	small, little.	Quattro,	4	Quarto—a,	IV.
Bello,	beautiful, fine	Cinque,	5.	Quinto—a,	V.
Orgoglioso,	proud.	Sei,	6.	Sesto—a.	VI.

Dove, where	Dentro, within	Lontano, far	Cotesto,   that
Qui, here.	Fuori, without	Questo, this	Quello, ‡ that

## EXERCISE VII

John is tall, but his brother Charles is little. This church is beautiful. Where is Elizabeth? She (106, a) is here. These tables are small, but they are good. Where are Henry and John? They are not (125) here, they are in our uncle's garden. Where shall we be on (147) Thursday? We shall be in our (100, 129) cousin's room. Where have you been (124, 149)? I have been in my brother's room. Will you be here on Wednesday? Yes, I shall be either here, or at my sister's house. Where are my pens? They are in that (152) writing desk. Be (122) good, William, and you will be happy. Do (128, 122, 126) not be proud.

151 \* Adjectives agree in gender and number with the nouns they qualify, those ending in *o*, change the *o* into *a* for the feminine, and form their masculine plural by changing *o* into *i*, and their feminine plural by changing *a* into *e*, as "buono," "buona," "buoni," "buone." Adjectives ending in *e* do not change for the feminine, the plural for both genders is formed by changing the *e* into an *i*, as "felice," "felici."

152 † "Cotesto," "cotesta," &c, mean *that*, near the person spoken to

153 ‡ "Quello," "quella," &c, mean *that*, distant from the speaker, and the person addressed

## THE VERB "ESSERE," WITH "CI" AND "VI."

154. The verb "Essere" is very often employed as an impersonal verb, with the adverbs "ci" and "vi".

INFINITIVE MOOD	{	PRSENT	Esserci, or esservi, <i>to be there or in it, &amp;c</i>	
		PAST	Esserci stato, <i>to have been there, &amp;c.</i>	
		GERUND	Essendoci, <i>being there, &amp;c</i>	
		PAST GER	Essendoci stato, <i>having been there, &amp;c</i>	
INDICATIVE MOOD	{	PRESENT	C'è, or v'è, <i>there is, or there is in it, &amp;c</i> Ci sono, or vi sono, <i>there are, &amp;c</i>	
		IMPERFECT	C'era, or v'era, <i>there was, &amp;c</i> C'erano, or v'erano, <i>there were, &amp;c</i>	
	{	PAST INDEF	C'è stato, or stata, <i>there has been, &amp;c</i> Ci sono stati, or state, <i>there have been, &amp;c</i>	
		FUTURE	Ci or vi sarà, <i>there will be, &amp;c</i> Ci or vi saranno, <i>there will be, &amp;c</i>	
	CONDITIONAL MOOD	{		Ci or vi sarebbe, <i>there would be, &amp;c</i> Ci or vi sarebbero, <i>there would be, &amp;c</i>
INTERROGATIVELY		NEGATIVELY.		
C'è or v'è? <i>is there? &amp;c</i>		Non c'è or v'è, <i>there is not, &amp;c.</i>		
Ci or vi sono? <i>are there? &amp;c</i>		Non ci or vi sono, <i>there are not, &amp;c.</i>		

## VOCABULARY.

Il castello,	the castle	Il salotto,	the parlour
La torre,	the tower.	Il fanciullo,	the child.
Il medesimo,	the same.	Poco, (21) a little	Troppo, too much.
Lo stesso,		Molto, very, much	Troppo poco, too little

## EXERCISE VIII

Charles is the first, I (106 b) am the second, and Elizabeth is the third. My brother's house is too large. Where is Mary? She is in my sister's room. Is there a man in the street? Yes, there is a man and a child. Is there a table in our parlour? No, there are three chairs, but there is no (125) table. There was a small inkstand in my uncle's room. There is too much ink in this pen. Is there a pencil in my brother's writing-desk? No, there are three pens and some paper. There will be a book for the pupil, and a writing-desk for the master (146).

\* "Ci" means *here* and *in it*, "vi" means *there* and *in it*, but the two words are used indiscriminately, "ci" is used oftener than "vi."

## LESSON VI.

## ON THE VERBS.

155. Verbs are of five kinds, Active, Passive, Neuter, Pronominal, and Impersonal, besides the two Auxiliaries, "Avere" and "Essere,"†‡ which have already been given.

156 Verbs are either Regular, Irregular, or Defective §

157 Italian regular verbs are generally classified into three conjugations, which are distinguished by the termination of the Present of the Infinitive Mood

The first ends in ARE, as COMPRARE, *to buy*.||  
 ,, second ,, ,, LRF, as CREDERE, *to believe*.¶||  
 ,, third ,, ,, IRE, as FINIRE, *to finish*.\*\*

158 \* Active Verbs are either Active Transitive, or Active Intransitive

159 An Active Transitive Verb is a verb expressing an action which passes to the object in the sentence, without the help of a preposition In the phrase "Giovanni ha comprato il libro," *John bought the book*, "Giovanni" is the subject, "ha comprato" is the verb, *active transitive*, and "il libro" is the object, called *direct object*

160 An Active Intransitive Verb is a verb expressing an action which passes to the object in the sentence through a preposition In the phrase, "Maria ha parlato a Carlo," *Mary spoke to Charles*, "Maria" is the subject, "ha parlato," the verb, *active intransitive*, and "a Carlo" is the object, in this case called *indirect object*

161 † "Avere" is really an active transitive verb, and "Essere" is really a neuter verb, but they are generally called auxiliary verbs, because the compound tenses of all other verbs are formed with the help of either of them

‡ See rule 63, in order to understand the meaning of the letters in the darker type

§ Page 66 and following contain all the important irregular and defective verbs used in the Italian language, arranged alphabetically

162 || There are altogether about 7,000 verbs in Italian, of which 6,000 are of the first conjugation, and are all regular, like "comprare," *to buy*, except three - "Andare," *to go*, "Dare," *to give*, and "Stare," *to stay, to be in health, to dwell, and to remain*

163 ¶ The second conjugation includes 500 verbs, of which only 60 are regular - of the 440 irregular, 60 end in "ere," long, (*Parole piane*, like "temere," *to fear*), and 380 in "ere," short, (*Parole sdrucciole*, like "Credere," *to believe*).

164 \*\* There are 500 verbs of the third conjugation, in "ire," of these 430 are regular, conjugated either like "Finire," *to finish* (390 of them), or like "Servire," *to serve* (40 of them), - 70 are irregular

## ON THE CONJUGATION OF ACTIVE VERBS.

## MODEL OF THE FIRST CONJUGATION IN "ARE."

"COMPRARE," TO BUY

## INFINITIVE MOOD.

PRESENT.	PAST	
Compr are, to buy.	Aver† compr ato, to have bought.	
GERUND.	PAST PARTICIPLE	PAST GERUND.
Compr ando,‡ buying.	Compr ato-a-i-e,§ bought	Avendo compr ato, having bought

## INDICATIVE MOOD.

PRESENT	IMPLRFECT	PAST DEFINITE	I bought, &c.
Compr o,	Compr avo,	Compr ai,	
Compr i,	Compr avi,	Compr asti,	
Compr a,	Compr ava,	Compr ò;	
Compr iamo, ¶	Compr avamo,	Compr ammo,	
Compr ate,	Compr avate,   ¶	Compr aste,	
Compr ano.	Compr avano.	Compr arono *	
PAST INDEFINITE.	PLUPERFECT	PAST ANTERIOR	
Hò comprato, &c. I have bought, &c.	Avevo comprato, &c. I had bought, &c.	Ebbi comprato, &c. I had bought, &c.	

165 \* A verb consists of two parts, the root which is invariable, and the termination, which varies to indicate mood, tense, person and number. In the verb "comprare," "comp" is the root, and "are" the termination.

166 † The compound tenses of *all* active verbs are formed with "aver."

‡ The Present Participle of "comprare" (see rule 105) is "comprante," seldom used. The Present Part of "parlare" is "parlante," of "amare," "amante," and so of all the verbs of the first conjugation.

167 § The Past Participle of active transitive verbs remains invariable, that is to say it ends in *o*, when the *direct object* in the sentence follows it. Ex. "Hò comprato tre libri" *I have bought three books*. But when the *direct object* precedes the past participle, the latter is variable. Ex. "Feco i libri che hò comprati" *Here are the books I have bought*.

168 The Past Participle of active intransitive verbs always remains invariable. Ex. "Ci hanno parlato" *They spoke to us*.

|| *O*, "comprava," see rule 108.

169 ¶ In poetry "compraro" is often used instead of "comprarono," in the same way "parlaro," instead of "parlarono," *they spoke*, "andaro," instead of "andarono," *they went*, &c.



FUTURE	CONDITIONAL	IMPERATIVE MOOD.
Compr erò,	Compr erei,*	<i>No first person.</i>
Compr erai,	Compr eresti,	Compr a, <span style="float: right;"><i>Buy</i></span>
Comprerà,	Compr erebbe,	Compr i;
Compr eremo,	Compr eremmo,	Compr iamo,
Compr erete,	Compr ereste,	Compr ate,
Compr eranno	Compr erebbero	Compr ino.
FUTURE ANTERIOR	CONDITIONAL PAST	<i>The Past of the</i>
Avrò comprato, &c	Avrei comprato, &c	<i>Imperative is</i>
<i>I shall have bought, &amp;c</i>	<i>I should have bought, &amp;c.</i>	<i>seldom used</i>

## SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD.

PRESENT	IMPERFECT.
Che io compr i,	Che <i>or se</i> (112) io compr assi,
Che tu compr i,	Che <i>or se</i> tu compr assi,
Che [egli] compr i,	Che [ <i>or se egli</i> ] compr asse,
Che compr iamo,	Che <i>or se</i> compr assimo,
Che compr iate,	Che <i>or se</i> compr aste,
Che [essi] compr ino	Che [ <i>or se essi</i> ] compr assero
PAST.	PLUPERFECT
Che io abbia comprato, &c	Che <i>or se</i> io avessi comprato, &c
<i>That I may have bought, &amp;c</i>	<i>That I might have bought, &amp;c</i>

## IMPORTANT REMARKS.

170. Verbs ending in "care," and "gare," as "peccare," *to sin*, and "pregare," *to pray*, require an *h* after the *c* and *g*, when followed by *e* or *i*, because the *c* and *g* are to be pronounced hard throughout the conjugation. Ex "pecco," "pecchi," "pecca," "pecciamo," &c ; "prego," "pregli," "prega," "preghiamo," &c.

171. Verbs ending in "ciare" and "giare," as "scacciare," *to drive away*, and "mangiare," *to eat*, drop the *i* before another *i*, or an *e*, as "scaccerò," &c ; "mangerai," &c

172. Verbs ending in "iare," as "odiare," *to hate*, retain the *i* in the root when the termination is marked by one *i* only. Ex "odio," "odii," "odia," "odiamo," &c

173. Verbs ending in "gnare," as "regnare," *to reign*, omit the *i* of the termination of the first person plural of the Present Indicative. Ex "regno," "regni," "regna," "regnamo," &c.

174. \* In poetry "comprerai" is often used instead of "comprerei," and "comprerebbe," and "compreriano" instead of "comprerebbero," in the same way "parlerai," instead of "parlerei" and "parlerebbe," &c

## REGULAR VERBS OF THE FIRST CONJUGATION.

Alloggiare,	to lodge	Licenziare,	to dismiss
Amare,	to love, to like	Migliorare,	to improve
Augurare,*	to augur, to wish.	Minacciare,	to threaten.
Baciare,	to kiss	Mirare,	to gaze, to look at.
Ballare,	to dance.	Pesare,	to weigh.
Biasimare,	to blame.	Portare,	to carry.
Caricare,	to load	Predicare,	to preach.
Cercare,	to look for	Privare,	to deprive
Coniugare,	to conjugate.	Raccontare,	to relate.
Disprezzare,	to despise	Rispettare,	to respect
Disputare,*	to dispute.	Rubare,	to steal
Evitare,*	to avoid	Scappare,	to escape.
Fumare,	to smoke	Scherzare,	to joke
Giudicare,*	to judge	Spaventare,	to frighten
Guadagnare,	to earn	Sperare,	to hope.
Guardare,	to look.	Stampare,	to print
Guastare,	to spoil	Stimare,	to esteem
Imparare,	to learn	Stracciare,	to tear.
Ingannare,	to deceive	Tagliare,	to cut.
Mendicare,*	to beg.	Trascurare,	to neglect.
Meritare,*	to merit	Volare,	to fly.

175. The following verbs, and about thirty more, have two past participles, a long one, which expresses an action, and an abbreviated one, which is a kind of adjective —

Adattare,	to adapt.	adattato, and adatto.	} Particles.
Adornare,	to adorn	adornato, and adorno.	
Avvezzare,	to accustom.	avvezzato, and avvezzo	
Caricare,	to load.	caricato, and carico.	
Saziare,	to satiate, satisfy	saziato, and sazio	
Svegliare,	to wake up	svegliato, and sveglio.	

Ex. Ho caricato il mio schioppo      I have loaded my gun.  
 Il mio schioppo è carico.      My gun is loaded.

176. \* The "Tonic Accent" in all the regular verbs of the first conjugation is the same as in "Comprare," but in the verbs in the list above, marked with an asterisk (\*), and in about seventy more, the three persons in the singular of the Present Indicative, Imperative, and Subjunctive are "sdruciole," and the third persons plural of the same tenses are "bisdruciole." Ex

Auguro,	augur,	augura;
Auguriamo,	augurate,	augurano.

## VOCABULARY

L' Inghilterra,	England	Inglese,	Englishman, English
La Francia,	France	Francese, (48)	Frenchman, French
La Germania,	Germany	Tedesco.	German
L' Italia,	Italy.	Italiano,	Italian
La Spagna,	Spain.	Spagnuolo,	Spaniard, Spanish

La situazione, the situation. La porta, l'uscio, the gate, door  
 Questa città, this town, city. La lingua, tongue, the language

Facile, easy Politico, political.  
 Difficile, difficult. Commerciale, commercial

NOTE.—In this and the following exercises the verbs are given in the Present of the Infinitive Mood, it is left to the student to put them in the proper mood, tense, number, and person

## EXERCISE IX

I do (128) not (125) find (a) the Italian language difficult. William speaks (b) French,† but does not speak German I am buying‡ some (134) books for my brother I blame (c) my sister, because she was listening (d) at the door Shall you (117—122) vote (e) to-morrow? Yes John found§ this letter on (148) a chair, in my brother's room. I have sent (f) Henry's Spanish grammar to my mother. Charles always¶ studies (g) in our uncle's garden We admire (h) the situation of this town I have left (i) William's book on my writing-desk Elizabeth will play, (j) I (106, b) shall sing, (k) and Charles will draw (l).

(a) Trovare. (b) Parlare (c) Biasimare. (d) Ascoltare (e) Votare (f) Mandare (g) Studiare (h) Ammirare. (i) Lasciare (j) Suonare. (k) Cantare. (l) Disegnare

177 \* Adjectives indicating shape, colour, and nationality are put after the noun they qualify, in Italian Ex La lingua italiana The Italian language

178 † English, French, &c, meaning the English, the French language, &c, are also translated by ' l'inglese,' ' il francese,' &c, or ' la lingua inglese,' ' la lingua francese,' &c

179 ‡ The English expressions "I am buying," "She was listening," "I shall be writing," &c, are translated into Italian as if they were "I buy," "she listened" (Imp Ind), "I shall write," &c

180 § Translate as if it were "has found," because, in Italian, when the time at which an action occurred is not stated, the verb must be put in the Past Indefinite

181 || "Semplice," always, and "mai," ever, never, are generally placed after the verb.

## VOCABULARY

L' Europa,	Europe.	Europeo, '	European.
L' America,	America	Americano,	American.
La Scozia,	Scotland	Scozzese,	Scotchman, Scotch.
L' Irlanda,	Ireland	Irlandese,	Irishman, Irish

La sottoveste,	the waistcoat	Ieri sera,†	last night
Il mondo,	the world	Un quadro,	a picture
Una scoperta,	a discovery	La larghezza,	the breadth.
Una rivoluzione,	a revolution	La lunghezza,	the length
La riunione,	the meeting	Una ciliegia,	a cherry
Una regola,	a rule.	Dell' uva,	some grapes
Il pianoforte,	the pianoforte	Del vino,	some wine
Questa mattina,	this morning	Dell' acquavite,	some brandy

## EXERCISE X

I have bought two Italian (177) books, one (145) for Henry, and one for William. You (106 b) were dining (179) (a), whilst I was studying. Mary will embroider (b) a waistcoat for my father. The discovery of (the) America caused (c) (Past Def) a revolution in the commercial world. When I entered (d)† the room he was working (e). Did you speak (Past Def) at the meeting last night? No, I did not (125) speak (Past Def). I shall explain (f) (170) this rule this evening. I shall have built (g) my house before October (74). Measure (h) (122) the length and (115) breadth of this room, before buying the pianoforte. We shall preserve (i) these cherries with (in the) brandy. If (112) I had money, I would buy this picture.

- (a) Pranzare (b) Ricamare (c) Cagionare (d) Entrare.  
(e) Lavorare (f) Spiegare. (g) Fabbricare (h) Misurare (i) Conservare

\* Notice that in the terminations "co," "ea," "ci," and the *e* has the broad sound of *a* in the word *gate*.

182 † "Sera" means *evening*. "Ieri sera" means *yesterday evening*. *Last night*, meaning the night time, is translated by "Questa notte," or "La notte passata."

183 † "Entrare," *to enter*, is a neuter verb, and is always followed by "in." Ex. Entrai nel teatro alle sei. I entered the theatre at six o'clock.

184 § All prepositions (except "dopo," *after*,) in Italian are followed by the Infinitive Present, or Past. Ex.

Prima di andare a Parigi. Before going to Paris.

Prima di aver parlato. Before having spoken.

185 The preposition "dopo," *after*, is always followed by the Past of the Infinitive. Ex.

Partirò dopo aver parlato. I shall start after having spoken.

## LESSON VII.

## ON THE PERSONAL PRONOUNS.

## PERSONAL PRONOUNS USED AS SUBJECTS' OF VERBS.

186. The personal pronouns are translated into Italian as follows —

Io,	<i>I</i>	Noi,	<i>We</i>
Tu,	<i>Thou.</i>	Voi,	<i>You</i>
Egli, <i>Ei, or</i> Esso, <i>He, it</i> †	m. Essi <i>or</i> Eglino, } <i>They, you</i> (121).		
Ella <i>or</i> Essa, <i>She, it, you</i> (120).			
	f. Esse <i>or</i> Elleno, }		

187. The pronouns "egli," "ella," "egolino," and "elleno," are used only in speaking of persons, whilst "esso," "essa," "essi," and "esso," are often employed with reference to persons, animals, and things, and are used both as the subjects and objects of verbs "Eglino" and "elleno" are becoming obsolete, "essi" and "esse" being used instead of them Ex

Egli parla francese	He speaks French
Ei non sapeva che fare del pane che gli gettavo (Pellico.)	He did not know what to do with the bread I threw him
Essi andarono a Parigi	They went to Paris.

188. As the termination of the verb in Italian, is sufficient to indicate the person and number of the subject in the sentence, the personal pronouns, "Io," "Tu," "Egli," &c, are not expressed, except (a)—when two or more nouns or pronouns are used as subjects in the same sentence, (b)—in the present and imperfect tenses of the Subjunctive Mood, to avoid ambiguity, (c)—when a particular stress is laid on the pronoun Ex

Mentre io scrivo questa lettera,	Whilst I write this letter, you
voi preparerete i miei baui	will prepare my trunks.
Se io parlassi, sarei ruinato.	If I spoke, I should be ruined.
Io parlo quando bisogna	I do speak when it is needful.

189. The personal pronouns "io," "tu," "egli," &c., are sometimes accompanied by "stesso," "stessa," or "medesimo," "medesima," &c, *self*, to express emphasis. Ex.

L'ho scritto io stesso (*or* medesimo), I wrote it myself

190 \* A noun, or pronoun is called the *subject* of a verb when it represents the person or thing which does, or receives the action expressed by the verb Ex

Pietro agisce bene, egli è stimato Peter acts well, he is esteemed  
In which sentence "Pietro" is the subject of "agisce," and "egli" of "è stimato"

191 † There is no neuter gender in Italian, therefore the pronoun *it* must be translated into Italian by a masculine or feminine pronoun

## PERSONAL PRONOUNS USED AS OBJECTS OF VERBS.

## THE CONJUNCTIVE PERSONAL PRONOUNS.

192. When there is only one pronoun used as a direct,\* or as an indirect† object, in the same sentence, the English pronouns *me*, *thee*, *him*, etc., and *to me*, *to thee*, *to him*, etc., are translated as follows —

DIRECT OBJECTS		INDIRECT OBJECTS	
Mi,	<i>me</i>	Mi,	<i>to me.</i>
Ti,	<i>thee.</i>	Ti,	<i>to thee</i>
Lo or esso,	<i>him or it (191)</i>	Gli,	<i>to him.</i>
La or essa,	<i>her, you (120) or it</i>	Le,	<i>to her, you or it</i>
Si,	<i>{ himself, herself,</i> <i>{ itself or themselves</i>	Si,	<i>{ to himself, to herself,</i> <i>{ to itself or to themselves.</i>
Ci or ne,‡	<i>us.</i>	Ci or ne,‡	<i>to us</i> [ves.
Vi,	<i>you</i>	Vi,	<i>to you.</i>
Li or essi,	<i>them, mas.</i>	(A) Loro or gli,§	<i>to them, mas.</i>
Le or esse,	<i>them, fem.</i>	(A) Loro or le,	<i>to them, fem.</i>

## THE CONJUNCTIVE PERSONAL PRONOUNS PLACED BEFORE THE VERB.

193 The pronouns given above ARE, AS A RULE, PLACED BEFORE THE VERB Ex

Egli mi parlò con rispetto.	He spoke to me with respect.
Non ci hanno mai invitati	They never invited us.
Gli parlerò domani	I shall speak to him to-morrow.

194 \* A noun, or pronoun is called the *direct object* of a verb when it represents the person, or thing which receives the action of the verb directly, that is, without passing through a preposition Ex

Egli chiamò Carlo e me I he called Charles and me

In the sentence above "Carlo" and "me" are the *direct objects* of "chiamò"

† A noun, or pronoun is called the *indirect object* of a verb when it represents the person, or thing which receives the action of the verb indirectly, that is, through a preposition Ex "Egli mi parlò," *he spoke to me*

In the sentence above "mi" (a me) is the indirect complement of "parlò"

195 ‡ "Ne" is sometimes used instead of "ci," *us*, and *to us* Ex

L'amicizia tua ne piace (Tasso) Your friendship pleases (to) us.

196 § Notice that instead of "a loro," or "loro," in modern Italian, "gli" (mas.), and "le" (fem.), are often used Ex

Non gli (or le) presterei del denaro I would not lend them money

197 || In many cases in which, according to rule 193, the conjunctive personal pronoun ought to precede the verb, it is placed after it, and joined to it, to give force to the language If the verb ends with an accented vowel, as "mandò," *he or she sent*, the consonant of the pronoun, except the *g* of "gli," is doubled, and the accent suppressed. Ex

Essa guardavami sovente.	She often looked at me.
Egli mandommi a Milano	He sent me to Milan

N B —It is much better for the *beginner* to follow rule 193

## THE CONJUNCTIVE PERSONAL PRONOUNS PLACED AFTER THE VERB.

198 The conjunctive pronouns "mi," "ti," "gli," &c, ARE PLACED AFTER THE VERB, AND JOINED TO IT (that is why they are called Conjunctive Pronouns), when they are used with verbs in the Infinitive, used Affirmatively, in which case the final "e" of the Infinitive is dropped. Ex

Mio padre desidera di mandar- My father desires to send me  
mi a Venezia. to Venice.

199 The conjunctive pronouns "mi," "ti," "gli," &c, are placed after the Gerund, used Affirmatively, and joined to it. Ex.

Essa lo calmò parlando- She calmed him by speaking to  
con molta bontà him very kindly.

200 The conjunctive pronouns "mi," "ti," "gli," &c., are placed after the Past Gerund, and joined to it, in which case the auxiliary, "avendo" or "essendo," is omitted, and the Past Participle alone is expressed, and is variable | Ex

Pagatimi (used instead of Having paid me for the books,  
avendomi pagato) i libri, he went away  
andò via.

Adagiata(essendosi) adagia- Having seated herself on the  
ta) sulla sedia, essa narrò le chair, she narrated her ad-  
sue avventure. ventures

201. The conjunctive pronouns "mi," "ti," "gli," &c, are placed after the second person singular, and the first and second persons plural of the Imperative, used affirmatively, and are joined to them. Ex.

Parlami ora caro fratello Speak to me now, dear brother  
Mandateci|| un mazzo di fiori. Send us a bunch of flowers.

202 \* When the Infinitive (see rule 126) and the Gerund are preceded by a negative, the pronouns are *sometimes* put before the verb. Ex

Non ti scordar di me Do not forget me  
Non gli piacendo la stanza As he did not like the room.

203 † Notice that this rule of leaving out "avendo" or "essendo" in the Past Gerund holds good whether there is a pronoun or not. Ex

Comprato (avendo comprato) il Having bought the horse, he went  
cavallo, andò via away

204 ‡ Notice that in the compound tenses of reflective verbs (see page 59) "essere" is used

205 § When the Imperative is used negatively, the Conjunctive Pronouns precede the verbs, according to rule 193. Ex

Non mi parlare ora, caro fratello Do not speak to me now, dear brother.

206 || Here the student is reminded that, instead of "voi," *you*, the Italians very often use "l'ella," *you or Lordship or Ladyship* (see rule 120); in which case the pronouns precede the verbs, according to rule 193. Ex

Ci mandi un mazzo di fiori Send us a bunch of flowers

## VOCABULARY.

Londra, London.	Firenze, Florence.	Glasgovia, Glasgow.
Parigi, Paris	Dublino, Dublin	Napoli, Naples.
Roma, Rome.	Venezia, Venice.	Genova, Genoa.

Federico, Frederick	Giacomo, James.	Margherita, Margaret.
Giorgio, George.	Filippo, Philip.	Luigia, Louisa.
Odoardo, Edward.	Giuseppe, Joseph.	Francesca, Frances.

Il caffè, coffee.	La crema, cream.	Il burro, butter.
Il tè, tea.	L'olio, oil	Lo zucchero, sugar.
Il latte, milk	L'aceto, vinegar.	La cioccolata, chocolate.

## EXERCISE XI.

Where did you (120, 122) buy (have you bought) this coffee? I bought it (192, 193) in<sup>1</sup> London Does (128) Edward speak Italian? Yes, he does † Where did you study (have you studied) the French language? I studied (have studied) it in France. Has Louisa sent to-day's newspaper to my father? Yes, she sent (has sent) it this morning. Charles always speaks to me (193) when he meets (a) me My father taught (b) us yesterday, and will teach us to-day My mother never (non. mai, 181) sends us (193) here I shall not speak to him (193) to-day. Have you bought any sugar? Yes, I have (138, 208) George has made me (193) a present of (c) some Italian books. If (112) they had any (133) money, they would send (to) him some tea and (136), bread.

(a) Incontrare. (b) Insegnare (c) Regalare (to make a present of)

207 \* The prepositions *in* and *to* are translated into Italian by "a," before the name of a town, and by "in" before the name of a continent, an empire, a kingdom, a duchy, or a province Ex

Andò a Parigi, in Francia

He went to Paris, in France

208 † In answering a question, the verb contained in the question, and not merely the translation of "I do," "he does," "it does," "I have," "he did," "I will," &c., must be expressed in the answer, in Italian, and the verb must be in the same tense as in the question, and if there is a noun in the question, that noun also must be represented in the answer by a pronoun, agreeing in gender and number with the noun it represents Ex

Giovanni, parla il tedesco? Sì, lo parla Does John speak German? Yes, he does

209 The above rule holds good also when "I do," "I did," "I have," &c., have reference to a previous verb in the sentence Ex

Avevo promesso di portare il mio orologio, I had promised to bring my watch,  
e l'ho portato, and I have brought it.



## THE DISJUNCTIVE PERSONAL PRONOUNS

210 When in the same sentence there are more than one direct (195) or more than one indirect (196) objects, relating to different persons or things, or when they desire to lay a particular stress on the object in the sentence, the Italians place the following personal pronouns after the verb, but not joined to it—that is why they are called Disjunctive Personal Pronouns

DIRECT OBJECTS (195)		INDIRECT OBJECTS (196)	
Me,	<i>me</i>	A me,	<i>to me.</i>
Te,	<i>thee.</i>	A te,	<i>to thee.</i>
Lui or esso,	<i>him or it</i> (191)	A lui or a esso,	<i>to him or it</i>
Lei or essa,	<i>her, you or it</i>	A lei or a essa,	<i>to her, you or it</i>
Sè,	<i>{ himself, herself,</i> <i>{ itself or themselves.</i>	A sè,	<i>{ to himself, herself</i> <i>{ to itself or themselves.</i>
Noi,	<i>us</i>	A noi,	<i>to us</i>
Voi,	<i>you</i>	A voi,	<i>to you</i>
Loro or essi,	<i>them, mas</i>	(A) loro or a essi,	<i>to them, mas</i>
Loro or esse,	<i>them, fem.</i>	(A) loro or a esse,	<i>to them, fem</i>

## EXAMPLES

Il generale parlò a me, ma The general spoke to me, but  
non parlò a mio nipote he did not speak to my nephew  
Parlo a Lei, Signore, perchè I speak to you, Sir, why  
non mi risponde? do you not answer me?

211. Notice that in the case explained in rule 210, "gh" and "le" (see rule 195) could not be used instead of "a loro" Ex.

Manderò un libro a lui, e a I shall send him a book,  
loro manderò del denaro. and some money to them

212 Notice that not only "a" *to*, but all the other prepositions "di," *of*, "da," *from*, "con," *with*, "per," *for*, *through*, &c, are used to form the indirect objects of verbs, but, as they always follow the verb, they offer no difficulty to the student. Ex

Carlo parlerà per me Charles will speak for me  
Vuol ella venir con me? † Will you come with me?  
Partì con loro ‡ He went away with them

213 \* Instead of "per me," "per te," "per lui," and "per lei," &c, the conjunctive forms "mi," "ti," "gli," and "le," &c, are used with such verbs as "fare," *to do*, *to make*, "fabbricare" *to build*, "dipingere," *to paint*, &c, when the sentence contains also a direct object Ex

Gli (per lui) fabbricarono una casa. They built him (for him) a house

214 † "Meco," "teco," "seco," are sometimes used instead of "con me," "con te," "con sè" Ex Vuol ella venir meco? *Will you come with me?*

215 ‡ Formerly the pronoun "esso," (invariable) was sometimes used pleonastically before "lui," "lei," "loro" Ex

And u con esso loro (D'Areglio) I went along with them

## VOCABULARY.

Il marmo, marble	Il mattone, brick	Il cristallo, crystal.
La pietra, stone.	Il legno, wood	Il vetro, glass.
Paolo, Paul	Stefano, Stephen	Carlotta, Charlotte.
Andrea, Andrew.	Antonio, Anthony	Maddalena, Madeline.
<hr/>		
La statua, the statue.	Il fazzoletto, the handkerchief	
La testa, the head	Uno (141) specchio, a looking-glass	
Gli occhi, the eyes	Un leggio, a reading-desk.	
I capelli, the hair	Carta sugante, blotting-paper	
Il braccio, the arm	Ceralacca, sealing-wax	
La mano, the hand	Un acquarello, a water-colour	
Il dito, the finger	Mio suocero, my father-in-law	
Il piede,* the foot	Mia cognata, my sister-in-law.	
L'anello, the ring	Vostro genero, your son-in-law	

## EXERCISE XII.

I condemned (a) (Past Def) him, and I pardoned (b) my (129) brother. Paul always (181) speaks of himself (212). Charlotte (113) spoke to me (210), but she did not speak to my (130) sisters. I speak to you (210), why do (128) you not answer? You never pay attention (c) to me. He always speaks of me, but I never speak of him. They sent (Past Def) a reading-desk to me (210), and a marble statue to my (146) master. Stephen will speak for me. They built him (213) a marble palace. Madeline has sent a gold ring to William, and a small water-colour to my sister-in-law. She sent (180) also a beautiful looking-glass to my sister. I shall place (d) the picture before her ;

(a) Condannare (b) Perdonare a (c) Badare a † (d) Posare

\* Notice that the *e* in the diphthong *se* (except in the suffixes "etto," &c.), has the broad sound of *a* in the word *gate*

216 † "Badare" is always followed by a disjunctive personal pronoun Ex  
Badate a me Pay attention to me  
You could not say "Badatemi"

217. ‡ When the prepositions "davanti," "dinanzi," "innanzi," *before*, "didietro," "dietro," *behind*, "incontro," *against*, "sopra," "disopra," *on, upon, above*, "sotto," "disotto," *under, below*, are used with a conjunctive personal pronoun, they are placed at the end of the phrase Ex.

Gli ando incontro

He went against him

## LESSON VIII.

## ON DOUBLE CONJUNCTIVE PRONOUNS.

218. When two conjunctive pronouns are governed by the same verb, and one is a "direct" and the other an "indirect object," the "indirect" precedes the "direct object," and the *z* of "mi," "ti," "ci," "vi," is changed into *z*. When these pronouns come before the verb, they are written separately, but when they are placed after the verb, they are written together, and joined to it. Ex

Me lo prestò Guglielmo	William lent it to me
Me li ha comprati mio zio	My uncle bought them for me.
Egli vuol vendercelo oggi.	He will sell it to us to-day
Me lo, <i>ov</i> mel* disse ieri sera	He told it to me last night.

See rule 201 { Dammelo, }  
 { Me lo dia, } Give it to me  
 { Datemelo, }

219. When the pronoun "gli," *to him*, is followed by the pronouns "lo," "la," "li," "le," and "ne," instead of changing the final *z* into *z*, like the other conjunctive pronouns (see rule 218), it takes an *e* after the final *z*, and forms one word with the relative pronoun. Ex

Glielo presterò, ma non posso darglielo †	I will lend it to him, but I cannot give it to him.
Mi ha promesso di mandarglieli questa sera. †	He promised that he would send them to him this evening

See rule 201 { Mandaghelo, † }  
 { Glielo mandi, † } Send it to him.  
 { Mandateglielo, † }

220. Notice that, for the sake of euphony, "glie" is also used for the feminine instead of "le," when followed by "lo," "la," "li," "le," and "ne." Ex.

Maria desiderava i fiori, ed io glieli ho mandati. †	Mary wished for the flowers, and I sent them to her
--	---

221. In Italian an answer must contain the noun expressed in the question, or a pronoun in its stead, and the verb must be repeated in the answer. Ex.

Ha ella preso la mia ombrella ?	Have you taken my umbrella ?
No, non l' ho presa.	No, I have not.

222 \* "Mel," "tel," "cel," "vel," are often used instead of "me lo," "te lo," "ce lo," "ve lo"

223. † It is important to notice that "gli" in this sentence might mean either *to him*, or *to her* (and consequently *to you*, see rule 120), or *to them* (see rule 211), but the sense of the sentence, in the context, always helps to clear up the ambiguity

## VOCABULARY.

Dio, Iddio,	God	Il sole,	the sun.
Il cielo,	Heaven, the sky,	La luna,	the moon.
La terra,	the earth	Le stelle,	the stars
Mio caro amico,	my dear friend	Un regalo,	a present
Il giorno di nascita,	the birthday	Un album,	an album
Questo pericolo,	this danger.	Il popolo,	the people
Ora, adesso,	now	Volontieri,	willingly.

## EXERCISE XIII

Speak to me (201) now, because I shall not have time to-morrow He was speaking (179) to his master (146) when you called (a) (Past Def) him When will you send her (192, 193) the pictures? I will send them to her (219, 220) this evening. Do not forget (b) (125, 126) Will you help (c) me, (192) my dear friend? Yes, willingly, I will not abandon (d) you in this danger Will (224) you lend (e) me your penknife? Yes, I will (208). Shall you send him a present for his birthday? Yes, I shall send him an album. I have brought (f) Henry's books to† show (g) them to you (122, 218) They ordered (h) him to (226) speak to the people

(a) Chiamare (b) Dimenticare (c) Aiutare (d) Abbandonare.  
(e) Prestare. (f) Portare (g) Mostrare (h) Comandare

224 \* When *will, would, shall* and *should* are distinct verbs of themselves (not mere auxiliaries) they are translated into Italian by "Volere" or "Dovere." Ex.

Vuol' ella darmi una rosa? Will you give me a rose?

N B—The Present Indicative of "volere," *to be willing*, should be studied at once, it is given on page 91

225 † When the preposition *to* means *in order to*, it is translated into Italian by "per" or "onde" Ex

Sono venuto per (or onde) parlarle I have come to speak to you

226 The verbal prefix *to* is translated into Italian by "di," when it is preceded by an adjective, or a past participle (except "pronto," *ready*, "disposto," *disposed*, "prono," *inclined*, "preparato," *prepared*), and a verb expressing an idea of rest or state Ex

Sono decisi di andare a Venezia They have decided to go to Venice.

227 The verbal prefix *to* is translated into Italian by "a," when it is preceded by a verb expressing motion, or "pronto," "disposto," "prono," and "preparato" Ex

Venga a trovarmi fra due mesi Come to see me in two months' time

## FURTHER REMARKS ON THE PERSONAL PRONOUNS.

228. "E'" is sometimes used instead of "egli," "esso," and "essi." Ex

Picchia anche lì e aspetta, He also knocks there and waits,  
e' poteva aspettare. (Manz) and he might wait  
Cortesemente domandò chi, Courteously he asked who they  
e' fossero (Boccaccio) were

229 "Desso," "dessa," "dessi," "desse," are elegantly used instead of "esso," "essa," &c., with the verbs "essere," and "parere" Ex

Quegli è desso, lo conosco It is he, I know him

230. "Egli," or simply "gli," and "e'" are sometimes used as "npieni," that is pleonastically, they correspond to the English neuter pronoun *it* Ex

E s'egli è ver che tua potenza And if it be true that thy power  
sia nel cielo (Petrarca) is in heaven

E' risica d'essere una gior- It risks to be a day worse than  
nata peggio di ieri (Manz) yesterday

231 Instead of the subjective pronouns "io," "tu," "egli," "ella," "essi," and "esse," the objective pronouns "me," "te," "lui," "lei," and "loro" are used after the words "ma," *but*, "anche," *also*, "come," *as*, "siccome," *as*, "quanto," *as much as*, "nemmeno," *not even*, &c, for the sake of euphony, and in other cases solely for the purpose of giving more prominence to the pronoun Ex

Ma Lei non mi scrive mai But you never write to me

Si levò anche lui il cappello He also took off his hat

Lèi è ricca, ma io son povero. You are rich, but I am poor

Lè parole che dicono loro van- The words which they say fly  
no via e spariscono (Manz) away and disappear.

232 Sometimes, in the colloquial style, "la," and "le," are used instead of "ella" and "esse" Ex

La c'è, l'ho trovata! (Manz.) She is there, I found her!

Le son tutte qui (Manz) They are all here.

233 When several verbs govern the same pronouns, the latter are generally repeated with each verb. Ex.

Gli\* amiamo e gli stimiamo We love and esteem them

234 "Non lo" is often contracted into "nol" Ex.

Egli nol disse a nessuno He did not tell it to anybody.

235 "Il" in poetry, is sometimes used instead of "lo" Ex

Oimè! bene il conosco (Tas) Alas! I know him well

236 Notice that before a verb beginning with a vowel, or an *s* followed by another consonant, "gli" is used instead of "li"

## LESSON IX.

## ON THE WORDS "CI," "VI," AND "NE"

237. Besides being used as conjunctive personal pronouns (see rules 192, 197), "ci," "vi," and "ne," are used as relative pronouns, and as adverbs

238 "Ci" and "vi," used as relative pronouns, signify *of it, of them, about it, about them, to it, to them, for it, for them, in it, in them* Ex.

Non indovinerai, se ci pensassi I could not guess it, if I thought  
un anno. a year about it.

Questo quadro mi va a genio, I like this picture very much, I  
ci ho fatto fare una bella have had a fine frame made  
cornice for it

Ci ho dato una mano di vernice. I have given it a coat of varnish.

239. When "ci" and "vi" are used as adverbs, they always refer to an antecedent, "ci" means *here*, and "vi" means *there*.<sup>\*</sup> Ex.

Francesco viene qui tutte le Francis comes here every morn-  
mattine, e ci sta fino alle ing, and stays till eight o'clock  
otto della sera. in the evening

Non sono mai stato in Italia, I have never been to Italy, but  
ma faccio i conti d'andarvi I intend to go there this  
questa primavera. Spring

240. "Ne," used as a relative pronoun, means *some, any, of it, of them, concerning (or about) him, her, it for it, for them, from it, from them*. As stated already (rule 138) in an answer, "ne" must always be expressed in Italian (although *some, any, of it, of them, &c*, are seldom expressed in English), and the verb, in the answer, must also be expressed in full. Ex

Ha ella per caso qualche libro Have you perchance any Italian  
italiano da prestarmi? books to lend me?

Sì, ne ho due o tre, e gheli pre- Yes, I have two or three, which  
sterò volentieri. I shall be very glad to lend you.

Sono certo che le piace la I am certain that you are fond  
musica, perchè ne parla sem- of music, for you are always  
pre speaking about it.

Vado ai bagni di mare ogni I go to the sea-side to bathe  
anno, e ne derivo sempre mol- every year, and I always de-  
to bene. rive great benefit from it.

241 \* For the sake of euphony "ci" is sometimes used instead of "vi" Ex  
Andateci, e vi troverete Carlo Go there, and you will find Charles



## VOCABULARY.

Unorologio, (21)	a clock	Questo paese,	this country.
Il mio oriuolo,	my watch.	Alla campagna,	into the country.
Una rosa,*	a rose.	Casa di campagna,	country house
Il frutto,	the fruit.	Questo canestro,	this basket.
Un ombrello,	an umbrella.	Un errore,	a fault
Un ombrellino,	a parasol	Uno sbaglio,	a mistake.
Un porta-lapis,	a pencil-case.	Alla posta,	to the post.

Rosso,	red.	Verde,	green	Bianco,	white.
Turchino,	blue.	Giallo,	yellow	Nero,	black.

## EXERCISE XIV

I have brought my exercise to (225) show it to you (122, 218), you will find few (139) faults in it (238) Henry has brought (167) us (192, 193) a basket of roses. I should not have spoken to her, if I had thought (a) of it (238) Before speaking to us, (210) speak to my father He was speaking to us, (179, 192, 193) when they called (Past Def) him into the garden Have you an English watch? Yes, I have (144). If I had thought of it, I should never have lent him my pencil-case. When will you take (b) these letters (89) to the post? I will take them (there) (239, 243) at once, if you will (224) lend me your umbrella Have you spoken to William? No, I have not, (208) but I will speak to him when I have time Why did (128) you burn (c) (Past Indef.) that (152) letter? I burnt it (167) by mistake. Have you paid (d) for your parasol? No, but I will pay for it when Henry returns (e)

(a) Pensare. (b) Portare. (c) Abbruciare (d) Pagare. (e) Ritornare

\* An *s* dotted thus *s*, has the soft sound of the *s* in the word *rose*

248 † *To think of* is translated by "pensare a" "Pensare di," means *to have an opinion about* Ex

Che pensa di questo poema? What do you think of this poem?

249 ‡ A verb preceded by the adverbs *when, as soon as, &c*, indicates a future time, therefore the future, and *not* the present tense, must be used in Italian Ex

Scrivèrò quando avrò il tempo I shall write when I have time

250 § When a *common* noun begins with an *s*, followed by another consonant, and is preceded by "per," *by, through, "in," "in, into, "con, with, and "non," no, not,* an *s* is put before the *s* for the sake of euphony, as "Per *sbaglio,*" *by mistake*

251 || *For* is not translated into Italian, after the active verbs *to pay, to buy, to sell, to ask, to look, to wait, to wish*



## LESSON X.

## MODEL OF THE SECOND CONJUGATION IN "ERE."

"CREDERE," TO BELIEVE

## INFINITIVE MOOD.

PRESENT.		PAST.
Cred ere, <i>to believe.</i>		Aver cred uto, <i>to have believed</i>
GERUND.	PAST PARTICIPLE.	PAST GERUND.
Cred endo, <i>believing</i>	Cred uto-a-i-e, <i>believed</i>	Avendo cred uto, <i>having believed</i>

## INDICATIVE MOOD.

PRESENT.	IMPERFECT.	PAST DEFINITE
Cred o,	Cred evo,	Cred ei, <i>or etti,</i>
Cred i,	Cred evi,	Cred esti,
Cred e,	Cred eva,	Cred è, ette,
Cred iamo,	Cred evamo,	Cred emmo,
Cred ete,	Cred evate,	Cred este,
Cred ono.	Cred evano.	Cred erono, <i>or ettero</i>

PAST INDEFINITE	PLUPERFECT	PAST ANTERIOR
Ho creduto, &c.	Avevo creduto, &c.	Ebbi creduto, &c.
<i>I have believed, &amp;c.</i>	<i>I had believed, &amp;c.</i>	<i>I had believed, &amp;c.</i>

## FUTURE.      CONDITIONAL.      IMPERATIVE MOOD

Cred erò,	Cred erei.	<i>No first person</i>
Cred erai,	Cred eresti,	Cred i,
Cred erà,	Cred erebbe;	Cred a;
Cred eremo,	Cred eremmo,	Cred iamo,
Cred erete,	Cred ereste,	Cred ete,
Cred eranno.	Cred erebbero.	Cred ano.

FUTURE ANTERIOR.	CONDITIONAL PAST.	<i>The Past of the</i>
Avrò creduto, &c.	Avrei creduto, &c.	<i>Imperative is</i>
<i>I shall have believed, &amp;c.</i>	<i>I should have believed, &amp;c.</i>	<i>seldom used.</i>

\* Notice that the *e* in the gerundial termination *endo*, has always the broad sound of the *a* in the word *gate*

## SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD

PRESENT.	IMPERFECT.
Che io cred a,	Che <i>or</i> se (112) io cred essi,
Che tu cred a,	Che <i>or</i> se tu cred essi,
Che [egli] cred a ,	Che <i>or</i> se [egli] cred esse ;
Che cred iamo,	Che <i>or</i> se cred essimo,
Che cred iate,	Che <i>or</i> se cred este,
Che [essi] cred ano ,	Che <i>or</i> se [essi] cred essero.
PAST	PLUPERFECT.
Che io abbia creduto, &c	Che <i>or</i> se io avessi creduto, &c.
<i>That I may have believed, &amp;c</i>	<i>That or if I might have believed, &amp;c.</i>

That or if I might believe, &amp;c

## POETICAL FORMS

252 In poetry "credereia" is often used instead of "crederei," and "crederebbe" and "credereiano" instead of "crederebbero"; in the same way "temereia," instead of "temerei" and "temerebbe," &c

253 In poetry "credéro" is often used instead of "credarono," in the same way "teméro" instead of "temarono," &c.

## REGULAR VERBS OF THE SECOND CONJUGATION.

Assistere, (a)	to assist	Precedere, i	to precede
Cedere,	to yield	Premere,	to press.
Dipendere,	to depend	Procedere,	to proceed
Eccedere,*	to exceed	Resistere, (e)	to resist.
Fendere, (b)	to split	Ricevere, i	to receive
Fremere,*	to rage	Risolvere, (f)	to resolve
Gemere,	to groan	Spandere,	to shed.
Godere,	to enjoy	Splendere,	to shine.
Mescere, (c)	to pour out.	Temere,	to fear
Pascere, (d)	to feed.	Vendere,	to sell

254. \* Those verbs in the above list, marked thus, \* form their Past Definite either in *ei*, or in *etti*, as "cedei," or "cedetti," "cedesti," "cedè," or "cedette"; "cedemmo," "cedeste," "cederono," or "cedettero." But all the others have only the termination *ei*

- (a) The Past Participle of "Assistere" is "assistito"  
 (b) "Fendere" is "fesso"  
 (c) "Mescere" is "mesciuto"  
 (d) "Pascere" is "pasciuto"  
 (e) "Resistere" is "resistito"  
 (f) "Risolvere" is "risoluto"

## VOCABULARY.

Il generale,	the general.	La vista,	the sight
Il colonello,	the colonel	Il Natale,	Christmas
Un soldato,	a soldier	La Pasqua,	Easter
Un ordine,	an order	Il medico,	the doctor
Una fortezza,	a fortress	Questo dono,	this gift
Il presidio,	the garrison.	La sua salute,	his health
Un cannone,	a cannon	La confidenza,	confidence
Un fucile,	a gun	Qual pegno di,	as a mark of
Il campanello,	the bell	Una volta,	once.
La folla, calca,	the crowd.	Due volte,	twice.

Signore, { Mr.  
          { Sir.

Signora, { Mrs  
           { Madam

Signorina, { Miss  
              { Madam

## EXERCISE XV

I receive (a) letters from Mr. James. The soldiers have received the general's order. My sister enjoys (b) good health in this country. He groans (c) at the sight of the doctor. Receive (122) this gift as a mark of my confidence. Believe me, (201, 122) general, we shall beat (d) them (236). Who (chi) is knocking at (e) (179) the door? Charles, he has already knocked twice, and rang (f) the bell. The cannon beat down (g) (180) the fortress. I have received a letter from my father, he thinks (h) (che) that he will be in London before Christmas. I have sold (i) my (131) country-house to Mr. John. Yesterday he lost (j) his umbrella in the crowd. We have resolved (k) to yield (l) to him (198).

(a) Ricevere. (b) Godere. (c) Gemere. (d) Sconfiggere. (e) Battere, or Bussare a. (f) Suonare. (g) Buttar giù. (h) Credere. (i) Vendere. (j) Perdere. (k) Risolvere di. (l) Cedere a.

255 \* In speaking or writing to people, the words Mr, Sir, are translated by "Signore" (plural "Signori"), Mrs, Madam, by "Signora" (plural "Signore"), Miss, by "Signorina" (plural "Signorine"). But in speaking or writing about persons Mr, Sir, &c, are translated by "il Signore," "il Signor," "la Signora," "la Signorina," "le Signorine," "le Signore." When "Signore" is followed by the name of the person referred to, the *e* is omitted. Ex.

Il Signor John ha ricevuto una lettera dalla Signora James. Mr. John has received a letter from Mrs. James.

I Signori John sono amici delle Signorine James. Messrs. John are friends of the Misses James.

256 † The Italians, out of politeness, use the words Signor and Signora before titles, dignities, and names of rank, when they address a person equal or superior to themselves. Ex. "Caro Signor Marchese," *Dear Marquis*.

## VOCABULARY.

Il fiore,*	the flower.	Questa capra,	this goat.
Una fragola,	a strawberry	La montagna,	the mountain.
Questo bicchiere,	this glass.	La notizia,	the news.
La mia volontà,	my will.	La bellezza,	the beauty
Fortificazioni, f.	entrenchments	La freschezza,	the freshness.
Il tumulto,	the turmoil	Il suo successo,	his success.
Il mio pensiero,	my thought.	Un'impresa,	an undertaking.
<hr/>			
Contento,	glad.	Insieme,	together.
Valorosamente,	bravely.	Tutto,	everything.
Quietamente,	quietly.	Ad onta di,	in spite of.
Che cosa ?	what ?	Per piacere,	if you please.

## EXERCISE XVI.

What does (128) this woman sell ? She sells (134-137), fruit (fruits) and flowers, yesterday she sold me some beautiful roses, and some good strawberries. Who will succeed him (192, 193) in the business ? † I think (I believe) § his brother Edward will succeed him. He and his sister have left London, and are enjoying the beauty of the country, and the freshness of the air. She shudders (a) at the thought of meeting (b) (184, 198) him. Do you believe the news (260) he told us ? (c) No, I do not believe it (193). It does not depend upon (d) my sister. The French fought (e) bravely within the (102) entrenchments. The goats browse (f) quietly on the mountains in spite of the turmoil of (the) men (uomini). I shall never forget (g) the happy days (260) we have enjoyed (167) together. Everything will depend upon the success of the undertaking. Shall I pour you out (to pour out) (h) a glass of wine, Mr John ? Yes, if you please.

(a) *Fremere*. (b) *Incontrare*. (c) *Raccontare*. (d) *Dipendere da*.  
(e) *Combattere*. (f) *Pascere*. (g) *Dimenticare*. (h) *Mescere a*.

257 \* Nouns ending in *e*, in the singular, form their plural by changing the *e* into *i*, as "il fiore," plural "i fiori."

258 † When *to succeed* means *to take the place of*, it is translated by "*Succedere a*," but when it means *to be successful*, it is translated by "*Riuscire*."

259 ‡ *Business* is translated by "*Affare*," or "*Affari*," when it means *concern*, *affairs*; but it is translated by "*Negozio*," when it means *shop*, *trade*.

260 § In Italian the conjunction "*che*," *that*, and the relative pronoun "*che*," or "*il quale*," &c., *that*, or *which* cannot be omitted before the personal pronoun. *Ex.*

Credo ch' egli sia a Vienna  
Le notizie che ci ha recate

I believe (that) he is in Vienna.  
The news (that) he brought us.

## LESSON XI.

## MODEL OF THE THIRD CONJUGATION IN "IRE."

## "FINIRE," TO FINISH

## INFINITIVE MOOD

PRESENT.		PAST.
Fin ire, <i>to finish.</i>		Aver fin ito, <i>to have finished.</i>
GERUND	PAST PARTICIPLE.	PAST GERUND.
Fin endo, <i>finishing.</i>	Fin ito-a-i-e, <i>finished.</i>	Avendo fin ito, <i>having finished.</i>

## INDICATIVE MOOD

PRESENT.		IMPERFECT.	PAST DEFINITE.	
Fin isco,	} <i>I finish, &amp;c.</i>	Fin ivo, (108)	Fin ii,	} <i>I finished, &amp;c.</i>
Fin isci,		Fin ivi,	Fin isti,	
Fin isce,		Fin iva,	Fin ì, *	
Fin iamo,		Fin ivamo,	Fin immo,	
Fin ite,		Fin ivate,	Fin iste,	
Fin iscono.		Fin ivano.	Fin irono.	
PAST INDEFINITE		PLUPERFECT	PAST ANTERIOR.	
Ho finito, &c., <i>I have finished, &amp;c.</i>		Avevo finito, &c., <i>I had finished, &amp;c.</i>	Ebbi finito, &c., <i>I had finished, &amp;c.</i>	
FUTURE		CONDITIONAL.	IMPERATIVE MOOD.	
Fin irò,	} <i>I shall finish, &amp;c.</i>	Fin irei, '	<i>No first person</i>	
Fin irai,		Fin iresti,	Fin isci,	} <i>Finish (thou), &amp;c.</i>
Fin irà ;		Fin irebbe, *	Fin isca,	
Fin iremo,		Fin iremmo	Fin iamo,	
Fin irete,		Fin ireste,	Fin ite,	
Fin iranno.		Fin irebbero *	Fin iscano.	
FUTURE ANTERIOR.		CONDITIONAL PAST.	<i>The Past of the</i>	
Avrò finito, &c. <i>shall have finished, &amp;c.</i>		Avrei finito, &c. <i>I should have finished, &amp;c.</i>	<i>Imperative is seldom used.</i>	

261 \* In poetry "finlo" is sometimes used instead of "finì," "finiro" instead of "finirono," "finirli," instead of "finirei" and "finirebbe" and "finiranno," instead of "finirebbero."

## SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD.

## PRESENT

Che io* fin isca,	} <i>That I may finish, &amp;c.</i>
Che tu fin isca,	
Che [enli] fin isca,	
Che fin iamò,	
Che fin iate,	
Che [enli] fin iscano	

## IMPERFECT.

Che or se (112) io fin issi,	} <i>That or if I might finish, &amp;c.</i>
Che or se tu fin issi,	
Che or se [enli] fin isse,	
Che or se fin issimo,	
Che or se fin iste,	
Che or se [enli] fin issero.	

## PAST.

Che io abbia finito, &c.  
*That I may have finished, &c.*

## PLUPERFECT.

Che or se io avessi finito, &c.  
*That or if I might have finished, &c.*

## LIST OF VERBS CONJUGATED LIKE "FINIRE."

Abbellire,	to embellish.	Indebolire,	to weaken.
Abolire,	to abolish.	Inferocire,	to become ferocious.
Aderire,	to adhere.	Inghiottire,	to swallow.
Agire,	to act	Inorgogliare,	to become proud.
Apparire,	to appear.	Intenerire,	to touch, move.
Ardire,	to dare	Invaghire,	to enchant, charm.
Arrossire,	to blush.	Maicire,	to rot.
Colpire,	to strike	Munire,	to furnish.
Condire,	to season.	Patire,	to suffer.
Conferire,	to confer	Profferire,	to proffer.
Differire,	to differ, delay.	Progredire,	to progress.
Digerire,	to digest.	Proibire,	to prohibit.
Eseguire,	to execute.	Pulire,	to clean.
Esibire,	to offer	Riverire,	to reverence.
Garantire	to guarantee.	Sbigottire,	to disconcert.
Guanire,	to cure	Schernire,	to despise.
Impallidire,	to turn pale.	Sparire,	to disappear
Impaurire,	to frighten.	Starnutire,	to sneeze.
Impazzire,	to become mad.	Stupire,	to astonish.
Impedire,	to hinder	Suggerire,	to suggest.
Incivilire,	to civilize, polish	Svanire,	to vanish.

\* An o, dotted thus o, has the broad sound of the o in the word *orphan*.

ON VERBS CONJUGATED LIKE "SERVIRE," TO *SERVE*.

262 As already stated in rule 164, most verbs in "ire" (390 out of 500) are conjugated regularly like "Finire." But there are a few (about 40) which are conjugated like "Servire," to *serve*. These differ from "Finire" in the Present Indicative, Imperative, and in the Present Subjunctive, as is shown in the appended paradigm —

INDICATIVE MOOD PRESENT	IMPERATIVE MOOD.	SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD PRESENT.
Serv o,	<i>No 1st per.</i>	Che io serv a,
Serv i,	Serv i,	Che tu serv a,
Serv e,	Serv a,	Che [egli] serv a ;
Serv iamo,	Serv iamo,	Che serv iamo,
Serv ite,	Serv ite,	Che serv ite,
Serv ono.	Serv ano	Che [essi] serv ano.

THE FOLLOWING VERBS ARE CONJUGATED LIKE "SERVIRE."

Consentire,	to consent	Sentire,	to hear, to feel.
Divertire,	to amuse	Soffrire	to suffer
Investire,	to invest	Sovvertire,	to subvert
Partire,	to depart	Tossire,	to cough
Seguire,	to follow	Vestire,	to dress

## REMARKS ON SOME PREFIXES USED IN ITALIAN.

263. The prefix "dis," or simply "s," often means *the undoing* the action expressed by the verb to which it is joined, or *the nullifying* the quality expressed by the noun or adjective before which it is placed, as "disarmare," to *disarm*, "disfare," or "sfare," to *undo*, "disordine," *disorder*, "svantaggio," *disadvantage*, "disutile," *useless*.

264 The prefix "ri" often means *a repetition* of the action expressed by the verb to which it is joined, as "ribollire," to *boil again*, "ridire," to *say again*.

265 The prefix "stra" means *the overdoing* the action expressed by the verb to which it is joined, or *the exaggerating* the quality expressed by the noun or adjective before which it is placed; as "strafare," to *overdo*, "stracucere," to *overcook*, "straccarico," *overloaded*.

\* "Partire," meaning to *divide*, is conjugated like "finire."

## VOCABULARY.

Questa fanciulla, this girl.	Un bosco, a wood.
Una scienza, a science.	Una sorgente, a spring.
La scuola, the school.	Un fiume, a river (large).
Il mio dovere, my duty.	La finestra, the window.
Questa famiglia, this family.	Il piacere, the pleasure.
La mia condotta, my conduct.	L'animo, the mind.
La mattina, the morning	L'anima, the soul.
La sera, the evening, night.	Una legge, a law.
La notte, the night.	La fragranza, the fragrance

Nuovo, new.	Dolce, sweet	Caldo, warm
Vecchio, old.	Amaro, bitter.	Freddo, cold.

Severamente, severely. Probabilmente, probably

## EXERCISE XVII

They punish (a) him (192, 193) too severely. He has enriched (b) (the) science with\* new discoveries. Does this boy understand (c) Italian? Yes, he understands it (192, 193) but he does not speak it. Will you have finished before to-morrow? Probably I shall (208). I shall finish this exercise before (184) going to school. He always (181) fulfils (d) his duty. They will never betray (e) us. He will inform (f) my family of my conduct. Yesterday my sister was sewing (g) (Past Def) from (the) morning to (the) night. The singing† of the birds, the murmuring (h) of the springs, the fragrance of the flowers contribute (i) to the pleasures of the mind. He will obey (j) the laws of this country. We shall start (k) for the country on (147, 74) Thursday.

(a) Punire † (b) Arricchire † (c) Capire † (d) Adempiere  
(e) Tradire ‡ (f) Istuire ‡ (g) Cucire (h) Mormorare (i)  
Contribuire ‡ (j) Obbedire a † (k) Partire.

266 \* "*With*," preceded by a past participle, is translated by "di," *of*, except when it means *in company with*, or *by means of*, then it is translated by "con." Ex "Uno scettro adorno di gioie." A sceptre adorned with jewels.

267 † To translate into Italian the English expressions "the singing of the birds," "the murmuring of the springs," &c., the verb must be employed in the present of the Infinitive Mood, or the participle, "singing," &c., must be changed into a noun. Ex

Il cantare, or il canto degli uccelli. The singing of birds delights me immensely.

‡ This verb is conjugated like "Finire," see page 50



## LESSON XII.

## ON VERBS USED PASSIVELY

268. A verb used passively expresses an action received by the subject in the sentence. The passive voice, in Italian, is formed by using the auxiliary "essere," followed by the past participle of the verb to be expressed passively. The past participle always agrees with the subject in the sentence. Ex

I suoi fratelli sono stimati. His brothers are esteemed

"STIMARE," TO ESTEEM—CONJUGATED PASSIVELY  
INFINITIVE MOOD

## PRESENT.

Essere stimato-a,  
*to be esteemed*

## PAST

Essere stato stimato,  
*to have been esteemed.*

## GERUND.

Essendo\* stimato-a-i-e,  
*esteemed.*

## PAST PARTICIPLE

Stimato-a-i-e,  
*esteemed*

## PAST GERUND.

Essendo stato stimato,  
*having been esteemed*

## INDICATIVE MOOD.

## PRESENT.

Sono stimato a,  
Sei stimato-a,  
E stimato-a,  
Siamo stimati-e,  
Siete stimato-a-i-e,  
Sono stimati e

*I am esteemed, &c.*

## IMPERFECT

Ero stimato a,  
Eri stimato-a,  
Era stimato-a,  
Eravamo stimati-e,  
Eravate stimato-a-i-e,  
Erano stimati-e

*I was esteemed, &c.*

Fui stimato-a,  
Fosti stimato-a,  
Fu stimato-a,  
Fummo stimati-e,  
Foste stimato a i e,  
Furono stimati-e

*I was esteemed, &c.*

## PAST INDEFINITE

Sono stato stimato, &c  
*I have been esteemed, &c*

## PLUPERFECT

Ero stato stimato, &c  
*I had been esteemed, &c*

## PAST ANTERIOR.

Fui stato stimato, &c  
*I had been esteemed, &c*

## FUTURE

Sarò stimato-a,  
Sarai stimato-a,  
Sarà stimato-a,  
Saremo stimati-e,  
Sarete stimato-a-i-e,  
Saranno stimati-e.

*I shall be esteemed, &c.*

## CONDITIONAL

Sarei stimato-a,  
Saresti stimato-a,  
Sarebbe stimato-a,  
Saremmo stimati-e,  
Sareste stimato-a-i-e,  
Sarebbero stimati-e.

*I should be esteemed, &c.*

## FUTURE ANTERIOR

Sarò stato stimato, &c  
*I shall have been esteemed, &c.*

## CONDITIONAL PAST

Sarei stato stimato, &c  
*I should have been esteemed, &c*

\* An e, dotted thus e, has the broad sound of the a in the word gate

## IMPERATIVE MOOD.

## SINGULAR.

Sii stimato-a, *be (thou) esteemed, &c*  
 Sia stimato-a ,

## PLURAL.

Siamo stimati-e,  
 Siate stimato-a-i-e,  
 Siano stimati-e.

## SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD

## PRESENT.

Che io sia stimato-a,  
 Che tu sia stimato-a,  
 Che [s<sup>gli</sup>ia] sia stimato-a ,  
 Che siamo stimati-e,  
 Che siate stimato-a-i-e,  
 Che [s<sup>no</sup>iano] siano stimati-e.

## IMPERFECT.

Che *or* se (i12) io fossi stimato-a,  
 Che *or* se tu fossi stimato-a,  
 Che *or* se [s<sup>gli</sup>ia] fosse stimato-a ;  
 Che *or* se fossimo stimati-e,  
 Che *or* se foste stimato-a-i-e,  
 Che *or* se [s<sup>no</sup>iano] fossero stimati-e.

*That I might be, or if I were esteemed, &c*

## PAST

Che io sia stato stimato, &c  
*That I may have been esteemed, &c.*

## PLUPERFECT.

Che *or* se io fossi stato stimato, &c.  
*That or if I might have been esteemed, &c*

## VOCABULARY

Il re,	the king	Una battaglia,	a battle.
La regina,	the queen.	Un ballo,	a ball (party).
Un principe,	a prince	Un invito,	an invitation

Tutti, tutte, all, everybody Parecchi-e, several, many

## EXERCISE XVIII.

She is loved (a)\* and esteemed (b) by† everybody. The city of Rome has been sacked (c) several times Have you (122) been invited (d) to the ball? No, but I expect (e) an invitation. His son and his brother were wounded (f) (Past Definite, passive form) in the battle Margaret would have been blamed by my mother, if (112) she had spoken. Will these ladies be presented (g) (269) to the Queen by the Prince? I believe they will ‡ We should be despised (h) if we abandoned him (192, 193) in this danger.

(a) Amare. (b) Stimare. (c) Saccheggiare (d) Invitare. (e) Aspettare. (f) Ferire (g) Presentare. (h) Disprezzare.

269 \* The past participle of verbs used passively is variable Ex 'Ella è amata' *She is loved*

270 † The preposition *by*, preceded by a past participle, is translated into "da," in Italian Ex "Egli è ammirato da tutti" *He is admired by everybody*

271 ‡ The English expressions *I believe he is, I believe they are, I think so, are* elegantly translated into Italian by "Credo di sì" *And I believe they are not, I do not think so, are translated by "Credo di no"*

## LESSON XIII.

## ON NEUTER VERBS.

272. A neuter verb, properly speaking, is a verb which is neither active nor passive, in that case "*essere*," *to be*, is the only *real* neuter verb; but any active verb which can be used without any object (direct or indirect) is, in Italian, called a neuter verb. Ex. *Abbiamo riso.*\* *We laughed.*

THE NEUTER VERB "NUOTARE," *TO SWIM*.  
INFINITIVE MOOD.

PRESENT.		PAST.
Nuotare, <i>to swim.</i>		Aver nuotato, <i>to have swam.</i>
GERUND.	PAST PARTICIPLE.	PAST GERUND.
Nuotando,† <i>swimming.</i>	Nuotato, <i>swam</i>	Avendo nuotato, <i>having swam.</i>

## INDICATIVE MOOD

PRESENT.		IMPERFECT.	PAST DEFINITE.	
Nuoto,	} <i>I swim, &amp;c.</i>	Nuotavo,‡	Nuotai,	} <i>I swam, &amp;c.</i>
Nuoti,		Nuotavi,	Nuotasti,	
Nuota ;		Nuotava ,	Nuotò ;	
Nuotiamo,		Nuotavamo,	Nuotammo,	
Nuotate,		Nuotavate,	Nuotaste,	
Nuotano.		Nuotavano	Nuotarono.	
PAST INDEFINITE.		PLUPERFECT	PAST ANTERIOR.	
Ho nuotato, &c. <i>I have swam, &amp;c.</i>		Avevo nuotato, &c. <i>I had swam, &amp;c.</i>	Ebbi nuotato, &c. <i>I had swam, &amp;c.</i>	

FUTURE.		CONDITIONAL
Nuoterò, &c. <i>I shall swim, &amp;c.</i>		Nuoterei, &c. <i>I should swim, &amp;c.</i>
FUTURE ANTERIOR.		CONDITIONAL PAST.
Avrò nuotato, &c. <i>I shall have swam, &amp;c.</i>		Avrei nuotato, &c. <i>I should have swam, &amp;c.</i>

273 \* Notice that the past participle of neuter verbs, conjugated with "*avere*," always remains *invariable*

† The Present Participle is "*nuotante*"

‡ Or "*nuotava*," see rule 108

IMPERATIVE  
MOOD.

## SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD.

## PRESENT.

## IMPERFECT.

<i>No first person.</i>	Che io nuoti,	} <i>That I may swim, &amp;c.</i>	Che <i>or</i> se io nuotassi,	} <i>if</i>
Nuota,	Che tu nuoti,		Che <i>or</i> se tu nuotassi,	
Nuoti,	Che [ <sup>ra</sup> lla] nuoti,		Che <i>or</i> se [ <sup>ra</sup> lla] nuotasse,	
Nuotiamo,	Che nuotiamo,		Che <i>or</i> se nuotassimo,	
Nuotate,	Che nuotate,		Che <i>or</i> se nuotaste,	
Nuotino	Che [ <sup>ra</sup> lla] nuotino		Che <i>or</i> se [ <sup>ra</sup> lla] nuotassero	

## PAST

## PLUPERFECT

Che io abbia nuotato, &c	Che <i>or</i> se io avessi nuotato, &c.
<i>That I may have swam, &amp;c</i>	<i>That or if I might have swam, &amp;c.</i>

274. There are about 600 neuter verbs in the Italian language, upwards of 550 of which require "Avere" for auxiliary. *Ex*

Abbiamo dormito fino alle nove We slept till nine o'clock.

For the auxiliaries used with the other 50 see rules 275, and 276.

## LIST OF THE PRINCIPAL NEUTER VERBS WHICH ARE CONJUGATED WITH "AVERE"

Camminare,	to walk.	Regnare,	to reign
Dormire,	to sleep.	Ridere,	to laugh.
Gridare,	to cry	Sbadigliare,	to yawn.
Passeggiare,	to take a walk	Tacere,	to be silent
Piangere,	to weep	Tossire,	to cough.
Pranzare,	to dine	Viaggiare,	to travel.

275 The following eighteen neuter verbs require "essere" for auxiliary, because they indicate *a state*, rather than *an action*—

Andare, to go	Giungere, to arrive.	Restare,	} to remain
Apparire, to appear	Morire, to die	Rimanere,	
Arrivare, to arrive	Nascere, to be born	Sorgere,	to rise.
Cadere, to fall.	Partire, to depart	Sortire,	} to go out
Divenire, to become	Perire, to perish	Uscire,	
Entrare, to enter	Pervenire, to arrive at.	Venire,	to come

## EXAMPLES

Sono andati alla campagna.	They have gone into the country.
Sono divenute ricchissime.	They have become very rich.

\* Notice that *o* preceded by *u* has always the broad sound of the *o* in the word *orphan*

276 There are 32 neuter verbs, like "Salire," to *ascend*, "Scendere," to *descend*, "Fuggire," to *escape*, "Passare," to *pass*, which require either "avere," or "essere" as auxiliary, "avere" when an *action* is expressed, "essere," when a *state* is denoted. Ex

Abbiamo salito il monte	We ascended the mountain
Andrea è salito sulla torre	Andrew is on the tower.
La cattiva stagione è passata	The bad season is passed.

## VOCABULARY.

Questa istituzione,	this institution	Il tempo,	the weather.
La sua bontà, (69)	his kindness	La stagione,	the season.
Una prigione,	a prison	La primavera,	Spring
Questo ponte,	this bridge	L'estate, (f),	Summer
Questo parco,	this park	L'autunno,	Autumn
Una pecora,	a sheep	L'inverno,	Winter

Su, sopra, upon, over.	Molti, }	Qualcosa,	something.
Molto, much, very.	Molte, }	Abbastanza,	enough.

## EXERCISE XIX

We have travelled (a) (274, 273) much I have passed (276) over the bridge with my brother It was a beautiful sight in the park, the sheep were browsing, (b) (179) the goats were skipping about, (c) the birds were warbling, (d) and the children were playing (e) This institution has been established (f) these five years Has your sister arrived? (275). Yes, she has (208) He escaped (180, 276) from his prison by† jumping (g) from a window. He slept (274) whilst we were working (Past Indef). We lived (h) (180) three years in America, and received much kindness from the Americans. Do not (126, 122) travel this winter

(a) Viaggiare (b) Pascere (c) Saltellare (d) Cantare (e) Giuocare (f) Stabire (g) Saltare (h) Dimorare

277 \* When the verb expresses an action (or a state) which has lasted for some time past, and is still lasting, it must be put in the *Present Indicative* in one of the two following ways —

Dimoro in questa casa da cinque anni, or	}	I have been living in this
Sono cinque anni che dimoro in questa casa	}	house these five years

278 † The Italian Gerund is never preceded by any preposition, instead of the Gerund the present of the Infinitive, with a preposition, may be used. Ex

Saltando, or col saltare da una finestra	By jumping from a window
--	--------------------------

## LESSON XIV.

## ON THE REFLECTIVE AND RECIPROCAL VERBS.

279. A reflexive verb is a verb the action of which reacts upon its subject, and a reciprocal verb is a verb the action of which is reciprocated between two, or several persons, or things.

280. The compound tenses of reflexive and reciprocal verbs are formed with the auxiliary "Essere." Ex

\* Francesco si è vestito      Francis has dressed himself

## THE VERB "LQDARSI," TO PRAISE ONE'S-SELF

## INFINITIVE MOOD.

PRESENT		PAST
Lodarsi, to praise one's-self		Essersi lodato, to have praised one's-self.
GERUND	PAST PARTICIPLE.	PAST GERUND.
Lodandosi,	Lodatosi, (200)	Essendosi lodato,
praising one's-self	having praised himself.	having praised one's-self

## INDICATIVE MOOD.

PRESENT.		IMPERFECT		PAST DEFINITE
Mi lodo,	I praise myself, &c.	Mi lodavo,*	I praised myself, &c.	Mi lodai,
Ti lodi,		Ti lodavi,		Ti lodasti,
Si loda ,		Si lodava ,		Si lodò ,
Ci lodiamo,		Ci lodavamo,		Ci lodammo,
Vi lodate,		Vi lodavate,		Vi lodaste,
Si lodano		Si lodavano.		Si lodarono.
PAST INDEFINITE		PLUPERFECT.		PAST ANTERIOR.
Mi sono lodato, &c		Mi ero lodato, &c		Mi fui lodato, &c
I have praised myself, &c. I had praised myself, &c. I had praised myself, &c.				

## IMPERATIVE MOOD.

FUTURE	CONDITIONAL	No first person
Mi loderò, &c.	Mi loderei, &c.	Lodati,
I shall praise myself, &c.	I should praise myself, &c.	Si lodi,
FUTURE ANTERIOR	CONDITIONAL PAST	Lodiamoci,
Mi sarò lodato, &c.	Mi sarei lodato, &c.	Lodatevi,
I shall have praised myself, &c.	I should have praised myself, &c.	Si lodino.

\* O, "lodava," see rule 108

## SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD.

## PRESENT.

Che io mi lodì,  
 Che tu ti lodì,  
 Che [i<sup>th</sup>] si lodì,  
 Che ci lodiamo,  
 Che vi lodiate,  
 Che [i<sup>nd</sup>] si lodino

*That I may praise  
 myself, &c.*

## IMPERFECT

Che or se (i<sup>12</sup>) io mi lodassi,  
 Che or se tu ti lodassi,  
 Che or se [i<sup>th</sup>] si lodasse,  
 Che or se ci lodassimo,  
 Che or se vi lodaste,  
 Che or se [i<sup>nd</sup>] si lodassero.

*I had or if I might  
 praise myself, &c.*

## PAST

Che io mi sia lodato, &c.  
*That I may have praised myself, &c.*

## PLUPERFECT.

Che or se io mi fossi lodato, &c.  
*That or if I might have praised myself, &c.*

281 Notice that "lodarsi" might mean to praise one's-self, or to praise one another, hence many verbs may be used, in the plural, either reflectively or reciprocally

## VOCABULARY.

L'assemblea,	the assembly	L'imprudenza,	imprudence.
A mia spesa,	at my expense.	Un bastimento, va-	} a ship
Il preparativo,	the preparation	scello, una nave.	
L'elezione,	the election	Una barca,	a bark
Lo spirito,	wit, the mind	Questa canzone,	this song
Il sapere,	learning	La chitarra,	the guitar

Ogni, every, each    Alle sei, at six o'clock    A mezzogiorno, at noon

## EXERCISE XX

I presented myself (a) to the (103) assembly. He was arming himself (b) for the battle Elizabeth praises herself too much These two men always praise one another (281) The king surrounded himself (c) (Past Def) with (266) soldiers She sang two Spanish (177, 74) songs, accompanying herself (d) with the guitar. Are the children dressing themselves? (e) (244) No, they are not (208) When I entered (183) the room, they were busying themselves (f) with the preparations for the election. He has (280) enriched himself (g) at my expense. They praise themselves too much

(a) Presentarsi. (b) Armarsi. (c) Circondarsi. (d) Accom-  
 pagnarsi. (e) Vestirsi \* (f) Affaccendarsi. (g) Arricchirsi.†

\* This verb is conjugated like "Servire," see page 52

† This verb is conjugated like "Finire," see page 50.

282. THE FOLLOWING VERBS, AND A FEW MORE, ARE REFLECTIVE  
IN ITALIAN AND NOT REFLECTIVE IN ENGLISH.

Accorgersi di, or che,*	} to perceive	Dimenticarsi di	} to forget
Avvedersi di, or che,*		Scordarsi di,	
Addormentarsi,	to fall asleep	Darsi di,*	to grieve it
Affrettarsi di,	} to hasten	Fidarsi di,	to trust
Sbrigarsi,		Imbarcarsi,	to embark
Spicciarsi,	} to make haste	Impadionirsi di †	to seize
Alzarsi,		Infastidirsi di †	to get weary
Levarsi,	} to rise	Ingegnerci,	to endeavour
Ammogliarsi,		Ingerci di,	to meddle with
Maritarsi,	a man to marry (a woman)	Innamorarsi di	to fall in love with
Annonarsi,	a woman to marry (a man)	Lagnarsi di,	to complain of
Appoggiarsi a	to get tired	Lamentarsi di,	to complain of
Approssimarsi a	to lean against	Maravigliarsi di	to wonder at
Accostarsi a	} to approach	Offendersi di	to take offence at
Avvicinarsi a		Opporsi a †	to oppose
Arrendersi,	to surrender	Pascersi di,	to feed upon
Astenersi,*	to abstain	Pentirsi di ‡	to repent
Attitarsi di,	to get sad at	Queidersi,	} to complain to dispute
Avanzarsi,	to advance	Rallegrarsi di,	
Avvezarsi a,	to get accustomed	Rammentarsi di,	to recollect
Avversarsi,	to set out	Ricordiarsi di,	to remember
Bagnarsi,	to bathe, to get wet	Riposarsi a,	to rest
Compiacersi di,*	to take pleasure in	Rompersi,*	to get broken
Congratularsi di,	to congratulate upon	Sbrigarsi,	to mistake
Contentarsi di,	to be satisfied with	Sentirsi bene †	to feel well
Crucciarsi di,	} to get angry with	Sentirsi male †	to feel unwell
Adirarsi di,		Svegliarsi,	to awake
Arrabbiarsi di,	} to delight in, with	Vantarsi di,	to boast of
Dilettarsi di,		Vestirsi, ‡	to dress
		Vergognarsi di,	to be ashamed of

## EXERCISE XXI

I rise every morning at six o'clock Do you remember Charles' birthday? Yes, I do (208) They embarked (Past Def) in an English ship. I shall remember to bring my mother's umbrella He has not repented of his imprudence. Children, make haste, we shall start (partire) at noon. She does not feel well to day.

\* This is an irregular verb, its irregular forms will be given farther on

† This verb is conjugated like "Finire," see page 50

‡ This verb is conjugated like "Servire," see page 52



## LESSON XV.

## IMPERSONAL VERBS.

283. In Italian, Impersonal Verbs, like "Bastare," to *suffice*, are used in the third person, both in the singular and plural, and their compound tenses are formed with "Essere" Ex.

Questo denaro basta      This money suffices  
Questi libri basteranno.      These books will suffice.

THE IMPERSONAL VERB "BASTARE," TO SUFFICE.  
INFINITIVE MOOD

PRESENT		PAST.	
Bastare, to <i>suffice</i>		Essere bastato, to <i>have sufficed</i> .	
GERUND.	PAST PARTICIPLE	PART. GERUND.	
Bastando, * <i>sufficing</i> .	Bastato, <i>sufficed</i>	Essendo	stato, <i>having sufficed</i>

## INDICATIVE MOOD.

PRESENT	IMPERFECT	1ST DEFINITE
Basta, it <i>suffices</i> .	Bastava, it <i>sufficed</i>	Basta, it <i>sufficed</i>
Bastano, they <i>suffice</i>	Bastavano, they <i>sufficed</i>	Bastano, they <i>sufficed</i>

PAST INDEFINITE		PLUPERFECT.	
E bastato.	Sono bastati,	Era bastato	Erano bastati,
It has <i>sufficed</i>	They have <i>sufficed</i>	It had <i>sufficed</i>	They had <i>sufficed</i> .

FUTURE.		CONDITIONAL PRESENT.	
Basterà, it <i>will suffice</i> .	Basteranno, they <i>will suffice</i>	Basterebbe, it <i>would suffice</i> .	Basterebbero, they <i>would suffice</i> .

FUTURE ANTERIOR		CONDITIONAL PAST	
Sarà bastato,	Saranno bastati,	Sarebbe bastato,	Sarebbero bastati,
It <i>will have sufficed</i> .	They <i>will have sufficed</i>	It <i>would have sufficed</i>	They <i>would have sufficed</i> .

## SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD

PRESENT.		IMPERFECT.	
Che basti,	Che bastasse, that it might suffice.	Che bastasse, that it might suffice.	
That it may <i>suffice</i>	Se bastasse, if it <i>sufficed</i> .	Se bastassero, if they <i>sufficed</i>	
Che bastino,			
That they may <i>suffice</i> .			
PAST.		PLUPERFECT	
Che sia bastato,	Che fosse bastato, that it might have sufficed;	Che fossero bastati, that they might have sufficed;	
That it may <i>have sufficed</i>	Se fosse bastato, if it <i>had sufficed</i> ;	Se fossero bastati, if they <i>had sufficed</i> .	
Che siano bastati			
That they may <i>have sufficed</i>			

\* The Present Participle of "bastare" is "bastante," plural "bastanti."

283 † The pronoun *it* is not translated into Italian

285. The following Impersonal Verbs are of the first regular conjugation, like "bastare."

Arrivare,	<i>to happen</i>	Capitare,	<i>to happen.</i>
Bisognare,	<i>to be necessary</i>	Sembrare,	<i>to seem.</i>

286. The following Impersonal Verbs are of the second and third conjugation, and irregular —

Accadere,*	} <i>to happen.</i>	Occorrere,§	{ <i>to happen, to want, to be needful.</i>
Avvenire,†			
Convenire,‡	<i>to be useful</i>	Parere,¶	<i>to appear.</i>

#### EXAMPLES

Ciò accade sovente                      That often happens.

Accadono strane cose.                  Strange things happen.

287 The Impersonal Verbs given above (used in the third person singular) govern a verb in the Present of the Infinitive to express an action which does not refer to any person in particular, but they govern a verb in the Subjunctive Mood (Present or Imperfect) preceded by the conjunction "che," *that*, when the action expressed by the verb has reference to some person or persons. Ex.

Bisogna parlare                      It is necessary to speak.

Bisogna che io parli                  It is necessary that I should speak

288 The Impersonal Verbs given in the above rules, 285 and 286, are very often used with the conjunctive personal pronouns "mi," *to me*, "ti," *to thee*, "gli," *to him*, &c, as shown in the paradigm appended to this rule, and are followed either by a noun, or a verb in the Present of the Infinitive

INDICATIVE MOOD PRESENT	{	Mi accade,	it happens to me
		Ti accade,	" " " thee
		Gli accade,	" " " him
		Le accade,	" " " her, to it, <i>or</i> to you (sing)
		Ci accade,	" " " us
PRESENT	{	Vi accade,	" " " you.
		Accade (a) loro	" " " them, <i>or</i> to you (plur.)

#### EXAMPLES.

Mi accade sovente d' incontrarlo      It often happens that I meet him

Che cosa le occorre, Signora ?      What do you want, Madam ?

Mi occorrono dei guanti.              I want some gloves.

\* The Past Def is "accadde" Fut "accadrà" Cond "accadrebbe"

† The Past Part is "avvenuto" Pres Ind "avviene" Past Def "avvenne."

Fut "avverrà" Cond "avverrebbe" Pres Subj "che avvenga"

‡ Past Part is "convenuto" Pres Ind "conviene" Past Def "convenne"

Fut "converrà" Cond "converrebbe" Pres Subj "che convenga"

§ The Past Part is "occorso" Past Def "occorse"

¶ The Past Part is "parso" Past Def "paese" or "parve" Fut "parrà."

Cond "parrebbe" Pres Subj "che paia"

289. The following Impersonal Verbs of the three conjugations, mostly irregular, are also very often used with the conjunctive personal pronouns "mi," *to me*, "ti," *to thee*, "gli," *to him*, &c, and are followed either by a noun or by a verb in the Present of the Infinitive —

Abbisognare,	<i>to be in want of</i>	Piacere,†	<i>to please, to like.</i>
Tardare,	<i>to long for</i>	Dispiacere,§	<i>to displease</i>
Calere,*	<i>to care about.</i>	Premere,	<i>to have at heart.</i>
Dolere,†	<i>to ache</i>	Rincrescere,¶	<i>to be sorry for.</i>

## EXAMPLES

Mi abbisognano dei libri.	I am in want of books
Gli tarda di veder l'Italia	He longs to see Italy
Mi preme la sua salute	I am anxious about your health.
Le rincresce di partire.	She is sorry to go away

## VOCABULARY

Una tragedia,	a tragedy	Un romanzo,	a novel
Una commedia,	a comedy	Il suo motivo,	his motive
Sapiente,	wise	Quanto? quanta?	how much?
Correttamente,	correctly	Quanti? quante?	how many?
Prudentemente,	prudently	Non ancora,	not yet

## EXERCISE XXII

I must (a) (287) sell (b) my horse before Saturday What (che cosa, *mas*) do you (122, 193) want (c)? I want some Italian books How many do you want (of them)? (240) I want three (of them), Alfieri's tragedies, Goldoni's comedies, and a good Italian novel It is not necessary (c) to be very wise to (225) guess (d) his motive How do you like (e) (289) this palace? I do not like it much. It is not enough (f) to speak correctly, it is also necessary (a) to speak prudently. It appears (g) that you have not attended (h) to the business (259). No, not yet I have at heart (i) your success

(a) Bisognare. (b) Vendere. (c) Occorrere (d) Indovinare (e) Piacere. (f) Bastare. (g) Parere. (h) Accudire a. (i) Premere.

\* The Past Def is "mi calse" Pres Subj "che mi caglia"

† The Pres Ind is "mi duole" Past Def "mi dolse" Fut "mi dorrà" Cond "mi dorrebbe" Pres Subj "che mi doglia"

‡ The Past Part is "piaciuto" Past Def "piacque" Pres Subj "che piaccia"

§ The Past Part. is "dispiaciuto." Past Def. "dispiacque." Pres. Subj "che dispiaccia."

¶ The Past Part. is "rincresciuto." Past Def. "rincrebbe." Pres. Subj. "che mi rincresca."

## LESSON XVI.

## IMPERSONAL VERBS EXPRESSIVE OF THE STATE OF THE WEATHER

290 The following Impersonal Verbs expressive of the state of the weather are used only in the third person singular, and their compound tenses are formed either with "Essere" or "Avere"

Piovigginare,	to drizzle.	Tuonare,	to thunder.
Nevicare,	to snow	Balene,	} to lighten.
Grandinare,	to hail.	Lampeggiare,	
Gelare,	to freeze.	Albeggiare,	to dawn.
Digelare,	to thaw	Annottare,	to grow dark.

291 The only verb of this class of the second conjugation is "Piovere," *to rain*, and it is irregular only in the Past Definite, which is "piovve," *it rained*.

## EXAMPLES

Piovigginà,	it drizzles	E tuonato,	it has thundered
Nevicava,	it snowed	Digelerà,	it will thaw.
Grandina,	it hails	Se piovesse,	if it rained

## VOCABULARY

La pioggia,	the rain	Il lampo,	} the lightning.
La neve,	the snow	Il baleno,	
Il ghiaccio,	the ice	Il pattino,	the skate
La grandine,	the hail	Il lago,	the lake
La nebbia,	the fog	Il contadino,	the peasant

Straordinario,	extraordinary	Niente,	nothing,
Terribilmente,	awfully	Ecco tutto,	that is all
Durante,	during	Non è vero?	is it not so?

## EXERCISE XXIII.

Does it (284) rain now? No, it does not (208) It has been raining during the night The wind blows (a). In my country it never (181) snows The thunder re-echoed (b) awfully. The lake is frozen. The peasants will sell the ice in the town. If (112) I had skates I would skate (c). It is getting dark, we must (285, 288) return to the castle What (che cosa, *mas*) has happened (d)? Nothing (of) extraordinary; it snows, that is all Has anything (qualche cosa, *mas*.) happened (d) to George? Nothing; he is in the garden playing† with William ,

(a) Soffiare (b) Rimbombare. (c) Pattinare. (d) Accadere

292 † When the present participles *speaking, playing, &c* , are used separately from their auxiliary, *I am, He is, He was, I shall be, &c* , they are translated by the simple tenses ("parlo," "giuocava," &c ) preceded by the conjunction "che" Ex Luigi è nel suo studio che lavora Louis is in his studio working

## LESSON XVII.

## ON THE IRREGULAR VERBS

ALPHABETICAL LIST OF ALL THE IMPORTANT IRREGULAR, AND  
DEFECTIVE VERBS USED IN THE ITALIAN LANGUAGE.

293 The student is strongly advised to learn by heart, first of all, the verbs which in the following list are preceded by two asterisks ( \* ), this will enable him to write easily the exercises on the irregular verbs. Afterwards he should learn those preceded by one asterisk ( \* ), leaving those not marked to the last.

294. Only the irregular forms of the verbs are given. The rest of the verbs is conjugated according to the regular paradigms, those ending in "are" are conjugated like "Comprare" (see page 29); those ending in "ere" are conjugated like "Credere" \* (see page 46), and those ending in "ire" are conjugated either like "Finire" (see page 50) or like "Servire" (see page 52), as will be stated in the foot-notes

## A

\*\*Accendere, to light. Past Part. acceso.

## PAST DEFINITE †

Accesi,	Accend emmo,
Accend esti, ‡	Accend este,
Accese, §	Accesero

Accadere, to happen (Imper. 286) Past Def. accadde, &c. Fut. accadrà, &c. ||

Accingersi, to prepare one's-self. Past Part. accinto si (200). Past Def. mi accinsi, &c. ||

Accludere, to enclose Past Part. accluso Past Def. acclusi, &c.

\* See rule 63, in order to understand the meaning of the letters in the darker type.

## VERY IMPORTANT NOTE

295 † It is most important to notice that most of the Italian irregular verbs are, like "accendere," irregular only in the Past Participle, and in the Past Definite, and that of the six persons in a Past Definite, only three can be irregular —the first person singular, which always ends in *r*, the third person singular, which always ends in *e*, and the third person plural, which always ends in *o*,—so that, one of the three persons being known, the others are known, as a matter of course

‡ An *e*, dotted thus *e*, has the broad sound of the *a* in the word *gate*.

296 § Notice that the third person singular of an irregular Past Definite is never accented

|| The compound tenses of the verb are formed with "Essere"

**\*\*Accogliere** (*bene*), *to receive (kindly)* Past Part accolto. Pres. Ind accolgo, accogli, accoglie, accogliamo, accogliete, accolgono Past Def accolsi, accogliesti, accolse, accogliemmo, accoglieste, accolscro. Imperative, accogli, accolga, accogliamo, accogliete, accolgano. Pres. Subj. che io accolga, &c.

**Accorgersi**, *to perceive*. Past Part accortosi Past Def mi accorsi, &c †

**Accorrere**, *to run to* Past Part accorso. Past Def. accorsi, &c. †

**Accrescere**, *to augment* Past Part accresciuto Past Def accrebbi, &c

**\*Addurre**, *to bring forth, to allege*, is contracted from "Adducere," and is, therefore, conjugated thus Ger. adducendo. Pres Ind. adduco, adduci, adduce, adduciamo, adducete, adducono. Imp Ind adducevo, &c.

Its irregular forms are Past Part addotto Past Def. addussi, adducesti, ‡ addusse, &c Fut. addurrò (69), addurrà, addurremo, addurrete, addurranno. Cond. addurrei, addurresti, addurrebbe, addurremmo, addurreste, addurrebbero §

**\*Adempire** (*or adempiere*), *to perform, to fulfil*. Pres Ind. adempio, adempi, adempie, &c Imperative, adempi, adempia, &c. Pres Subj. che io adempia, &c.

#### VOCABULARY.

La serva,	the woman-servant	Una ragione,	a reason.
La lampada,	the lamp	Una scusa,	an excuse.

Raramente, seldom. Però, but still, however.

#### EXERCISE XXIV.

Where is the servant? She is in the parlour lighting (292) the fire. Yesterday morning I lit my (131) lamp at six o'clock. Your uncle received me well (Past Def) What (che) reason did he allege? (has he alleged?) He did not allege any reason He seldom fulfils his duty. But still he will adduce good excuses

† The compound tenses of this verb are formed with "Essere"

‡ Notice that the regular forms of the Past Definite (295), namely, the second person singular, and the first and second persons plural, are derived from the root (165) of the Present Infinitive in its full form, "Adducere"

§ Notice that the Conditional always follows the Future in its irregularities

- \*Affliggere, *to afflict* Past Part afflitto. Past Def afflissi, &c.
- \*Aggiungere, *to add* Past Part. aggiunto Past Def. aggiunsi, &c.
- \*Alludere, *to allude* Past Part alluso † Past Def allusi, &c
- Anmettere, *to admit* Past Part ammesso. Past Def ammisì, &c.
- \*Andare, *to go* Ger andando Pres. Ind. vado, *or* vo, vai, va, andiamo, andate, vanno Fut. anderò (*or* andrò), &c. Imperative, va, vada, andiamo, andate, vadano. Pres. Subj. che io vada, &c ‡
- Anteporre, *to prefeſi*, is contracted from "Anteponere" See "Porre"
- Apparire, § *to appear* Past Part apparso Past Def apparvi (*or* appaui), &c †
- \*\*Appartenere, *to belong* Pres Ind appartengo, appartieni, appartiene, apparteniamo, appartenete, appartengono Past Def appartenii, &c Fut apparterrò, &c Cond. apparterrei, &c ¶ Imperative, appartieni, appartenga, &c Pres. Subj. che io appartenga, &c
- Appendere, *to hang up* Past Part appeso Past Def appesi, &c
- Apprendere, || *to learn*. Past Part appreso Past Def appresi, &c.
- \*Aprire, || *to open* Past Part aperto.
- Ardere, *to burn* Past Part arso Past Def arsi, &c
- Arrendersi, *to surrender* Past Part. arreso. Past. Def mi arresi, &c †
- Arridere, *to smile* Past Part arriso Past Def. arrisi, &c.
- \*Ascendere, *to ascend* Past Part asceto Past. Def asceti, &c
- Ascondere, *to hide* Past Part ascoso Past Def. ascosi, &c.
- Ascrivere, *to ascribe* Past Part. ascritto Past Def. ascrissi, &c
- \*Assalire, *to assail, to assault* Pres Ind assalgo, assali, assale, assaghiamo, assalite, assalgono Past Def. assalsi (*or* assali), &c Imperative, assali, assalga, assaghiamo, &c Pres Subj che io assalga, &c
- Assistere, *to assist* Past Part assistito
- Assolvere, *to absolve* Past Part. assolto (*or* assoluto).
- Assorbere (*or* assorbire), *to absorb*. Past Part. assorto

† An s, dotted thus s, has the soft sound of the s in the word *rose*

‡ The compound tenses of this verb are formed with "Essere"

§ In the regular forms it is conjugated like "Finire"

¶ Notice that the Conditional always follows the Future in its irregularities

|| 297 || Apprendere means *to learn* (a fact), *to learn* (a lesson, a language) is translated by "Imparare"

†† In the regular forms it is conjugated like "Servire"

Assumere, *to assume*. Past Part assunto. Past Def, assunsi, &c.  
 Astenersi, *to abstain*. See "Tenere"

Attorcere, *to twist*. Past Part attorto Past Def. attorsi, &c.

Attrarre, *to attract*, is contracted from "Attrare" Ger attraendo.

Past Part. attratto. Pres. Ind. attraggo, attrai, attrae,  
 attraiamo (*or* attraggiamo), attraete, attraggono. Imp  
 Ind attraevo, &c. Past Def attrassi, attraesti, &c Fut.  
 attrarrò, &c. Cond. attrarrei, &c. Imperative, attrai,  
 attragga. attraiamo, attraete, attraggano Imp. Subj.  
 che io attraessi, &c

Avvedersi, *to perceive* Past Part. avvedutosi Past Def. mi  
 avvidi, &c.

Avvenire, *to happen* (Imper. 286) Past Def. mi avvenne, &c.

Avvincere, *to bind* Past Part. avvinto Past Def. avvinsi, &c.

Avvolgere, *to wrap round*. Past Part. avvolto Past Def. avvolsi, &c.

## B

Benedire, *to bless*, is contracted from "Benedicere," and is, there-  
 fore, conjugated thus Ger. benedicendo. Pres. Ind.  
 benedico, benedici, &c

Its irregular forms are Past Part benedetto. Past  
 Def benedissi, &c.

## VOCABULARY

Un cavallo,	a horse	Questo gatto,	this cat
Il mio cane,	my dog	L'anno passato,	last year
Fino, until	Fino a, as far as	Verso, towards	

## EXERCISE XXV.

Where are you (122) going (179)? I am going to Paris Do  
 not (126, 122) go now, wait until the autumn and we will go  
 (there) (239) together We went there last year If (112) you went  
 there (239) now you would meet my father-in-law. This dog belongs  
 to my brother-in-law The door is open (269). They pride them-  
 selves on† their wit, and (on their) learning

298 † The preposition *on* ("su," "sopra") is never translated literally in Italian  
 except when it is taken in a literal sense, as, "Sulla tavola" *On the table*. As ex-  
 plained in rule 147 before a name of time *on* is not translated at all Sometimes,  
 however, *on* is translated into Italian by another preposition Ex

S'ingorgoliscono del loro spirito

Parlai in quell'occasione

A condizione ch'elli canti

Parlò di un affare d'importanza

They pride themselves on their wit

I spoke on that occasion

On condition that you sing

He spoke on a matter of importance



- \*<sup>2</sup> Bere, *to drink*, is contracted from "Bevere," and is, therefore, conjugated thus Ger. bevendo. Pres Ind. bevo, &c  
 Its irregular forms are Past Def. bevvi, &c. Fut. berrò, &c

## C

- \*<sup>1</sup> Cadere, *to fall*. Past Def caddi, &c. Fut cadrò, &c †  
 Calere, *to care for* (Imper 289) is only used in the following tenses  
 Pres. Ind. mi cale, &c. Imp. Ind. mi caleva, &c. Past Def. mi calse, &c. Pres Subj. che mi caglia, &c. Imp. Subj. che mi calesse, &c
- \*<sup>1</sup> Chiedere, *to ask* Past Part chiesto Pres. Ind. chiedo (*or* chieggo), chiedi, &c. Past Def. chiesi, &c. Imperative, chiedi, chiedi (*or* chiegga), &c. Pres Subj. che io chieda (*or* chiegga), &c
- \*<sup>1</sup> Chiudere, *to shut, to shut up* Past Part chiuso Past Def. chiusi, &c.
- Cingere, *to gird* Past Part cinto Past Def. cinsi, &c  
 Cingersi, *to prepare one's-self* Conjugated like "Cingere"
- \*<sup>1</sup> Cogliere (contracted into "Corre"), *to gather, to catch, to overtake*.  
 Past Part. colto Pres. Ind. colgo, cogli, coglie, cogliamo, cogliete, colgono. Past Def. colsi, &c. Fut. coglierò (*or* corrò), &c. Imperative, cogli, colga, cogliamo, &c. Pres. Subj. che io colga, &c
- \*<sup>1</sup> Commettere, *to commit* Past Part. commesso Past Def. commisi, &c
- Commuovere, ‡ *to affect, to move* Past Part. commosso Pret Ind. commossi, &c
- Comparire§, *to appear suddenly*. Past Part. comparso Past Def. comparvi, &c |
- Compiacere, *to comply with, to please* Past Part. compiaciuto.  
 Pres. Ind. compiacio, compiaci, compiace, compiaciamo, compiacete, compiaccono Past Def. compiacqui, &c. Imperative, compiaci, compiaccia; compiaciamo, compiacete, compiacciano
- Compiacersi di, *to take delight in*, is conjugated like "Compiacere"

† The compound tenses of this verb are formed with "Essere"

‡ When in the verb "Commuovere," the tonic accent does not fall on the second *o*, the letter *u* may be omitted, "commovendo," "commoviamo," "commoverò" instead of "commuovendo," &c

§ In the regular forms it is conjugated like "Finire"

\***Compiangere**, *to pity, to lament* Past Part. *compianto*. Past Def *compiansi*, &c. Pres Subj. *che io compianga*, &c

**Compire** (*or compiere*), *to fulfil, to complete*. Pres. Ind *compio*, *compi*, *compie*, &c. Imperative, *compi*, *compia*, &c. Pres. Subj *che io compia*, &c

\***Comporre**, *to compose*, is contracted from "*Componere*," and is, therefore, conjugated thus Ger *componendo*. Imp. Ind. *componevo*, &c.

Its irregular forms are Past Part *composto*. Pres. Ind. *compongo*, *componi*, *compone*, *componiamo*, *componete*, *compongono* Past Def *composi*, &c Fut *comporrò*, &c. Imperative, *componi*, *componga*, &c Pres Subj *che io componga*, &c

\***Comprendere**, *to comprehend, to contain, to impress* Past Part. *compreso* Past Def *compresi*, &c

**Comprimere**, *to compress*. Past Part *compicisso*. Past Def. *compressi*, &c

\***Compromettere**, *to compromise* Past Part *compromesso*. Past Def *compromisi* (*or compromessi*), &c

**Compungere**, *to grieve*. Past Part. *Compunto* Past Def. *compunsi*, &c

\***Concludere**, *to conclude* Past Part. *conchiuso*. Past Def *conchiusi*, &c

**Concludere**, *to conclude*. Past Part *concluso* Past Def *conclusi*, &c.

\***Concorrere**, *to concur, to compete*. Past Part *concorso* Past Def. *concorsi*, &c.

## EXERCISE XXVI.

I always drink coffee in the morning and tea in the evening What do the Italians drink? They drink wine. If (112) I had money I should always drink good wine. Henry has fallen from the chair. Who (chi) has shut the door? I, I shut it (180, 193) because all the windows are open (269). Where is Charles? He is in the garden gathering (292) flowers for his sister. When I entered (183) the room they were composing a letter I have just† composed an Italian song Gather (122) some flowers for me (213)

Condiscendere, *to condescend*. Past Part. *condisco*. Past Def. *condiscisi*, &c.

\* Condurre, *to lead*, is contracted from "Conducere," and is therefore conjugated thus Ger *conducendo* Pres Ind. *conduco*, &c.

Its irregular forms are Past Part. *condotto*. Past Def. *condussi*, &c. Fut. *condurrò*, &c.

Confondere, *to confound, to confuse*. Past Part. *confuso*. Past Def. *confusi*, &c.

Congiungere, *to join* Past Part. *congiunto*. Past Def. *congiunsi*, &c.

Connettere, *to connect* Past Part. *connesso*. Past Def. *connessi*, &c.

Conoscere, *to know, to be acquainted with* (through the senses) Past Part. *conosciuto* Past Def. *conobbi*, &c.

Consistere, *to consist* (Imper 284) Past Part *consistito* †

Costruire, † *to construct* Past Part. *costrutto* (*or costruito*). Past Def *costrussi*, &c.

Contendere, *to quarrel*. Past Part. *conteso* Past Def. *contesi*, &c.

† Contenere, *to contain* Pres Ind *contengo*, *contieni*, *contiene*, *conteniamo*, *contenete*, *contengono* Past Def *contenni*, &c Fut. *conterrò*, &c. Imperative, *contieni*, *contenga*, *conteniamo*, &c. Pres Subj. *che io contenga*, &c.

\* Contradire, *to contradict*, is abbreviated from "Contradicere," and is, therefore, conjugated thus Ger. *contradicens*. Pres Ind. *contradico*, *contradici*, &c.

Its irregular forms are Past Part. *contradetto* Past Def. *contradissi*, &c.

Contrapporre, *to oppose*, is contracted from "Contrapponere." See "Porre."

† Contrarre, *to contract*, is contracted from "Contraere" See "Trarre"

\* Convenire, *to suit, (286) to agree upon, to meet by appointment*. Past Part *convenuto* Pres Ind *convengo*, *convieni*, *conviene*, *conveniamo*, *convenite*, *convengono* Past Def. *convenni*, &c. Fut *converrò*, &c Imperative, *convieni*, *convenga*, *conveniamo*, &c Pres. Subj. *che io convenga*, &c.†

† The compound tenses of this verb are formed with "Essere."

† In the regular forms it is conjugated like "Finire"

- <sup>†</sup>Convincere, *to convince*. Past Part. convinto. Past Def. convinsi, &c
- <sup>†</sup>Coprire, <sup>†</sup>*to cover* Past Part coperto.
- <sup>†</sup>Correggere, *to correct* Past Part corretto. Past Def. corressi, &c.
- <sup>†</sup>Correre, *to run*. Past Part corso. Past Def. corsi, &c.†
- \*Corrispondere, *to correspond*. Past Part. corrisposto. Past Def. corrisposi, &c
- Corrodere, *to corrode* Past Part corrosivo Past Def. corrosi, &c.
- \*Corrompere, *to corrupt* Past Part. corrotto Past Def. corruppi, &c
- Costringere, *to constrain*. Past Part. costretto. Past Def. costrinsi, &c
- † Crescere, *to grow* Past Part cresciuto. Past Def crebbi, &c †
- \*Cucire, *to sew* Pres Ind cucio, cucì, cuce, &c. Imperative, cucì, cucìa, &c Pres Subj che io cucìa, &c
- \*Cuocere, *to cook* Past Part cotto. Pres. Ind cuocio, &c. Past Def. cossi, &c

## D

- \*Dare, *to give* Ger dando Past Part dato Pres. Ind. do, dai, dà, diamo, date, danno Past Def. diedi (*or* detti), desti, diede (*diè or dette*), demmo, desto, diedero (*or dettero*) Fut darò, &c Imperative, dà, dia, diamo, date, diano. Pres. Subj che io dia, &c Imperf. Subj che io dessi, &c.
- Decadere, *to decay* See "Cadere"

## EXERCISE XXVII

I conducted (Past Def) them (*was* 193) into the (102) house. I do not know my uncle's friend If (112) I knew that lady, I would speak to her (193) The castle contains many good pictures. I always cover the bird's cage (in) the evening. I corrected (Past Def) his exercises yesterday, and I shall correct George's exercises to-morrow morning When I met (Past Def.) him he was running (179) towards the church Why did you give him (*why have you given him*) (193, 122) your dictionary? I gave (Past Def.) it (to) him (219) because he asked (*domandare a*) me for it (218, 251). Give him (201) a watch I desire to take (*condurre*) him§ to school.

† In the regular forms it is conjugated like "Servire"

† The compound tenses of this verb are formed with "Essere."

§ When personal pronouns are joined to verbs in the infinitive (198) ending in *re*, the *re* is omitted

\* *Decidere, to decide.* Past Part deciso Past Def. decisi, &c.

\* *Dedurre, to deduce, to deduct,* is contracted from "Deducere," and is, therefore, conjugated thus Ger. deducendo. Pres. Ind. deduco, &c.

Its irregular forms are Past Part. dedotto. Past Def. dedussi, &c. Fut. dedurrò, &c.

\* *Deludere, to delude.* Past Part deluso Past Def. delusi, &c.

\* *Deporre, to depose,* is contracted from "Deponere." See "Porre" Deprimere, *to depress* Past Part depresso Past Def. depressi, &c.

\* *Deridere, to deride.* Past Part. deriso Past Def. derisi, &c

\* *Descrivere, to describe* Past Part descritto Past Def. descrissi, &c

*Detrarre, to detract,* is contracted from "Detraere" See "Trarre"

\* *Difendere, to defend* Past Part difeso Past Def. difesi, &c

*Diffondere, to squander, to spread out* Past Part. diffuso. Past Def. diffusi, &c

\* *Dipingere, to paint* Past Part dipinto Past Def. dipinsi, &c

\* *Dire, to tell, to say,* is contracted from "Dicere," and is, therefore, conjugated thus Ger. dicendo Pres. Ind. dico, dici, dice, diciamo, dite, dicono.

Its irregular forms are Past Part detto Past Def. dissi, dicesti, disse, dicemmo, diceste, dissero Fut. dirò, &c Imperative, di', dica, diciamo, dite, dicano. Pres Subj che io dica, &c

\* *Dirigere, to direct* Past Part diretto. Past Def. diressi, &c

\* *Discendere, to descend* Past Part disceso Past Def. discesi, &c.

\* *Discorrere, to speak, to discourse* Past Part discorso. Past Def. discorsi, &c.

\* *Discutere, to discuss* Past Part discusso. Past Def. discussi, &c.

*Disdire, (263) to deny, to be unbecoming.* } Conjugated like "Dire."

*Disdirsi,† (263) to unsay* }

*Dispergere, to disperse* Past Part. disperso. Pret Ind dispersi, &c.

\* *Dispiacere, (263, 289) to displease* Past Part. dispiaciuto. Pres Ind dispiaccio, dispiaci, dispiace, dispiacciamo, dispiacete, dispiacciono Past Def dispiacqui, &c. Imperative, dispiaci, dispiaccia, dispiacciamo, dispiacete, dispiacciano. Pres Subj che io dispiaccia, &c.

† The compound tenses of this verb are formed with "Essere"

**\*\*Disporre, to dispose,** is contracted from "Disponere," and is, therefore, conjugated thus · Ger. disponendo. Imp Ind. disponevo, &c.

Its irregular forms are Past Part. disposto. Pres Ind. dispongo, disponi, dispone, disponiamo, disponete, dispongono. Fut. disporrò, &c. Past Def. disposi, &c. Imperative, disponi, disponga, &c. Pres Subj. che io disponga, &c.

Dissolvere, *to dissolve* Past Part. dissolto (or dissoluto).

Dissuadere, *to dissuade* Past Part. dissuasione Past Def. dissuasi, &c.

Distendere, *to extend, to stretch out* Past Part. disteso Past Def. distesi, &c.

**\*Distinguere, to distinguish.** Past Part. distinto Past Def. distinsi, &c.

Distogliere (contracted into "Distorre") *to divert from* See "Togliere"

Distrarre, *to distract.* See "Trarre"

**\*Distruggere, to destroy.** Past Part. distrutto Past Def. distrussi, &c.

**\*\*Divenire, to become.** Past Part. divenuto. Pres. Ind. divengo, divieni, diviene; diveniamo, divenite, divengono. Past Def. divenni, &c. Fut. diverrò, &c. Imperative, divieni, divenga, diveniamo, &c. Pres. Subj. che io divenga, &c.†

**\*\*Dividere, to divide** Past Part. diviso Past Def. divisi, &c.

## EXERCISE XXVIII

I have decided to travel during the winter They defended (Past Def.) me bravely He described (Past Def.) the town correctly He desired; (Past Def.) me to paint (for) him (213) a picture. She always tells the truth, and yet nobody believes (to) her (193). I will tell it to him (219) again this evening. If I told her what you have said, she would get cross (adirarsi) He disposes of his money wisely Frederick became (Past Def.) rich in three years. Divide these strawberries between you and Elizabeth

† The compound tenses of this verb are formed with *Essere* ·

300 † When *to desire* means *to wish*, it is translated by "Desiderare" Ex Desidera di andare alla campagna He wishes to go into the country

301 When *to desire* means *to ask, to beg*, it is translated by "Pregare" or "Dire" Ex

Mi pregò d'assistere alla cerimonia He desired me to be present at the ceremony

302. When *to desire* means *to command*, it is translated by "Comandare" Ex Mi comandò di partir subito He desired me to leave at once

- \**Dolere, to ache* Past Part *doluto* Pres Ind *dolgo, duoli, duolie*; *dogliamo, dolete, dolgono* Past Def *dolsi, &c.* Fut *doglierò (or dorrò), &c.* Pres. Subj *che io dolga, &c.*
- \*\**Dolersi, to complain*, is conjugated like "*Dolere*," but it is used also in the Imperative *duoliti, si dolga, doghamoci, doletevi, si dolgano* †
- \**Dovere, to owe, to be obliged* Past Part *dovuto* Pres Ind *devo† (debbo, or deggio), devi, deve (or dee), dobbiamo, dovete, devono (or debbono)* Fut *dovrò, &c.* Pres Subj *che io debba (or deggia), che tu debba, ch' egli debba, che dobbiamo che dobbiate, che debbano (or deggiano).*

## E

- †*Eleggere, to elect* Past Part *eletto* Pres. Ind *elessi, &c.*
- †*Emergere, to emerge* Past Part *emerso* Past Def *emersi, &c.*
- †*Erigere, to erect* Past Part *eretto* Past Def *eressi, &c.*
- \**Escludere, to exclude* Past Part *escluso* Past Def. *esclusi, &c.*
- †*Esigere, to exact* Past Part *esatto*
- †*Espellere, to expel* Past Part *espulso* Past Def *espulsi, &c.*
- † *Esporre, to expose* is contracted from "*Espondere*"
- Its irregular forms are Past Part *esposto* Pres Ind *espongo, esponi, espone, esponiamo, esponete, espongono* Past Def *esposi, &c.* Fut *esporrò, &c.* Imperative, *esponi, esponga, &c.* Pres Subj *che io esponga, &c.*
- \**Esprimere, to express* Past Part *espresso* Past Def *espressi, &c.*
- †*Estendere, to extend* Past Part *esteso* Past Def *estesi, &c.*
- \**Estinguere, to extinguish* Past Part. *estinto* Past Def. *estinsi, &c.*
- †*Estrarre, to extract*, is contracted from "*Estragere*." See "Trarre"

## F

- \*"*Fare, to do, to make*, is contracted from "*Facere*," and is therefore conjugated thus Ger *facendo* Imp Ind *facevo, &c.*
- Its irregular forms are. Past Part. *fatto* Pres. Ind *faccio or fo, fai, fa, facciamo, fate, fanno.* Past Def *feci, facesti, fece, facemmo, faceste, fecero* Fut *farò, &c.* Imperative, *fa, faccia, facciamo, fate, facciano* Pres. Subj. *che io faccia, &c.* Imp Subj. *che io facessi, &c.*

† The compound tenses of this verb are formed with "*Essere*"

† "*Devo*," "*devi*," "*deve*," &c, mean also *I must, you must, he must, &c.*

- Fendere, to split** Past Part *fesso*  
**\*Fingere, to feign.** Past Part *finto* Past Def. *finì*, &c  
**\*Fondere, to melt** Past Part *fuso* Past Def. *fuì*, &c.  
**Frammettere, to interpose** Past Part *frammesso.* Past Def. *frammi*, &c  
**Frangere, to break.** Past Part. *franto* Past Def. *fransì*, &c  
**Friggere, to fry** Past Part. *fritto* Past Def. *frissì*, &c

## G

- Giacere, to lie down** Past Part *giacinto.* Past Def. *giacqui*, &c  
**\*\*Giungere, to arrive** Past Part *giunto* Past Def. *giunsi*, &c |

## I

- Illudere, to delude** Past Part *illuso* Past Def. *illusi*, &c  
**Immergere, to immerse** Past Part *immerso* Past Def. *immersi.* &c  
**\*Imporre, to impose,** is contracted from "Imponere" See "Porre"  
**\*Imprimere, to impress** Past Part *impresso.* Past Def. *impressi*, &c  
**\*Incidere, to engrave.** Past Part *inciso* Past Def. *inci*, &c  
**\*Includere, to include** Past Part *incluso* Past Def. *inclusi*, &c.  
**\*Incorrere, to incur** Past Part *incorso* Past Def. *incorsi*, &c  
**Incrementare, to be sorry, to be weary (Impersonal),** Past Part. *incresciuto* Past Def. *increbbe*, &c  
**\*Indurre, to induce,** is contracted from "Inducere," and is, therefore, conjugated thus Ger *inducendo* Pres Ind *induco*, &c

Its irregular forms are Past Part, *indotto.* Past Def. *indussi*, &c Fut, *indurrò*, &c

- Infondere, to infuse** Past Part *infuso* Past Def. *infusi*, &c  
**Inscrivere, to inscribe** Past Part *inscritto.* Past Def. *inscrissi*, &c.  
**Insistere, to insist** Past Part *insistito*

## EXERCISE XXIX.

James complains of your conduct I am obliged to go to Paris to buy some presents for my cousin Margaret. We owe (to) him some money for the house he built for us (213). If (112) I were obliged to (226) speak before this crowd of people, it would displease me very much. What (che cosa) are you doing (179) now, Louisa? I am making a bonnet for Charlotte. Yesterday I made a waistcoat for Frederick I shall induce Charles to go to Scotland

† The compound forms of this verb are formed with "Essere"



\**Intendere, to understand.* Past Part *inteso*. Past Def. *intesi*, &c.  
*Interporre, to interpose*, is contracted from "*Interponere*." See  
 "Porre"

\**Interrompere, to interrupt.* Past Part. *interrotto*. Past Def.  
*interruppi*, &c

\**Intraprendere, to undertake.* Past Part. *intrapreso*. Past Def.  
*intrapresi*, &c

*Introdurre, to introduce*, is contracted from "*Introducere*," and is  
 therefore conjugated thus Ger *introducendo*. Pres.  
*Ind introduco*, &c.

Its irregular forms are Past Part. *introdotta*. Past  
 Def. *introdussi*, &c Fut *introduurrò*, &c

*Intrudere, to intrude* Past Part *intruso*. Past Def *intrusi*, &c.

*Invadere, to invade* Past Part *invaso*. Past Def. *invasi*, &c.

*Involgere, to involve, to wrap in.* Past Part. *involto*. Past Def  
*involsi*, &c

*Istruire,† to instruct* Past Def. *istrussi*, &c.

## L

*Ledere, to offend.* Past Part *leso*. Past Def. *lesi*, &c.

\**Leggere, to read* Past Part. *letto* Past Def *lessi*, &c.

## M

*Maledire, to curse*, is contracted from "*Maledicere*" See "*Dire*."

\**Mantenere, to maintain.* Pres Ind. *mantengo*, *mantieni*, *man-  
 tiene*, *manteniamo*, *mantenete*, *mantengono*. Past Def.  
*mantenni*, &c. Fut *manterò*, &c Imperative, *mantieni*,  
*mantenga*, *manteniamo*, &c Pres. Subj. *che io man-  
 tenga*, &c

\**Mettere, to put* Past Part. *messso*. Past Def. *misì (or messi)*, &c.

*Mordere, to bite.* Past Part. *morso*. Past Def. *morsi*, &c.

\**Morire, to die.* Past Part. *morto* Pres. Ind. *muoio*, *muori*,  
*muore*, *moriamo*, *morite*, *muoiono (or muorono)* Fut.  
*morirò (or morrò)*, &c. Imperative, *muori*, *muoi*, *mo-  
 riamo*, *morite*, *muoiano*. Pres Subj. *che io muoia*, &c †

*Mungere, to milk.* Past Part *munto* Past Def *munsi*, &c

*Muovere,‡ to move.* Past Part. *mosso* Past Def *mossi*, *movesti*, &c.

† The compound tenses of this verb are formed with "*Essere*"

‡ When in the verb "*Muovere*" the tonic accent does not fall on the *o*, the  
 letter *u* may be omitted, as "*movendo*," "*moviamo*," "*moverò*," instead of  
 "*muovendo*," &c

## N

- \*\**Nascere, to be born* Past Part nato Past Def nacqui,† &c.  
 \*\**Nascondere, to hide* Past Part. nascosto (*or* nascoso) Past Def nascosi, &c  
 \**Negligere, to neglect* Past Part negletto Past Def neglessi, &c  
*Nuocere, ‡ to hurt.* Past Part. nociuto Past Def. nocqui, &c.

## O

- Occorrere, to be in need of, to happen* (Imper. 286). Past Part  
 occorso Past Def occorre †  
 † *Offendere, to offend* Past Part offeso Past Def offesi, &c.  
 † *Offrire, § to offer.* Past Part offerto Past Def. offersi (*or* offri), &c.  
 \**Omettere, to omit* Past Part ommesso Past Def. ommisi, &c.  
 \**Opporre, to oppose*, is contracted from "*Opponere*," and is, therefore, conjugated thus Ger opponendo. Imp. Ind  
 opponevo, &c  
 Its irregular forms are Past Part opposto. Pres. Ind.  
 oppongo, opponi, oppone, opponiamo, opponete, oppongono Past Def. opposi, &c Fut opporrò, &c  
 Imperative, opponi, opponga, &c. Pres. Subj. che io  
 opponga, &c.

## VOCABULARY

Una satira,	a satire	Questa elezione,	this election.
Una cornice,	a frame	La mia patria,	my native land.

## EXERCISE XXX.

Has your brother read "*La Gerusalemme Liberata*?" Yes, he has (208), and he is now reading (179) "*L'Orlando Furioso*." Do not read satires, you will learn little from (in) them (238). Louisa always (181) puts her books on my table. Here is the picture, put a frame to it (238). Charles was born in England. Dante was born ¶ in Florence in the (103) year 1265. Do not offend Henry, he will not pardon you. I oppose his election because he does not love his native land.

† The compound tenses of this verb are formed with "*Essere*."

‡ When in the verb "*Nuocere*" the tonic accent does not fall on the *o*, the letter *u* may be omitted, as "*nocendo*," "*nociamo*," "*nocerò*," instead of "*nuocendo*," &c.

§ In the regular forms it is conjugated like "*Sevire*."

303 ¶ *I was born, thou wast born*, &c, must be translated by "*sono nato*," "*sei nato*," &c, when we speak of persons still living, but by "*nacque*," "*nacquero*," when speaking of persons dead.

Opporsi, *to oppose*, is conjugated like "Opporre"†

- † Opprimere, *to oppress* Past Part. oppresso Past Def. oppressi, &c  
 † Ottenere, *to obtain*. Pres Ind ottengo, ottieni, ottiene, otteniamo, ottenete, ottengono Past Def. ottenni, &c Fut. otterro, &c. Imperative, ottieni, ottenga, otteniamo, &c Pres Subj. che io ottenga, &c

## P

- \* Parere, *to appear*. Past Part. parso Pres Ind paio, pari, pare, pariamo, parete, paiono Past Def. parsi (or paivi), &c Fut. parò, &c Imperative, pari, para, pariamo, parete, parano Pres Subj. che io para, &c †

Pendere, *to hang up, to incline* Past Part. peso. Past Def. pesi, &c

Percorrere, *to go over*. Past Part. percorso. Past Def. percorsi, &c

- † Percuotere, ‡ *to strike* Past Part. percosso. Past Def. percossi, &c

- † Permettere, *to permit* Past Part. permesso Past Def. permisi, &c.

Persistere, *to persist* Past Part. persistito

- † Persuadere, *to persuade* Past Part. persuaso Past Def. persuasi, &c

- \* Piacere a, *to please*. Past Part. piaciuto Pres. Ind. piaccio, piaci, piace, piacciamo, piacete, piacciono Past Def. piacqui, &c. Imperative, piaci, piaccia, piacciamo, &c. Pres Subj. che io piaccia, &c

- † Piangere, § *to weep* Past Part. pianto. Past Def. piansi, &c

Pingere, § *to paint* Past Part. pinto Past Def. pinsi, &c

Piovare, *to rain* (Imper. 291) Past Part. piovuto Past Def. piovve.

- † Porgere, *to present, to hand* Past Part. porto Past Def. porsi, &c

- \*\* Porre, *to put*, is contracted from "Ponere," and is therefore conjugated thus Ger. ponendo Imp. Ind. ponevo, &c.

Its irregular forms are Past Part. posto. Pres. Ind. pongo, poni, pone, poniamo, ponete, pongono Past Def. posi, &c. Fut. porrò, &c Imperative, poni, ponga, &c. Pres. Subj. che io ponga, &c.

Posporre, *to postpone*, is contracted from "Posponere See "Porre "

† The compound tenses of this verb are formed with "Essere "

‡ When in the verb "Percuotere" the tonic accent does not fall on the o, the letter u may be omitted; as "percotendo," "percotiamo," "percoterò," instead of "percuotendo," &c

§ In verbs ending in "angere," "engere," "ingere," and "ungere," the u is sometimes placed after the g. Ex. "Egli piagne," *he weeps*, instead of "Egli piange "

- \* **Possedere, to possess.** Past Part. posseduto Pres. Ind. possiedo (or *posseggo*), possiedi, possiede, possediamo, possedete, possiedono (or *posseggono*). Imperative, possiedi, possegga, &c Pres Subj che io possegga, &c.
- † **Potere, to be able** Pres. Ind posso, puoi, può, possiamo, potete, possono. Fut. potrò, &c Pres Subj che io possa, &c. Precorrere, *to forerun* Past Part precorso Past Def. precorsi, &c.
- **Predire, to predict**, is contracted from "Predicere" See "Dire."
- **Prefiggere, to prefix.** Past Part prefisso Past Def. prefissi, &c. Premettere, *to place before* See "Mettere"
- \*• **Prendere, to take** Past Part preso Past Def. presi, &c. Preporre, *to prefer*, is contracted from "Preponere" See "Porre."
- **Prescrivere, to prescribe** Past Part. prescritto. Past Def. prescrissi, &c Presumere, *to presume* Past Part presunto Past Def. presunsi, &c.
- † **Prendere, to claim.** Past Part. preteso Past Def. pretesi, &c.
- **Prevalere, to prevail** See "Valere"
- **Prevedere, to foresee** See "Vedere"
- **Produrre, to produce**, is contracted from "Producere," and is therefore conjugated thus Ger. producendo. Pres. Ind produco, &c  
Its irregular forms are Past Part prodotto Past Def. prodotti, &c Fut. produrrò, &c Imperative, produci, produca, &c Pres Subj. che io produca, &c.

## EXERCISE XXXI.

My brother always obtains what (*ciò che*) he desires (300). They appear rich, but they are very poor. The king permitted (Past Def) (to) us to enter (183) the city. When they heard (Past Def.) the news, they wept. I put (Past Def) the ring on your table. If (112) I could† induce William to go| with us, I should be happy. He could (potere) (Past Def) not answer my question §

304 † When *I could* means *I might* it is translated by "Potere"

305 ‡ When *to go* is used in the sense of *to accompany*, it is translated *not* by "Andare," but by "Accompagnare" *to accompany*, or "Venire," *to come* Ex.

Vuol'ella venire in Italia con me? Will you go to Italy with me?

306 § When *question* means *argument*, it is translated into Italian by "Questione," when it means *dispute*, it is translated by "Lite", but when it means *inquiry*, it is translated by "Domanda," "Interrogazione," "Quesito."

- Profondere, *to dissipate*. Past Part. profuso Past Def. profusi, &c.
- \*Promettere, *to promise*. Past Part. promesso. Past Def. promisi, &c.
- Promuovere,† *to promote* Past Part. promosso. Past Def. promossi, &c.
- Proporre, *to propose*, is contracted from "Proporre." See "Porre."
- Prorompere, *to break forth*. Past Part. prorotto. Past Def. proruppi, &c.
- Proscrivere, *to proscribe* Past Part. proscritto. Past Def. proscrissi, &c.
- \*Proteggere, *to protect*. Past Part. protetto Past Def. protetti, &c.
- Provvedere, *to provide* See "Vedere"
- Protrarre, *to protract*, is contracted from "Protraere." See "Trarre."
- Pungere, *to prick*. Past Part. punto Past Def. punsi, &c.

## R

- \*Raccogliere, *to pick up, to collect* Past Part. raccolto Pres. Ind. raccolgo, raccogli, raccoglie, raccogliamo, raccogliete, raccolgono Past Def. raccolsi, &c. Fut. raccoglierò, (or raccorrò), &c. Imperative, raccogli, raccolga, &c. Pres. Subj. che io raccolga, &c.
- Radere, *to shave* Past Part. raso Past Def. rasi, &c.
- Raggiungere, *to overtake* Past Part. raggiunto Past Def. raggiunsi, &c.
- Redimere, *to redeem* Past Part. redento Past Def. redensi, &c.
- Reggere, *to rule, to support* Past Part. retto Past Def. ressi, &c.
- †Rendere, *to render, to restore*. Past Part. reso Past Def. resi, &c.
- Reprimere, *to repress* Past Part. represso Past Def. repressi, &c.
- Ricomporre, *to compose again*, is contracted from "Ricomporre." See "Porre"
- \*Riconoscere, *to recognise*. See "Conoscere"
- Ricorrere, *to have recourse*. Past Part. ricorso. Past Def. ricorsi, &c.
- \*Ridere, *to laugh* Past Part. riso. Past Def. risi, &c.
- Ridire, (264) *to repeat*, is contracted from "Ridicere" See "Dire"

---

† When in the verb "Promuovere" the tonic accent does not fall on the *o*, the letter *u* may be omitted; as "promovendo," "promoviamo," "promoverò," instead of "promuovendo," &c.

- \*\*Ridurre, to reduce**, is contracted from "**Riducere**," and is, therefore, conjugated thus Ger **riducendo** Pres. Ind. **riduco**, &c  
Its irregular forms are Past Part **ridotto**. Past Def. **ridussi**, &c Fut **ridurrò**, &c
- \*Rimanere, to remain** Past Part **rimasto** (or **rimaso**). Pres Ind. **rimango**, **rimani**, **rimane**, **rimaniamo**, **rimanete**, **rimangono**. Past Def. **rimasi**, &c. Fut **rimarrò**, &c. Imperative, **rimani**, **rimanga**, &c Pres Subj **che io rimanga**, &c. |
- Rinchiudere, to shut up**. Past Part. **rinchiuso**. Past Def **rinchiusi**, &c.
- Rincrescere, to weary, to vex** (as an impersonal verb, *to be sorry for*, see rule 289). Past Part. **rincresciuto**. Past Def **rincreschi**, &c
- Riprendere, to take back, to correct** Past Part. **ripreso** Past Def. **ripresi**, &c.
- \*Riscuotere,† to receive in payment, to exact**. Past Part. **riscosso**. Past Def. **riscossi**, &c
- Risorgere, to rise again**. Past Part **risorto** Past Def. **risorsi**, &c
- Rispondere, to answer** Past Part **risposto** Past Def. **risposi**, &c.
- Ritorcere, to twist, to wring** Past Part. **ritorto**. Past Def. **ritorsi**, &c

## VOCABULARY

La stravaganza, the extravagance Il nemico, the enemy.  
Il travestimento, the disguise. La povertà, poverty.

Ebbene! Well! Contro, incontro, against. Indietro, behind.

## EXERCISE XXXII.

Do you not remember that you promised (180) to give me (198) your (131) dog? Yes, and I will give it to you (218-220) on (147) Saturday Man proposes, God disposes. We shall protect him (193) against all his enemies. I shall restore to him the paint-brushes (260) he lent (Past Def.) (to) me last week In spite of his disguise she recognised (Past Def.) him at once His extravagance will soon reduce him to (the) poverty. Why did you remain (Past Def.) behind yesterday? I remained behind to (225) see if I could induce Frederick to go (305) with us He answered (Past Def.) very prudently.

† The compound tenses of this verb are formed with "**Essere** "

‡ When in the verb "**Riscuotere** " the tonic accent does not fall on the *a*, the letter *u* may be omitted, as "**riscotendo**," "**riscotiamo**," "**riscoterò**," instead of "**riscuotendo**," &c

Ritrarre, *to draw out, to portray* See "Trarre"

\*Riuscire (or Riescire) *to succeed*. Past Part. riuscito Pres Ind. riesco, riesci, riesce, riusciamo (or riesciamo), riuscite, riescono. Imperative, riesci, riesca, riusciamo, riuscite, riescano Pres Subj. che io riesca, &c |

Rivolgere, *to turn over, to revolve* Past Part. rivoltò. Past Def. rivolsi, &c

Rivolgarsi, *to direct one's-self to*, is conjugated like "Rivolgere."

Rodere, *to gnaw* Past Part. roso Past Def. rosì, &c

\*Romperre, *to break* Past Part. rotto Past Def. ruppi, &c.

Rompersi, *to get broken*, is conjugated like "Romperre"†

## S

Salire, *to ascend* Pres Ind. salgo, sali, sale, saliamo, salite, salgono Past Def. salsi (or salii), &c. Imperative, sali, salga, salgiamo, &c. Pres Subj. che io salga, &c.

\*Sapere, *to know* (through the mind). Past Part. saputo. Pres Ind. so, sai, sa; sappiamo, sapete, sanno Past Def. seppi, &c. Fut. saprò, &c. Imperative, sappi, sappia, sappiamo, sappiate, ‡ sappiano. Pres Subj. che io sappia, &c.

Scadere, *to decline* (in value, health), *to come due* Past Part. scaduto Past Def. scaddi, &c Fut. scadrò, &c.†

\*Scegliere (or Scerre), *to choose* Past Part. scelto Pres Ind. scelgo, scegli, scegli, scegliamo, scegliete, scelgono Past Def. scelsi, &c Fut. sceglierò (or scerrò), &c Imperative, scegli, scelga, scegliamo, &c Pres Subj. che io scelga, &c

\*Scendere, *to descend* Past Part. sceso. Past Def. scesi, &c

Sciogliere (or sciorre), *to untie, to unravel* Past Part. sciolto. Pres. Ind. sciolgo, sciogli, scioglie, sciogliamo, sciogliete, sciolgono. Past Def. sciolsi, &c. Fut. scioglierò (or sciorrò), &c. Imperative, sciogli, sciolga, sciogliamo, &c. Pres Subj. che io sciolga, &c.

\*Scommettere, *to bet*. Past Part. scommesso. Past Def. scommisi (or scommessi), &c

Scomporre, *to decompose*, is contracted from "Scomponere" See "Porre"

Sconfiggere, *to defeat* Past Part. sconfitto. Past Def. sconfissi, &c.

† The compound tenses of this verb are formed with "Essere"

‡ Notice the irregularity of "Sapere" in the Imperative Mood

Sconvolgere, *to overturn*. Past Part. sconvolto Past Def. sconvolsi, &c.

\*Scoprire (263), *to discover*.† Past Part. scoperto. Past Def. scopersi, &c.

†Scorgere, *to perceive, to discern, to guide* Past Part. scorto. Past Def. scorsi, &c.

Scorrere, *to flow, to glide, to run quickly* Past Part. scorso. Past Def. scorsi, &c.

Scrivere, *to write* Past Part. scritto Past Def. scrissi, &c.

Scuotere,† *to shake* Past Part. scosso. Past Def. scossi, &c.

\*Sedere, *to sit down* Past Part. seduto Pres Ind seggo, siēdi, siēde; sediamo, sedete, seggono. Imperative, siēdi, segga; sediamo, sedete, seggano Pres Subj. che io segga, &c.

Sedersi, *to sit down*, conjugated like "Sedere" §

## VOCABULARY

Una pianura,	a plain.	L'indirizzo,	the address.
Una collina,	a hill	Questo colore,	this colour.

Alla moda, in the fashion Benissimo, very well.

## EXERCISE XXXIII

Well, have you succeeded (258) in your undertaking? No; I shall never succeed. I ascend the hill every morning. It is necessary (bisognare)|| to start at once. If I knew Mr. John's address, I would write (to) him a letter. Can¶ he read? Yes, he can read and write very well. Why have you chosen this colour? I chose (180) it because it is in fashion. I would write to him every day, if (112) I had time. Have you written to the girl's uncle? Yes, I wrote (Past Def.) to him yesterday.

† In the regular forms it is conjugated like "Scrivere"

‡ When in the verb "Scuotere" the tonic accent does not fall on the *o*, the letter *u* may be omitted, as "scotendo," "scotiamo," "scotete," instead of "scuotendo," &c.

§ The compound tenses of this verb are formed with "Essere"

307. || The verbs "Bisognare," *to be necessary*, "Fare," *to make*, "Lasciare," *to allow*, "Dovere," *to be obliged*, "Intendere," *to hear*, "Potere," *to be able*, "Sapere," *to know how*, "Solere," *to be accustomed*, "Volere," *to be willing*, "Sentire," *to feel, or to hear*, and "Udire," *to hear*, do not require any preposition after them, when they are followed by a verb in the Infinitive. Ex

Bisogna Esser forte per lottare con lui. One must be strong to wrestle with him.

Dovreste comprargli un paio di stivali. You ought to buy him a pair of boots.

Voglio sapere se il Conte è arrivato. I want to know if the Count has arrived.

308 ¶ When *can* and *could* are used in the sense of *to know how*, they are translated into Italian by "Sapere."



**Sedurre**, *to seduce*, is contracted from "Seducere," and is, therefore, conjugated thus. Ger. seducendo. Pres. Ind. seduco, &c.

Its irregular forms are Past Part. sedotto. Past Def. sedussi, &c. Fut. sedurrò, &c.

**Seppellire**, *to bury*. Past Part. sepolto *or* seppellito.

**Smettere**, (263) *to leave off*. Past Part. smesso. Past Def. smisi (*or* smessi), &c.

**Socchiudere**, *to half shut*. Past Part. socchiuso. Past Def. socchiusi, &c.

**Soccorrere**, *to succour*. Past Part. soccorso. Past Def. soccorsi, &c.

**Sodisfare**, *to satisfy*, is contracted from "Sodisfacere," and is, therefore, conjugated thus. Ger. sodisfacendo. Imp. Ind. sodisfacevo, &c.

Its irregular forms are Past Part. sodisfatto. Pres. Ind. sodisfaccio (*or* sodisfo), sodisfi, sodisfa, sodisfacciamo, sodisfate, sodisfano. Past Def. sodisfecì, sodisfacestì, sodisfece, &c. Fut. sodisfarò, &c. Imperative, sodisfa, sodisfaccia, sodisfacciamo, sodisfate, sodisfano. Pres. Subj. che io sodisfaccia, &c.

**Soffrire**, *to suffer*. Past Part. sofferto. Past Def. soffersi (*or* soffrì), &c.

**Soggiungere**, *to add*. Past Part. soggiunto. Past Def. soggiunsi, &c.

**Sommergere**, *to submerge*. Past Part. sommerso. Past Def. sommersi, &c.

**Solere** (*or* Esser solito), *to be accustomed*. Past Part. solito. Pres. Ind. soglio, suoli, suole, sogliamo, solete, sogliono, *or* sono solito, sei solito, &c. Imp. Ind. solevo, &c., *or* ero solito, &c. Pres. Subj. che io soglia, &c., *or* che io sia solito, &c. Imp. Subj. che io solessi, &c., *or* che io fossi solito, &c.

**Sommettere**, *to submit*. See "Mettere."

**Sopraggiungere**, *to come unexpectedly*. See "Giungere."

**Soprastare**, *to be above, to domineer*. See "Stare."†

**Sopravvivere**, *to survive*. See "Vivere."

**Sopprimere**, *to suppress*. Past Part. soppresso. Past Def. soppressi, &c.

† The compound tenses of this verb are formed with "Essere"

\**Sorgere, to rise* Past Part. sorto, &c. Past Def. sorsi, &c.\*

\**Sorprendere, to surprise.* Past Part. sorpreso. Past Def. sorpresi, &c.

*Sorreggere, to support.* Past Part. sorretto Past Def. sorressi, &c.

*Sorridere, to smile.* Past Part. sorriso. Past Def. sorrisi, &c.

*Sospendere, to suspend.* Past Part. sospeso Past Def. sospesi, &c.

*Sospingere, to push* Past Part. sospinto Past Def. sospinsi, &c.

\**Sostenere, to sustain* Pres. Ind. sostengo, sostieni, sostiene, sosteniamo, sostenete, sostengono. Past Def. sostenni, &c. Fut. sosterrò, &c. Imperative, sostieni, sostenga, sosteniamo, &c. Pres. Subj. che io sostenga, &c.

*Sottintendere, to be understood.* Past Part. sottinteso Past Def. sottintesi, &c.

*Sottomettere, to submit.* See "Mettere"

*Sottomettersi, to submit,* is conjugated like "Sottomettere."†

*Sottoporre, to subdue* Past Part. sottoposto Past Def. sottoposi, &c.

\**Sottoscrivere, to subscribe.* See "Scritto."

*Sottrarre, to draw away,* is contracted from "Sottraere" See "Trarre"

#### EXERCISE XXXIV.

My father is accustomed (307) to get up (alzarsi) every morning at six o'clock. My uncle spent (Past Def.) too much money in (278) building his house. What is the name of that lady? I do not know, but I believe she is called Mrs. James. You would have succeeded (258) in your undertaking, but you have to deal with a rascal, who cheats (ingannare) everybody.

† The compound tenses of this verb are formed with "Essere"

309 † The expressions *What is the name of? What is called? What do you call?* are expressed in Italian by the verb "Chiamarsi" Ex

Come si chiama?

What is his name?

Si chiama il colonello Silvestri

He is called Colonel Silvestri

310 § *To deal with* is translated by "Aver da fare con" When the preposition *to* precedes a verb in the Infinitive Mood, which depends on the verbs *to have* or *to be*, it is expressed by "da," or by "a";—by "da" when an idea of right or duty is to be indicated, and by "a" when *no* idea of right or duty is to be expressed. Ex

Avete da fare con un birbante

You have to deal with a rascal

È da considerarsi (o considerare) che

It is to be considered that

Ho da scrivere tre lettere

I have three letters to write

Non è da negarsi che

It is not to be denied that

È facile a capirsi

It is easily understood

Questi fiori sono belli a vedersi

These flowers are beautiful to look at

Sovvenire, *to help*, is conjugated like "Venire"

Sovvenirsi, *to remember*, is conjugated like "Venire."†

Spandere, *to spread* Past Part spanto. Past Def spansi, &c.

\*Spargere, *to scatter*. Past Part sparso Past Def sparsi, &c.

\*Spendere, *to spend* Past Part. speso. Past Def spesi, &c.

Spengere (*or* spegnere), *to extinguish*. Past Part. spento. Pres.  
Ind spengo, spegni, spegne, spegnamo, spegnete, spengono  
Past Def spensi, &c. Imperative, spegni, spenga, spegnamo, spegnete, spengano. Pres. Subj. che io spenga, &c

Spingere, *to push* Past Part spinto. Past Def spinsi, &c.

Sporgere, *to project* Past Part sporto. Past Def sporsi, &c.

\*\*Stare, *to be in health (to do), to dwell, to stay*. Ger stando. Pres  
Ind sto, stai, sta, stiamo, state, stanno Past Def stetti, stesti, stette, stemmo, steste, stettero Fut starò, &c.  
Imperative, sta, stia, stiamo, state, stiano (*or* stieno). Pres.  
Subj che io stia, &c. Imp Subj. che io stessi, che tu stessi, &c †

\*Stendere, *to extend*. Past Part steso Past Def stesi, &c

Storcere, *to twist* Past Part. storto. Past Def storsi, &c.

Stravolgere, (265) *to twist, to distort*. Past Part stravolto. Past Def stravolsi, &c.

\*Stringere, *to grasp, to tighten* Past Part. stretto Past Def strinsi, &c

Struggere, *to melt, to dissolve*. Past Part strutto Past Def strussi, &c

Suddividere, *to subdivide*. Past Part. suddiviso. Past Def suddivisi, &c.

Svellere, *to pluck up*. Past Part svelto. Past Def svelsi, &c.

Svenire and Svenirsi, *to faint away*.† See "Venire."

Svolgere, *to unfold, to develop, to dissuade*. Past Part. svolto Past Def svolsi, &c

Supporre, *to suppose, to guess*, is contracted from "Supponere."  
See "Porre"

# T

\* Tacere, *to be silent*. Past Part. taciuto. Pres. Ind taccio, taci, tace; tacciamo, tacete, tacciono Past Def. tacqui, &c.  
Imperative, taci, taccia, tacciamo, &c.

---

† The compound tenses of this verb are formed with "Essere."

**Tendere**, *to tend, to incline to, to stretch* Past Part. *teso*. Past Def. *tesi*, &c.

\*<sup>1</sup> **Tenere**, *to keep, to hold* Pres. Ind *tengo, tieni, tiene, teniamo, tenete, tengono* Past Def. *tenni*, &c. Fut *terrò*, &c. Imperative, *tieni, tenga, teniamo, &c* Pres Subj. *che io tenga*, &c.

**Tergere**, *to clean, to dry up* Past Part *terso*. Past Def *tersi*, &c. **Tingere**, *to dye* Past Part *tinto* Pret Ind *tinsi*, &c.

\* **Togliere** (*or Torre*), *to take away* Past Part *tolto* Pres Ind *tolgo, togli, toglie, toghiamo, toghiete, tolgono* Past Def. *tolsi*, &c Fut *toglierò (or torrò)*, &c Imperative, *togli, tolga, toghiamo, &c* Pres Subj *che io tolga*, &c.

**Torcere**, *to twist* Past Part *torto* Past Def *torsi*, &c

\*\* **Tradurre**, *to translate*, is contracted from "**Traducere**," and is, therefore, conjugated thus Ger *traducendo*. Pres. Ind *traduco*, &c

Its irregular forms are Past Part *tradotto*. Past Def *tradussi*, &c Fut *tradurrò*, &c Cond *tradurrei, tradurresti, tradurrebbe, tradurremmo, tradurreste, tradurrebbero* †

## VOCABULARY

Buon giorno,	good morning	Come sta ?	how do you do ?
Un villaggio,	a village	Versi sciolti,	blank verse.
Un canto,	a canto.	Il vicinato,	the neighbourhood.

## EXERCISE XXXV.

Good morning, sir, how do you do (120) ? I am very well to-day, thank (*ringraziare*) you (122, 193) Where do you live (*stare*) now ? I live in the country, in a small village near Brighton. Have you been (149) to Paris ? No, I have not been there (239). My brother is translating "*La Divina Commedia*," in blank verse. Yesterday he translated (Past Def) two cantos (of it) (240). If I had friends in this neighbourhood, I would remain here (239) for a week.

† See last note (§) on page 80

‡ Notice that the initial *e* of the termination of the 1st and 3rd pers sing and the 3rd pers plur of the Conditional has always the broad sound of the *a* in the word *gate*

311 § When *for* precedes a noun indicating time, it is either not translated into Italian, or it is translated by "*Durante*" Ex

Parlò tre ore di seguito

Sono stato a Parigi sei giorni

He spoke for three hours consecutively.

I have been to Paris for six days

- \*<sup>1</sup> **Trarre**, *to draw, to lead, to live*, is contracted from "Traere."  
 Ger. traendo Past Part tratto. Pres. Ind. traggo, trai, trae, traiamo (*or* traggiamo), traete, traggono Imp Ind. traevo, &c Past Def. tressi, traesti, &c Fut. trarrò, &c. Imperative, trai, tragga, traiamo, traete, traggano. Imp. Subj. che io traessi, &c.
- Trarsi**, *to betake one's-self*. Conjugated like "Trarre"†
- Trascendere**, *to go beyond*. Past Part. trasceso. Past Def. trascesi, &c.
- Trascorrere**, *to elapse, to pass over quickly* Past Part. trascorso. Past Def. trascorsi, &c.
- Trasmettere**, *to transmit* Past Part. trasmesso Past Def. trasmisi (*or* trasmessi), &c
- Trattenere**, *to stop, to entertain* See "Tenere"

## U

- \* **Uccidere**, *to kill*. Past Part ucciso Past Def. uccisi, &c
- \* **Udire**, *to hear*. Pres Ind. odo, odi, ode, udiamo, udite, odono. Fut. udrò (*or* udirò), &c Imperative, odi, oda. udiamo, udite, odano. Pres Subj che io oda, &c
- Ungere**, *to anoint*. Past Part unto Past Def. unsi, &c.†
- Uscire** (*or* Escire), *to go out* Past Part uscito Pres. Ind. esco, esci, esce, usciamo, uscite, escono. Imperative, esci, esca, usciamo, uscite, escano Pres Subj che io esca, &c.†
- Valere**, *to be worth*. Pres Ind valgo, vali, vale, valghiamo (*or* vaghiamo), valetе, valgono Past Def. valse, &c. Fut. varrò, &c. Imperative, vali, valga, valghiamo (*or* vaghiamo), &c Pres Subj che io valga, &c
- \*<sup>1</sup> **Vedere**, *to see*. Past Part. visto (*or* veduto) Pres. Ind. vedo (veggo, *or* veggio), vedi, vede, vediamo, vedete, vedono (*or* veggono) Past Def. vidi, &c Fut. vedrò, &c. Imperative, vedi (*or* ve'), veda (*or* vegga), vediamo, &c. Pres Subj che io vegga, &c.
- \*<sup>1</sup> **Venire**, *to come*. Past Part. venuto Pres. Ind. vengo, vieni, viene; veniamo, venite, vengono. Past Def. venni, &c. Fut. verrò, &c. Imperative, vieni, venga, veniamo, &c. Pres. Subj. che io venga, &c.

† The compound tenses of this verb are formed with "Essere"

‡ See last note (§) on page 80

- Vilipendere, *to vilify*. Past Part vilipeso | Past Def. vilipesi, &c. †  
 \* Vincere, *to win, to vanquish*. Past Part vinto. Past Def. vinsi, &c.  
 \* Vivere, *to live*. Past Part vissuto (*or* vivuto). Past Def. vissi, &c.  
 \* Volere, *to be willing*. Pres. Ind. voglio (*or* vò'), vuoi, vuole, vogliamo, volete, vogliono. Past Def. volli, &c. Fut. vorrò, &c. Imperative, vogli, voglia, | vogliate, vogliano. Pres. Subj. che io voglia, &c.  
 \* Volgere, *to turn* Past Part. volto. Past Def. volsi, &c.

## VOCABULARY.

La voce,	the voice.	Un miglio,	a mile.
La colazione,	the breakfast	Una rivista,	a review.
Il pranzo,	the dinner.	Il mio consiglio,	my advice.

Solamente, only Di vista, by sight A mente, by heart.

## EXERCISE XXXVI.

I hear William's voice, do you? (do you hear it?) My brother is gone out; I do not know when he will return. William will go out with me on (147) Saturday morning. I go out every morning before (to make) breakfast. Do not go out, (122, 126) Henry, your father-in-law wishes (300) to speak to you. Frederick has got the book, but he will (volere) not give it to me. Do you know Mrs. James? I know her only by sight, her house is ¼ a mile from this village. I heard him singing Italian songs. He knows many of them (240) by heart. How much is this ring worth? I could not tell you. One must have much money, to (225) buy good rings. Your brother always comes to see me when he is in London. If you had gone out then, you would have seen the review. He would (224) not give me his advice. I like to hear him translating. †

† Notice that the *s* in Past Participles in "eso" and Past Definites in "esi" has no dot under it, and is therefore pronounced like the *r* in the English word *first*.

‡ Notice that "Volere" has no first person plural in the Imperative.

§ 312 When the verbs "dovere," "potere," "sapere" and "volere," followed by another verb in the Infinitive Mood, are used with any of the Conjunctive Personal Pronouns ("me lo," "gliela," &c.), these may be placed either before or after "dovere," "potere," "sapere" and "volere," thus "Non me lo vuol dare," or "Non vuol darmelo."

§ 313. ¶ The Italians say, "My house is at a mile from this village."

§ 314. ¶ When two or three verbs follow one another, the second and third must be in the Infinitive Mood.

§ 315. \*\* When *can* and *could* are used in the sense of *to be able* they are translated by "potere."

§ 316. †† The expression *One must have* is translated into Italian by "Ci vuole."

## POETICAL AND DEFECTIVE FORMS OF VERBS.\*

317. Having given on page 17 (rule 111), the poetical forms of "Avere," on page 25 (rule 150), the poetical forms of "Essere," on page 29 (rule 169), and on page 30 (rule 174), some hints concerning the poetical forms of Regular Verbs of the First Conjugation, on page 47 (rules 252 and 253), some hints concerning the poetical forms of Regular Verbs of the Second Conjugation, on page 50 (rule 261), some hints concerning the poetical forms of Regular Verbs of the Third Conjugation, I shall now give the most important forms of the Defective Verbs arranged in alphabetical order

318 *Algere, to freeze*, is only used in the 2nd and 3rd pers. sing. and the 3rd pers. plur. of the Past Def. "alsi," "alse," "alsero."

319 *Angere, to torment*, is only used in the 3rd pers. sing. of the Pres. Ind. "ange."

320 *Colere, to honour, to worship*, is only used in the 3rd pers. sing. of the Pres. Ind. "cole"

321 *Federe (or Fedire), to wound*, is only used in the three pers. sing. and the 3rd pers. plur. of the Pres. Ind. "fiedo," "fiedi," "fiede," "fiedono"

322 *Gire, to go*, is used in the Past Part. "gito," in the Imperf. Ind. "givo," "givi," &c., in the Past Def. "gi," "gisti," "gi," &c., in the Fut. "girò," &c., in the Cond. "girai," and the Imperf. Subj. "che or se io gissi," &c.

323 *Ire, to go*, is only used in the Past Part. "ito," in the Imperf. Ind. "ivo," "ivi," &c., in the 2nd pers. sing. and 3rd pers. plur. of the Past Def. "isti," "irone"

324 *Licere, to be lawful*, is only used in the 3rd pers. sing. of the Pres. Ind. "lece" (or "lice")

325 *Molcere, to soothe*, is only used in the Gerund "molcendo," in the 2nd and 3rd pers. sing. of the Pres. Ind. "molci," "molce;" in the Imperf. Ind. "molcevo," &c., and in the 3rd pers. sing. of the Imperf. Subj. "che or se molcesse"

326 *Olire, to be fragrant*, is only used in the 2nd and 3rd pers. sing. of the Pres. Ind. "olisci," "olisce," and in the Imperf. Ind. "olivo," &c.

327 *Riedere (or Redire), to return*, is only used in the Pres. Ind. "riedo," "riedi," &c., in the Imperf. Ind. "riedevo," &c., and in the Past Def. "redii," "redisti," &c.

---

\* The student will find the idiomatical forms of "Andare," "Dare," "Fare," "Stare," "Sapere," "Tenere," and "Venire," further on

## LESSON XVIII.

## ON THE USE OF THE DEFINITE AND PARTITIVE ARTICLES.

328. In Italian the Definite Article ("il," "lo," or "la;" "i," "gli," or "le") is used before any noun (concrete or abstract) employed in a definite sense, that is to say, employed to express—(a) the whole of its genus—(b) a whole class—(c) an individual. Ex.

Gli animali sono utili all'uomo	Animals are useful to men.
Gli uomini irascibili commettono gravi errori	Hot-tempered men commit grave errors.
L'oro è più caro che l'argento	Gold is dearer than silver.
Persino i cattivi ammirano la virtù.	Virtue is admired even by the wicked
L'amore della verità (69)	The love of truth

329. In Italian the definite article is also used before titles of persons. Ex.

Il dottor Sangrado.	Doctor Sangrado
---------------------	-----------------

330 In Italian the definite article is also used before the names of countries and provinces Ex.

L'Asia è molto grande.	Asia is very large.
La Borgogna è molto fertile.	Burgundy is very fertile.

331 Notice, however, that if the name of a country or province be preceded by the preposition "in," no article is used. Ex.

Egli è andato in Italia	He is gone to Italy.
-------------------------	----------------------

332 In Italian the definite article is also used before the names of a few towns, the most important of which are. Il Cairo, l'Aia (*the Hague*), la Rochelle, la Mecca, la Mirandola

333 In Italian the definite article is also placed before the family names of very distinguished persons, who lived since the year 1200 Ex. Il Petrarca,† il Milton, il Molière, il Tiziano, il Byron, il Manzoni, il Darwin Ex.

L'Ariosto è il pittore della natura	Ariosto is the painter of nature.
-------------------------------------	-----------------------------------

334 Notice, that no article is used before the names of distinguished persons, when only their Christian name, or if more than one word is used to designate them. Ex.

Dante morì a Ravenna.	Dante died in Ravenna.
Carlo Darwin era modesto.	Charles Darwin was modest.

\* See rule 63, to understand the meaning of the letters in the darker type

335 † "Il Petrarca," "Il Tiziano," mean "Il poeta Petrarca," "Il pittore Tiziano" The Italians also say "la Saffo," *the poetess Sappho*



336. In Italian the definite article is also placed before Adjectives, Adverbs, Prepositions, Conjunctions, Interjections and Verbs in the Infinitive Mood, when they are used as nouns. Ex

Carlo ama l'utile	Charles is fond of what is useful
Il saper ascoltare è utile quanto	To know how to listen is as useful
il saper parlare	as to know how to speak.

337. When several nouns follow one another in the same sentence (whether used as subjects or objects), the definite article must be repeated in Italian before each of them, when it is already expressed before the first Ex.

Il ferro, l'oro e l'argento sono	Iron, gold and silver are very use-
metalli utilissimi	ful metals.

338. When two adjectives are united by the conjunction "e," and one of them is intended to qualify a substantive expressed and the other a substantive understood, the article must be repeated, in Italian, before each adjective Ex

Conosce la storia antica e la	He knows ancient and modern
moderna.	history

339 But when the adjectives, united by 'e,' and, qualify only one substantive, the article is not repeated Ex

Anna d'Austria, la bella e al-	Anne of Austria the proud and
tiera regina di Francia.	beautiful Queen of France

THE WORDS REQUIRED TO COMPOSE THIS AND THE FOLLOWING EXERCISES ARE GIVEN IN THE VOCABULARY AT THE END OF THE GRAMMAR

### EXERCISE XXXVII.

Necessity (328) is the mother of invention. Flowers (328) are very dear (in) this season of the year. The Alps separate France (330) from Italy. Drawing (328) owes its origin to chance, sculpture to religion, and painting to the progress of the other arts. Fear and ignorance are the sources of superstition. The love of (328) music and poetry is universal in Italy. Captain (329) Bravo wishes to speak to your father. Go and\* tell (to) him (198) that my father is in (331) France. Good (328) laws make good men.

340 \* The preposition "a" is used in Italian instead of the English conjunction *and*, after a verb expressing motion Ex

Andate a prendere la mia mantellina.	Go and fetch my mantle
--------------------------------------	------------------------

## ON THE OMISSION OF THE DEFINITE ARTICLE.

341 The definite article is *not* required in Italian before any noun used adverbially, or preceded by "senza," *without*, "nè," *neither*, *nor*, or "sia," *whether it be*. Ex

Luigi lavora con perseveranza. Louis works with perseverance.  
Il suo socio è un uomo senza merito. His partner is a man without merit.

Essa non ha nè bellezza nè talento. She has neither beauty nor talent

Sia superbia, sia timidità, essa non volle parlare. Whether through pride or timidity, she would not speak

342. The definite article is *not* required in Italian before nouns used in apposition with preceding words Ex

Dublino, capitale dell'Irlanda. Dublin, the capital of Ireland.  
Sposò Margherita, figlia di Enrico II. He married Margaret, the daughter of Henry II.

343 The definite article is *not* required in Italian before nouns used emphatically Ex

Uomini, donne, fanciulli, tutto perì! Men, women, children, everything perished!

344 The definite article is *not* required in Italian before the ordinal numbers "primo," *first*, "secondo," *second*, &c., when they come after the name of a sovereign, or after the words "libro," *book*, "capo," or "capitolo," *chapter*, "atto," *act*, "scena," *scene* Ex.

Enrico quarto, re di Francia. Henry IV., King of France  
Atto primo, scena quarta. Act the first, scene the fourth.

## ON THE USE OF THE PARTITIVE ARTICLE

345. To the rules relating to the Partitive Article "del," *dello*, "della," *della*, "dei," *degli*, "delle," which have been given on page 22, and which the student should now read over, the following must be added

346 The preposition "di," only (not "del," *dello*, &c) is required before a noun or name used adjectively Ex

Guarda, sorella mia, che bell'anello d'oro. Look, sister, what a beautiful gold ring

Il regno d'Italia è grande. The kingdom of Italy is large

347 The preposition "di," only (not "del," *dello*, &c) is required before a noun used as a complement to another noun Ex

Caro fratello dammi un quaterno di carta da scrivere. Dear brother, give me a quire of note paper

\* Observe that the initial letters of "mi," "ti," "lo," "la," "ci," and "vi" is doubled when these words are joined after "va," *go* (from "andare"), "dà," *give* (from "dare," and in this case the accent is not written), "fa," *do, make* (from "fare"), and "sta," *stays* (from "stare")

348. The preposition "di" only (not "del," "dello," &c.) is required after an adjective or a past participle expressed or understood Ex

La via era adorna di alberi	The road was lined with trees.
Il baule era coperto di polvere	The trunk was covered with dust
Un canestro (pieno) di fiori	A basket of flowers.

349 The preposition "di," only (not "del," "dello," &c.), is required after the words "qualità," "sorte," "genere," "specie," "corso." Ex.

Egli vende tre qualità di tè.	He sells three kinds of tea.
-------------------------------	------------------------------

350. Notice, however, that a noun must be preceded by the partitive article "del," "dello," &c. (and not merely by the preposition "di") when it is taken in a specified sense Ex.

Un quintero della carta che comprai ieri	A quire of the paper I bought yesterday
La via era adorna degli alberi che ho piantati io stesso	The road was lined with the trees I have planted myself
Egli vende tre qualità del tè che viene da Ceylon.	He sells three kinds of the tea which comes from Ceylon.

### EXERCISE XXXVIII.

Glory (328) follows virtue like a shadow. If your brother studied with (341) perseverance, he would succeed (258). Eating, (267, 336) drinking, and sleeping are necessary to man Last year we visited (Past Def.) Cairo, (342) the capital of Egypt. His cousin Margaret married William, (342) the son of Colonel Barducci This bronze statue was (Imp. Ind) formerly in the Municipal Palace of Modena. I wish to attend (assistere a) a course of lectures which (che) he will begin to-morrow evening What shall I buy you (for you)? (213, 251) Buy me a box of steel pens (347), a dozen of quills, a quire of (347) foreign paper, and three sheets of blotting-paper His apartments were adorned (175) with (266) the pictures which (che) he had himself (189) bought at Padova. The question is to decide whether we shall meet again (radunarsi) to-morrow or on (147, 74) Wednesday next The theatre was (Imperf Ind) full of strangers† and foreigners. The hall is full (350) of the men who have taken part in the strike It is necessary (bisognare) (307) to start at once

351 \* The expressions *the question is*, or *was*, *the matter is*, or *was* are translated into Italian by "Si tratta di," "Si trattava di"

352 † *Stranger* is translated by "forastiere," and *foreigner*, by "straniero"

## LESSON XIX.

## ON THE USE OF THE INDEFINITE ARTICLE

353. The indefinite article is *not* required in Italian before nouns used in apposition with preceding words Ex.

I Rivali, bellissima commedia The Rivals, a very fine comedy  
di Sheridan by Sheridan

354. The indefinite article is *not* used in Italian before nouns expressing nationality, title, profession and condition, used adjectively Ex

Sono Scozzese di nascita.	I am a Scotchman by birth.
Suo nipote è libraio	His nephew is a bookseller.
Mio nonno era generale	My grandfather was a general
Egli è stato prigioniero +	He has been a prisoner.

355. Notice that when nouns expressing nationality, &c., are qualified, the indefinite article is required before them Ex

Maria Stuarda era una principessa di sventurata razza Mary Stuart was a princess of an unfortunate race

356 The indefinite article is *not* used in Italian before "cento," *a* (one) hundred, and "mille," *a* (one) thousand Ex

Hanno comprato cento quadri They bought a hundred pictures  
per mille lire sterline for a thousand pounds

357 The indefinite article is *not* used in Italian before the title of a book, or the heading of a chapter Ex

Vita di Lord Macaulay A Life of Lord Macaulay.

358 The indefinite article is *not* used in Italian after "che," "quale," *what a*, used exclamatively Ex.

Guardi, che bel castello ! Look, what a beautiful castle !

359 In Italian the indefinite article is placed before, and not after the adjective "tale," *such*, and the adverb "così," or "sì," *so*. Ex

Un tal uomo è odioso	Such a man is odious.
Una così bella opera !	So beautiful a work

360. The indefinite article is *not* used in Italian in the expressions "Far regalo di,"† *to make a present of*, "Far segno," *to make a sign*, "Far fortuna," *to make a fortune*, "Metter fine," *to put an end to*

\* Notice that an *e* preceded by an *s* has always the broad sound of the *a* in the word *gate*

361 † When the words "regalo," "segno" and "fortuna" are qualified, the article is required Ex "Fece una gran fortuna," *he made a large fortune*

## ON THE DIFFERENT USE OF THE ARTICLE.

362 Before the names c. measure, weight, number and time, the Italians use the definite article instead of the indefinite article which is employed by the English. Ex

Ho pagato questo panno cinque scellini il braccio	I have paid five shillings a yard for this cloth
Queste pere costano due soldi la libbra	These pears cost a penny a pound
Questi aranci si vendono un franco la dozzina	These oranges are sold a franc a dozen
Abbiamo lezione di canto tre volte la settimana.	We have singing lessons three times a week
Egli guadagna due scellini l'ora.	He earns two shillings an hour.

## EXERCISE XXXIX

Michelangelo was (355) a sculptor, a painter, an architect, and a poet of great celebrity When I made his acquaintance he was a banker (354), now he is a poor workman (355) What are you reading, Henry? "I Lombardi alla prima Crociata," a (353) splendid poem, by (of) Tommaso Grossi My father is a captain (354) in the French army We bought (180) a hundred (356) Turkish carpets for a thousand (356) guineas This cloth costs six shillings a (362) yard The best coffee comes from Mocha, a (353) town in (of) Arabia I give four shillings a day to my gardener What is the title of Charles' new book? "A (357) life of Lord Palmerston" What a (358) beautiful morning! shall we go out for a walk? Yes, as soon as (249) I have written my letters. What a beautiful horse! where did you buy it? (193) I bought it from Colonel James This man works by the hour; he earns three shillings an (362) hour. Her father knows† a great deal, he earns six hundred guineas a year. Captain Cook was a navigator of great celebrity (355)

363 \* The expressions *to work by the hour, by the day, by the week, &c.* are translated into Italian by "*lavorare all'ora,*" "*al giorno,*" "*alla settimana,*" &c

364 † When *to know*, means *to know through the mind*, and *to know how*, it is translated by "*Sapere*" Ex

Mio cugino sa il tedesco	My cousin knows German
Voi non sapete la vostra lezione	You do not know your lessons
Suo figlio non sa comportarsi	Your son does not know how to behave

365 But when *to know* means *to be acquainted with* (through the senses), it is translated by "*Conoscere*" Ex

Conosco il Presidente	I know the President (Chairman)
-----------------------	---------------------------------

## LESSON XX.

## ON THE GENDER AND NUMBER OF NOUNS.

366. In Italian, nouns are either of the masculine or of the feminine gender—there is no neuter—and the gender of Italian nouns is determined either by their meaning, or by their termination.

DETERMINATION OF THE GENDER OF NOUNS BY  
THEIR MEANING

367 Appellations of men, and the names of male animals are masculine, whilst appellations of women, and the names of female animals are feminine \*

ON THIS POINT THE FOLLOWING OBSERVATIONS ARE NECESSARY—

368 The words “Maestà,” *majesty*, “Santità,” *holmess*, “Eminenza,” *Emmence*, “Eccellenza,” *Excellency*, and “Signoria,” *Lordship* or *Ladyship*, are feminine, and, therefore, the Italians call a king “Sua Maestà,” and the pope, “Sua Santità”

369 The Italians apply the words ‘una sentinella,’ *a sentry*, “una recruta,” *a recruit*, “una guardia,” *a guard, a keeper*, “una guida,” *a guide*, “una spia,” *a spy*, “una vittima,” *a victim*, to a man as well as to a woman

370. The appellations “compatriota,” *compatriot*, “artista,” *artist*, “statista,” *political economist*, “moralista,” *moralist*, “pessimista,” *pessimist*, “scrittore,” *writer*, “autore,” *author*, and “testimonio,” *virtuosity*, are applied to men and women alike.

371 Nouns which admit of both genders form the feminine by changing the final vowel into a

Mio cugino,	my cousin,	mia cugina,	my cousin
Mio cognato,	my brother-in-law,	mia cognata,	my sister-in-law.
Il mio maestro,	my teacher,	la mia maestra,	my teacher.
Un cameriere,	a valet,	una cameriera,	a lady's-maid.
Un ebreo,	a Jew,	un'ebrea,	a Jewess
Un vedovo,	a widower,	una vedova,	a widow.

372. \* The names of some animals, as “un coniglio,” *a rabbit*, “un cammello,” *a camel*, “una balena,” *a whale*, “un'aquila,” *an eagle*, serve both for the male and the female, in Italian, so that, to be more explicit, the word “maschio,” *male*, or the word “femmina,” *female*, is placed after the name of the animal. Ex. “Un coniglio maschio,” *a buck rabbit*, “un coniglio femmina,” *a doe rabbit*

373. Words (nouns and adjectives) which are derived from verbs, and end in *ante* and *ente*, as well as those derived from a country or town, ending in *ese*, are the same for both genders. Ex.

Il cantante,	the singer,	la cantante,	the singer.
Il credente,	the believer,	la credente,	the believer
Un Inglese,	an Englishman,	una Inglese,	an Englishwoman.
Un Francese,	a Frenchman,	una Francese,	a Frenchwoman.

374 Nouns which have the masculine termination in *tor*, form the feminine in *trice* Ex.

L'esecutore,	the executor,	l'esecutrice,	the executrix.
L'imperatore,	the emperor,	l'imperatrice,	the empress.
Il traditore,	the traitor,	la traditrice,	the traitress

375 The following nouns form the feminine in *essa* :

Un abate,	an abbot	un'abadessa,	an abbess
Un barone.	a baron,	una baronessa,	a baroness
Un conte,	a count,	una contessa,	a countess
Un dottore,	a doctor	una dottoressa,	a lady doctor.
Un duca,	a duke,	una duchessa,	a duchess
Un gigante,	a giant	una gigantessa,	a giantess
Un leone.	a lion,	una leonessa,	a lioness
Un oste.	a host,	un'ostessa,	a hostess
Un poeta,	a poet	una poetessa,	a poetess
Un pavone,	a peacock,	una pavonessa,	a pea-hen
Un principe.	a prince,	una principessa,	a princess
Un profeta,	a prophet,	una profetessa,	a prophetic
Un sacerdote,	a priest,	una sacerdotessa,	a priestess.

376 Names of Empires, Kingdoms, Provinces, and Rivers ending in *a* are feminine Ex. "La Russia," *Russia*, "la Spagna," *Spain*, "la Calabria," *Calabria*, "la Senna," *the Seine* When they end with any of the other vowels, they are masculine Ex. "Il Brasile," *Brazil*, "il Tamigi," *the Thames*, "il Portogallo," *Portugal*, "il Perù," *Peru*

377 Names of Towns ending in *a* or in *e* are feminine. Ex. "La bella Roma," *beautiful Rome*, "La sapiente Atene," *learned Athens*. If they end in any other vowel, they are of either gender

378. Names of Islands are feminine. Ex. "La Sardegna," *Sardinia*

379. Names of Lakes are mas. Ex. "Il Ladoga," *lake Ladoga*.

\* An *s*, dotted thus *s*, has the soft sound of the *s* in the word *rose*.

380. Names of Trees generally end in *o*, and are masculine. Ex. "Un pero," *a pear-tree*, "un ciriegio," *a cherry-tree*.

Except "una quercia," *an oak*, "un' elce," *a holm-oak*, "una palma," *a palm-tree*, and "una vite," *a vine*.

381. Names of Fruits generally end in *a*, and are feminine. Ex. "Una pesca," *a peach*, "una mela," *an apple*, "una castagna," *a chestnut*.

Except "un pomo," *an apple*, "un fico," *a fig*, "un arancio," *an orange*, "un limone," *a lemon*, "un cedro," *a citron*; "un dattero," *a date*, "un pistacchio," *a pistachio nut*, which signify the tree as well as the fruit.

382. Adjectives, Verbs, Adverbs, and Conjunctions, used as nouns, are masculine. Ex. "Il bello," *the beautiful*; "il cantare," *the singing*, "il perchè," *the reason why*.

383. The following nouns must be noticed —

Un baleno,	a flash of lightning,	una balena,	a whale
Un colpo,	a blow,	una colpa,	a fault.
Un foglio,	a sheet of paper,	una foglia,	a leaf
Il porto,	the harbour,	la porta,	the gate, the door.
Il soglio,	the throne,	la soglia,	the threshold
Il velo,	the veil,	la vela,	the sail.
Il volto,	the face	la volta,	the arched ceiling

## EXERCISE XL

His Holiness (368) Pope Leo the tenth (Leone decimo) was a (353) son of the celebrated' Lorenzo de' Medici. There was (154) a sentry at each door of the palace. If he does not act (Pres Ind) with prudence, he will soon become the victim of his companions. He has (149) been (277) a widower (354) these four years. Last year I went to Florence with my brother-in-law and my cousin Margaret. The two sentries† were women. When we go to (207) Italy we meet (239) many of our countrywomen † She is French and he is English, they are both good singers § The emperor (374) and empress were (Imper Ind) surrounded by princes (375) and princesses, barons and baronesses.

384. When the word *celebrated* means *famous* it is translated into Italian by "celebre," but when it means *celebrated* it is translated by "celebrato."

385. † The words "sentinella," "securata," &c, (rule 369) form their plurals by changing the final *a* into an *e*, for men and women alike.

386. † The words "compatriota," "artista," &c, (rule 370) form their plurals by changing the final *a* into an *i* when they refer to men, but by changing the final *a* into an *e* when they refer to women.

387. § The words "cuiante," &c "inglese," &c (rule 373) form their plurals by changing the final *e* into an *i*, both when they refer to men and women.



# DETERMINATION OF THE GENDER OF NOUNS BY THEIR VOWEL ENDINGS, AND FORMATION OF THE PLURAL OF NOUNS

388. As stated already, nearly all the Italian words end with one of the five vowels, *a, e, i, o, u*, and the gender and number of nouns is generally indicated by the ending vowel. Therefore, along with the rules for recognising the gender of nouns, will be given the rules for the formation of the plural.

## WORDS ENDING IN A

389. All nouns ending in *a* are feminine, and form their plural by changing the *a* into *e*. Ex.

La grida,      the edict,      le gride,      the edicts

390. Of course, names of dignities and professions of men, ending in *a* (see rule 370), are of the masculine gender, and form their plurals in *i*. Ex. "Il papa," *the pope*, "i papi," *the popes*, "il monarca," *the monarch*, "i monarchi," *the monarchs*, "il duca," *the duke*, "i duchi," *the dukes*, "il poeta," *the poet*, "i poeti," *the poets*

ON THIS POINT THE FOLLOWING OBSERVATIONS ARE NECESSARY —

391. Feminine nouns ending in *ea* form their plural by changing *ea* into *ee*. Ex.

La mia idea,      my idea,      le mie idee,      my ideas

392. Feminine nouns ending in *cia* and *gia* may lose the *i* in the plural. Ex.

La caccia      the chase,      le cacce,      the chases

La spiaggia,      the shore,      le spiagge,      the shores

Except in "le bugie," *the lies*, which is the plural of "la bugia," *the lie*, because the accent falls upon the *i*.

393. Feminine nouns ending in *ca* and *ga*, in the singular, take an *h* in the plural, and change the *a* into *e*. Ex.

La bocca,      the mouth,      le bocche,      the mouths

La monaca,      the nun,      le monache,      the nuns

La strega,      the witch,      le streghe,      the witches

394. Masculine nouns ending in *ca* and *ga*, in the singular, require an *h* in the plural, and change the *a* into *i*. Ex.

Il duca,      the duke,      i duchi,      the dukes.

Il collega,      the colleague,      i colleghi,      the colleagues

395. Un lapis, *a pencil*, "i ripes," *currants*, "un diesel," *a steamboat*, are almost the only nouns ending with a consonant used in Italian. They do not change in the plural.

396 All nouns ending in "tà" (all "parole tronche")\* are feminine and do not change the form in the plural Ex.

La città,	the town, city,	le città,	the towns, cities
La carità,	charity,	la sincerità,	sincerity

397 The following nouns (derived from the Greek language), ending in *a*, are masculine, in Italian, and form their plural by changing the *a* into *i* —

L'anatema,	the anathema,	gli anatemi,	the anathemas.
L'assiomà,	the axiom,	gli assiomi,	the axioms
Il clima,	the climate,	i climi,	the climates
Il diadema,	the diadem,	i diademi,	the diadems
Il diploma,	the diploma,	i diplomi,	the diplomas
Il dogma,	the dogma,	i dogmi,	the dogmas
Il dramma,	the drama,	i drammi,	the dramas.
L'emblema,	the emblem,	gli emblemi,	the emblems
L'enigma,	the enigma,	gli enigmi,	the enigmas.
L'epigramma,	the epigram,	gli epigrammi,	the epigrams
Il fantasma,	the phantom,	i fantasmi,	the phantoms.
L'idioma,	the idiom,	gli idiomi,	the idioms
Il pianeta,	the planet,	i pianeti,	the planets.
Il poema,	the poem,	i poemi,	the poems
Il problema,	the problem,	i problemi,	the problems
Il programma,	the programme,	i programmi,	the programmes.
Lo scisma,	the schism,	gli scismi,	the schisms.
Il sistema,	the system,	i sistemi,	the systems
Il sofisma,	the sophism,	i sofismi,	the sophisms.
Lo stemma,	the coat of arms,	gli stemmi,	the coats of arms.
Lo stratagemma,	the stratagem,	gli stratagemmi,	the stratagems
Il telegramma,	the telegram,	i telegrammi,	the telegrams
Il tema	the theme,	i temi,	the themes

#### WORDS ENDING IN E

398 Nouns ending in *e* are some masculine and some feminine, but for both genders the plural is formed by changing the *e* into *i*. Ex.

Il cane,	the dog,	i cani,	the dogs
La canzone,	the song,	le canzoni,	the songs.

ON THIS POINT THE FOLLOWING OBSERVATIONS ARE NECESSARY —

399 Words ending in *ore* (which are very numerous) are all masculine Ex "Il fiore," the flower; "i fiori," the flowers

400 Notice that the following nouns ending in *a* are masculine, and remain unchanged in the plural "il sofà," *the sofa*, "i sofà," *the sofas*, "il falbalà," *the flounce*, "i falbalà," *the flounces*, "il taffetà," *the taffety*, "il baccalà," *dried cod*

401. Words ending in *ente* are masculine. Ex. "Il dente," the tooth; "i denti," the teeth.

Except "la gente," *the people*, "le genti," *the nations*, "la lente," *the lens*, or *lentic*, "le lenti," *the lenses*, or *lentic*, "la mente," *the mind*, "le menti," *the minds*, "la corrente," *the current*, "le correnti," *the currents*, "la sorgente," *the source*, "le sorgenti," *the sources*.

402. Words ending in *me* are masculine. Ex. "il fiume," the river, "i fiumi," the rivers.

Except "l'arme," *the weapon*, "le armi," *the weapons*, "un'uniforme," *a uniform*, and "la fame," *hunger*.

403. Words ending in *one* are masculine. Ex. "Il balcone," the balcony, "i balconi," the balconies.

Except "la canzone," *the song*, "le canzoni," *the songs*, "la tenzone," *the combat*, "le tenzoni," *the combats*.

404. Concrete nouns (*i.e.*, names of objects) ending in *ione* (about twenty) are masculine. Ex.

L'arcione,	the saddle-bow,	gli arcioni,	the saddle-bows
Il battaglione,	the battalion,	i battaglioni,	the battalions.
Il bastione,	the bastion,	i bastioni,	the bastions
Il padiglione,	the pavilion,	i padiglioni,	the pavilions.

405. Abstract nouns (*i.e.*, names of things that have no substance) ending in *ione* (about three hundred) are feminine. Ex.

L'azione,	the action,	le azioni,	the actions
La conversazione,	the conversation,	le conversazioni,	the conversations
La discussione,	the discussion,	le discussioni,	the discussions

406. Nouns ending in *udine* (about twenty) are feminine. Ex.

L'abitudine,	habit,	la solitudine,	solitude.
La mansuetudine,	meekness,	l'incudine,	the anvil.

## WORDS ENDING IN I.

407. Nouns ending in *i* are masculine, and do not change form in the plural. Ex. "Il brindisi," *the toast*, "i brindisi," *the toasts*, "il dì," *the day*, "i dì," *the days*; "il lunedì," *the Monday*, "i lunedì," *the Mondays*; "un barbaglianni," *an owl*.

Except a few words (about twelve) derived from the Greek, which are feminine. Ex.

La metropoli,	the metropolis,	le metropoli,	the metropolis.
L'analisi,†	the analysis,	le analisi,	the analysis
La crisi,	the crisis,	le crisi,	the crises.
La diocesi,	the diocese,	le diocesi,	the diocese.

\* An *e*, dotted thus *e*, has the broad sound of the *a* in the word *gate*

† An *i*, dotted thus *i*, has the soft sound of the *s* in the word *rose*

## WORDS ENDING IN O.

408. All words ending in *o* are of the masculine gender, and form their plural by changing the *o* into *i*. Ex

Il tempo,	the time,	1 tempi,	the times
Il trono,	the throne,	1 troni,	the thrones.
Il palazzo,	the palace,	1 palazzi,	the palaces.

Except "*la mano*," *the hand*, "*le mani*," *the hands*, and "*eco*," *the echo*.

ON THIS POINT THE FOLLOWING OBSERVATIONS ARE NECESSARY —

409 Nouns ending in *co* and *go* take an *h* in the plural. Ex

Il bosco,	the wood,	1 boschi,	the woods
Il fuoco,	the fire,	1 fuochi,	the fires
Il manico,	the handle,	1 manichi,	the handles.
Il castigo,	the punishment,	1 castighi,	the punishments

410. Notice however that the following words do not require any *h* in their plural form. Ex

Il Greco,	the Greek,	1 Greci,	the Greeks.
Il porco,	the pig,	1 porci,	the pigs.
L' amico,	the friend,	gli amici,	the friends.
Il nemico,	the enemy,	1 nemici,	the enemies.
Il medico,	the doctor,	1 medici,	the doctors.
Il portico,	the portico,	1 portici,	the porticoes
Il mosaico,	the mosaic,	1 mosaici,	the mosaics.

411 As a general rule nouns ending in *io* form their plural by merely cutting off the final *o* Ex

L' occhio,	the eye,	gli occhi,	the eyes
Il viaggio,	the voyage,	1 viaggi,	the voyages
Il fornajo,	the baker,	1 fornai,†	the bakers

412 Notice, however, that the following words end with two *i* in the plural to distinguish them from similar words ending with one *i* only in the plural, and having quite a different meaning —

I templi,	the churches,	to distinguish it from	1 tempi,	the times
I principi,	the principles,	" " "	1 principi,	the princes
I giudici,	the judgments,	" " "	1 giudici,	the judges
Gli omicidi,	the murders,	" " "	gli omicidi,	the murderers
I benefici,	the benefices,	" " "	benefici,	benevolent (plur.)
Gli atrii,	the porches,	" " "	atri,	black (plur.)

413 \* "*Eco*" was originally the name of a girl. Some writers make "*eco*" masculine, in the plural, however, it is always "*gli echi*," *the echoes*

414 † Formerly the words ending in *ajo* in the singular were made to end in the plural in *aj* as *fornaj*

415 Nouns that have an accent over the *i* (io) in the singular, form their plural by changing the *io* into *u*. Ex

Lo zio,	the uncle,	gli zii,	the uncles.
Il rio,	the brook,	i ri,	the brooks.
Il pendio,	the slope,	i pendii,	the slopes.
Il leggio,	the reading-desk,	i leggi,	the reading-desks.

### WORDS ENDING IN U

416. There are only a few words in Italian ending in *ù*, they are feminine and do not change form in the plural Ex.

La virtù,	virtue	le virtù,	virtues.
-----------	--------	-----------	----------

Except "il ragù," *steamed meat*, which is masculine, and has for plural "i ragù," *steamed meats*

417 The following nouns, indicating parts of the human body, may end in the plural either in *i*, and be masculine, or in *a*, and be feminine \*

Il ciglio,	the eyebrow,	i cigli or le ciglia,	the eyebrows.
Il labbro,	the lip,	i labbri or le labbra,	the lips.
Il braccio,	the arm,	i bracci or le braccia,	the arms.
Il gomito,	the elbow,	i gomiti or le gomita,	the elbows
Il dito,	the finger,	i diti or le dita,	the fingers
Il ginocchio,	the knee,	i ginocchi or le ginocchia,	the knees.
Il calcagno,	the heel,	i calcagni or le calcagna,	the heels

### EXERCISE XLI

Chronology (328) and (337) geography are the eyes (411) of history (328) Spain produces lemons, oranges, and olives in great abundance Poets (328) compare cheeks (392) to roses, eyes to stars, hands (408) to lilies, and teeth to pearls One must (307) know (364) mathematics† (225) to understand astronomy thoroughly I admire the theatres (408), fountains, statues, galleries, and gardens of this beautiful city History proves that (che) philosophers (328) have always been preceded by (269, 270) poets, and (by the) painters The rose is the queen of flowers, and the emblem of (328) beauty We have visited the principal cities (396) of Italy The earth presents on its surface, heights, (137, 389) hollows, precipices, (411) volcanoes, seas, marshes, rivers, (402) forests, and fields. These men are not (125) French, they are German (409), three are sailors (411), the others are workmen

418 \* The words "anello," *ring*, "castello," *castle*, "lino," *thread*, "urlo," *howling*, and a few others, may end in the plural either in *i* or in *a*

† The student is advised to look for the translations of the words in the vocabulary at the end of this grammar before applying the rules bearing on them in the exercises

419 ‡ Mathematics, statistics, politics, are generally translated into Italian by "La matematica, la statistica, la politica"

# IRREGULARITIES IN THE GENDER AND NUMBER OF NOUNS

420. The following nouns have two meanings, and for each meaning there is a different plural —

IL MEMBRO, the member	I MEMBRI, the members (of a society), and LE MEMBRA, the limbs of the body
IL GESTO, the gesture	I GESTI, the gestures of an orator, of an actor, and LE GESTA, the exploits of a hero
IL FRUTTO, the fruit, the result	I FRUTTI, the results, also the fruits of the same plants, and LE FRUTTA, fruits of various kinds (dessert).
IL MURO, the wall	I MURI, the walls of a house, of a garden, of a park, and LE MURA, the walls of a town.
IL CARRO, the chariot, the cart	I CARRI, the chariots, and LE CARRA, the carts, cart-loads
L'osso, the bone	GLI OSSI, the bones (any bones), and LE OSSI, the human bones.
IL CORNO, the horn	I CORNI, the horns (wind instruments), and LE CORNA, the horns of an animal
IL RISO, the rice, the laugh.	I RISI, the rice (an Italian dish), and LE RISI, the plural of laugh
IL LEGNO, the wood, the carriage, the ship	I LEGNI, the woods, the carriages, the ships, and LE LEGNA fire-wood
IL MAGO, the magician, or the wise man (of the East)	I MAGHI, the magicians, and I MAGI, the wise men (of the East)

421 The following nouns in the singular end in *o*, and are masculine, in the plural end in *a*, and are feminine —

L' uovo, <sup>†</sup>	the egg,	le uova,	the eggs
Il miglio,	the mile,	le miglia,	the miles
Il paio,	the pair,	le paia,	the pairs
Lo staio,	the bushel,	le staia,	the bushels
Il grido,	the cry,	le grida,	the cries
Il centinaio,	the hundred,	le centinaia,	the hundreds
Il migliaio,	the thousand,	le migliaia,	the thousands.

<sup>†</sup> Notice that an *o* preceded by a *u* has always the broad sound of the *o* in the word *orphan*

‡22 Words ending in *te*\* are feminine, and do not change form in the plural. Ex\

La specie, the species, kind, le specie, the species, kinds.  
La superficie, the surface, le superficie, the surfaces.

Except "la moglie," *the wife*, which makes in the plural "le mogli."

‡23 The following nouns are irregular in the plural —

Dio,	God,	gli dei,	the gods.
L'uomo,	the man,	gli uomini,	the men.
Il bue,	the ox,	i buoi,	the oxen.

‡24. The following words have two meanings, and two genders —

"Il tema," means *the exercise*, "la tema," means *fear*.  
"Il fine," means *the aim, scope*, "la fine," means *the end*.  
"Un margine," means *a margin*, "una margine," means *a scar*.  
"Un diamma," means *a draught*, "una dramma," means *a drachm*.  
"Un pianeta," means *a planet*, "una pianeta," means *a priest's cope*.

‡25 Observe that the words "la fame," *hunger*, "la sete," *thirst*, "la gioventù," *youth*, "la servitù," *servants, slavery*, "l'udito," *the hearing*, "il miele," *honey*, "il fieno," *hay*, "la stirpe," *race, family*, and the names of virtues, vices, and metals are only used in the singular. Ex "La probità," *probity*, "la modestia," *modesty*, "la superbia," *pride*, "l'oro," *gold*, "l'acciaio," *steel*, &c, are only used in the singular.

‡26 The following words are only employed in the plural —

Gli annali,	the annals	Le molle,	the tongs.
Le forbici, }	the scissors	Le stoviglie,	the crockery-ware
Le cesoie, }		Le spezie,	the spices
Le nozze,	the wedding	L'esequie,	the obsequies

## EXERCISE XLII

The fruit (420) for dessert is (are) on the side-board. The Jupiter of Homer was the first among the gods (88, 423) of mythology. The games (409) and exercises practised by the Greeks, were good for the health of the body, and (for) the strength of the limbs (420). I have bought two pairs (421) of boots, one for Mary, and one for my sister Elizabeth. A friend has sent me (193) a basket of eggs (421). Climate (328, 397) has great influence on the character of (328) men. I have corrected your exercises.

‡27 \* Notice that words ending with an accented vowel (see rules 396, 400, and 416), words ending in *i* (see rule 407), and words ending in *ze* (see rule 422) do not, as a rule, change form in the plural. Also that "re," *king* (which was formerly accented) has the same form in the singular and in the plural.

## LESSON XXI

## ON ITALIAN AND ENGLISH COMPOUND NOUNS.

## ON ITALIAN COMPOUND NOUNS.

428. The number of Italian compound words is very limited, and the order of the words in them is seldom reversed. *Most* of them are of the masculine gender, and form the plural of the words of which they are composed according to the sense. Ex

SINGULAR		PLURAL
Un capolavoro, <sup>i</sup>	a masterpiece,	dei capolavori
Un capocaccia,	a chief hunter,	dei capicaccia.
Una ferrovia,	a railway,	delle ferrovie
Un bassorilievo,	a bas-relief,	dei bassirilievi
Un capogiro,	a fit of giddiness,	dei capogiri
Un arcobaleno,	a rainbow,	degli archibaleno
Uno spazzacamino,	a chimney-sweeper,	degli spazzacamini
Madreperla,	mother-of-pearl,	delle madreperle

429 When the first of the two words in a compound noun is Greek or Latin, or has lost the vowel ending, the second word alone is inflected. Ex

SINGULAR		PLURAL
Un monosillabo,	a monosyllabic word,	dei monosillabi.
Un viceconsolo,	a vice-consul,	dei viceconsoli.
Un cavolfiore,	a cauliflower,	dei cavolfiori,

## ON ENGLISH COMPOUND NOUNS

430. English Compound Nouns belong to three classes —

The first class contains such nouns as *straw hat*, *schoolmaster*, *moonlight*, in which one of the two words qualifies the other, with which it has affinity or connection. In translating these compound nouns into Italian, the order of words must be reversed and the preposition “di,” only, or (if the article is required, see pages 22, 93) “del,” “dello,” &c, is placed between the words. Ex

Un maestro di scuola,	a schoolmaster
Una casa di campagna,	a country-house.
Un mercante di vino,	a wine-merchant.
I raggi del sole,	the sunbeams.
Le stelle della mattina,	the morning-stars.

\* An o, dotted thus o, has the broad sound of the o in the word *orphan*.



431. The second class of English compound nouns includes such nouns as *writing-paper*, *dining-room*, in which the first noun expresses the use or destination of the second noun. In translating these compound nouns into Italian, the order of the words must be reversed, and the preposition "da" must be placed between the two words. Ex.

Carta da scrivere,	writing-paper.
Una sala da pranzo,	a dining-room
Una spazzola da panni,	a cloth-brush
Una bottiglia da vino,	a wine-bottle
Una vesta da camera,	a dressing-gown

432. The third class of English compound nouns includes such nouns as *steam-boat*, *wind-mill*, in which the second noun denotes the means by which the object expressed by the first noun acts. In translating these compound nouns, the order of the words is inverted, and the preposition "a" placed between the two words. Ex.

Un batello a vapore,	a steam-boat.
Un mulino a vento,	a wind-mill.
Un bastimento a vela,	a sailing-vessel

433 No positive rule can be given for the formation of the following expressions, and the like —

L'Ufficio della Posta,	the post-office
Il mercato del fieno,	the hay-market.
Bei campi a frumento,	beautiful corn-fields.

### EXERCISE XLIII.

Do you (122) like my brother's works? I look upon them as master-pieces (428). Give me pen and ink (inkstand), a sheet of writing paper (431), and an envelope. I want (volere) (307) to write to the director of this railway. Last night I met (Past Def) William at my brother's,† he seemed (Imperf Ind) satisfied with (266) the result of his examination. How do you like your new house? I do not like it much, the dining-room (431) is very dark, the bed-rooms are small, and the ground-floor is gloomy. Where did you buy (have you bought) this chimney-piece? (430) I bought it (180, 193) at Johnstone's.† Where have you been? (149, 123) I have been to (the) market, to buy three cart-loads (420) of fire-wood. Where is the pincushion? It is on the work-table, (431) near my sister's leather bag (430). We went to (207) America in a steam-boat (432), and came back in a sailing-vessel.

434 † The expressions *at my brother's*, *at Charles's*, meaning *at the house of*, are translated into Italian "da mio fratello," "da Carlo," or "a casa di mio fratello," &c. But expressions such as *at Johnstone's*, are translated into Italian by "nel negozio, or nella bottega di Johnstone," when J. keeps a shop for selling goods (linen, furniture, &c.), and by "all'Albergo," or "al caffè Johnstone," when J. keeps a hotel, or a *café*.

## LESSON XXII

ON THE ALTERATION IN THE MEANING OF WORDS  
BY MEANS OF SUFFIXES

435. The Italians give the names of "Accrescitivi," (*augmentatives*), "Diminutivi," (*diminutives*), and "Peggiorativi," (*depreciatives*), to certain suffixes, which, like the English *ish*, alter or modify the meaning of nouns, adjectives, and even adverbs. The Italian language is very rich in suffixes, which modify in a variety of ways the idea expressed by the primitive term, and are of great use in adding expression to words. Only the principal suffixes will be given here

## "ACCRESKITIVI"

436 The principal Italian "accrescitivi" are "one," "ona," "otto" and "otta"

437. The suffixes "one" and "ona" denote bigness, as well as stoutness Ex

Un libro,	a book,	un librone,	a big book
Un uomo,	a man,	un omone,	a tall, stout man.
Un cane,	a dog,	un cagnone,	a large dog.

438 On this point it is to be observed that when a feminine noun takes the suffix *one* it becomes masculine Ex

Una strada,	a street,	uno stradone,	a large road
Una donna,	a woman,	un donnone,	a big, stout woman.

439 But adjectives take both the forms of the suffix, otherwise they might be ambiguous Ex

Una vecchia, an old woman, una vecchiona, a big, old woman.

440 The suffixes "otto," "otta," indicate somewhat of an increase in the ordinary size, as well as vigour. Ex.

Un ragazzo, a boy, un ragazotto, a fine strong lad

441 The Italian "diminutivi" are divided into two classes — the "diminutivi-vezzeggiativi," (*endearing*), and the "diminutivi-dispregiati" (*depreciating*)

## "DIMINUTIVI-VEZZEGGIATIVI"

442 The principal "diminutivi-vezzeggiativi" are "ino," "ina," "olino," "olina," "etto," "etta," "ello," "ella," "erello," "erella," "icello," "icella," "oncino," and "oncina,"† which indicate affection, endearment, as well as smallness Ex.

Un fiume,	a river,	un fiumicello,	a nice little river
Un pesce,	a fish,	un pesciolino,	a nice little fish
Un vecchio,	an old man,	un vecchierello,	a dear little old man

443 \* The word "uomo" loses its first letter, *u*, when it takes a suffix

444 † The word "cane" takes an euphonic *g* before the *n* when it takes a suffix except before "ino," when the *g* is not inserted, as "un canino," a *nice little dog*.

‡ Discrimination and taste must be had in using the "vezzeggiativi"

445. On this point it is to be observed that many feminine nouns become masculine when they take the suffix "mo" Ex.

Una tavola, a table, un tavolino, a nice little table.

446 The suffixes in the following words are often used but cannot be easily classified

Arboscello<sup>†</sup> (from "albero," tree), a little tree, a shrub

"DIMINUTIVI-DISPREGIATIVI."

447 The principal "diminutivi-dispregiativi" are "uccio," "uccia," "uzzo," "uzza," "onzolo," "onzola," which indicate despicable pettiness Ex.

Una stanza, a room, una stan/uccia, a small dirty room.

448 On this point it is to be observed that the suffixes "uccio," "uccia," appended to Christian names signify endearment, and *not* contempt. Ex.

Carluccio mio! My dear little Charley!

"PEGGIORATIVI"

449. The principal Italian "peggiorativi" are "accio," "accia," "azzo," "azza," which signify contempt for worthlessness Ex.

Un cappello, a hat, un cappellaccio, an ugly, dirty hat

450 The suffixes "aglia" and "ame," signify plenty but of no value Ex.

La canaglia (from "cane," dog), the rabble

Gentaglia (from "gente," people), vulgar people

Ossame (from "osso," bone), a heap of bones

451. The suffixes in the following words are often used but cannot be easily classified.

Un poetastro (from "poeta," poet), a bad poet.

Una casipola (from "casa," house), a hovel

Un libercolo (from "libro," book), a paltry little book

Una fierucola (from "fiera," fair), an insignificant fair.

452. Sometimes two suffixes are added to one noun Ex.

Un librettino, a nice little book, Un violoncello, a violoncello

Un ruscellettino, a streamlet, Un omaccione, a big, nasty man

453. Some of the above-mentioned suffixes can be added to adjectives Ex.

Ricco, rich, riccone, very rich.

Fresco, fresh, freschetto, rather fresh

Rosso, red, rossiccio, reddish

Amaro, bitter, amarastro, bitterish.

454. Some of the above-mentioned suffixes can be added to adverbs Ex.

Bene, well, benone, very well.

Bene, well, benino, pretty well.

<sup>†</sup> An *e*, dotted thus *e*, has the broad sound of the *a* in the word *gate*

## ON COLLECTIVE NOUNS

455. There are two sorts of collective nouns, the *collective general*, and the *collective partitive*

456 The *collective general* (preceded by "il," "questo") represents the whole collection, as "il popolo," *the people*, "l'armata," *the army*, "la flotta," *the fleet*, "la famiglia," *the family*, &c., and verbs, adjectives, and pronouns referring to it are inflected as if they were used with a noun in the singular. Ex.

Il popolo inglese mantiene i suoi diritti politici      The English people maintain their political rights

457 The *collective partitive* (preceded by "un," "una") represents only a portion of the collection, as "un'armata," *an army*, "una moltitudine," *a multitude*, &c., and, as a rule, verbs, adjectives, and pronouns used in the sentence are inflected according to the noun which follows the *collective partitive*.† Ex

Una piccola armata di soldati europei conquistarono le Indie      A small army of European soldiers conquered India.

## EXERCISE XLIV

Where did you buy (have you bought) that (152) huge book? (437) I bought it at Hachette's (434) I caught (180) this pretty little bird in its nest, in the trunk of a large tree, (437) near your uncle's farm I am astonished to see you (122, 198) wearing (314) that horrid Spanish hat (177, 449) I wear it because it is light and comfortable Take† (122) these pretty little books, and put them (201) on Elizabeth's little table This morning we walked (Past Indef.) four miles (421), we went as far as the beautiful little bridge (442) near the village inn Take away! this cur, (444, 447) I hate it Every evening we take a walk‡ along a small stream, in which a thousand pretty little fishes swim about How do you do (see page 89) to-day? Very well! (454) I thank you The committee (456) made a report of the case, and sent it to the king Under his despotic government the people (456) suffered (Past Def) many hardships

\* See rule 63, to understand the meaning of the letters in the darker type

458 † Notice, however, that when the Italians employ a collective noun, and want to express the action of the collection, as *a whole*, all words must be inflected as if they were used with a noun in the singular Ex

Una folla di nemici ci apparve all'improvviso      A crowd of enemies appeared suddenly before us

459 ‡ To take is translated into Italian by "Prendere" But to take, in the sense of to lead, is translated by "condurre," "menare" To take away, is translated by "Portar via," "menar via," and to take off, by "levare" To take a portrait is "Fare un ritratto" To take a walk, "Fare una passeggiata"

## IMPORTANT POETICAL FORMS OF NOUNS.\*

(Arranged Alphabetically.)

"Acciario" is used in poetry for "*acciaio*," *steel*, "*aere*" for "*aria*," *air*, "*aura*" and "*auretta*" for "*venticello*," *breeze*, "*agone*" for "*combattimento*," *combat*, "*aita*" for "*aiuto*," *help*, "*angue*" for "*serpente*," *serpent*, "*albore*" for "*alba*," *dawn*, "*albore*" and "*arbore*" for "*albero*," *tree*, "*alma*" for "*anima*," *soul*, "*amistà*" for "*amicizia*," *friendship*, "*aquilone*" for "*vento settentrionale*," *north-wind*, "*ara*" for "*altare*," *altar*, "*augei*" for "*uccelli*," *birds*, "*austro*" for "*vento del sud*," *south-wind*, "*avello*" for "*sepoltura*," *tomb*, "*avolo*" for "*nonno*," *grand-father*, "*belva*" for "*fiera*," *wild beast*, "*beltà*" for "*bellezza*," *beauty*, "*borea*" for "*vento settentrionale*," *north-wind*, "*bando*" for "*spada*," *sword*, "*bufera*" for "*turbine*," *hurricane*, "*calte*" for "*sentiero*," *path*, "*capei*" for "*chiome*" and "*crine*" for "*capelli*," *hair*, "*cittade*" for "*città*," *city*, "*clade*" for "*strage*," *slaughter*, "*corsiero*" "*corridore*" "*destriero*" and "*palafreno*" for "*cavallo*," *horse*, "*desiò*" for "*desiderio*," *desire*, "*delubro*" for "*tempio*," *church*, "*die*" for "*dì*," *day*, "*diva*" for "*dea*," *goddess*, "*dritto*" for "*dritto*," *right*, "*dumi*" for "*spini*," *thorns*, "*etere*" and "*etra*" for "*cielo*," *sky*, "*euro*" for "*vento dell'est*," *east-wind*, "*face*" for "*fiaccola*," *torch*, "*favella*" for "*lingua*," *language*, "*Filomela*" for "*rosignolo*," *nightingale*, "*gaudio*" for "*allegrezza*," *joy*, "*gioventude*" for "*gioventù*," *youth*, "*gota*" for "*guancia*," *cheek*, "*guiderdone*" for "*ricompensa*," *reward*, "*imago*" for "*immagine*," *image*, "*in*" and "*inde*" for "*arcobaleno*," *rainbow*, "*labbia*" for "*labbra*," *lips*, "*lai*" for "*lamenti*," *laments*, "*lari*" for "*dei*," *gods*, "*larva*" for "*spettro*," *spectre*, "*lemuri*" for "*spettri*," *hobgoblins*, "*lena*" for "*forza*," *strength*, "*magione*" for "*casa*," *house*, "*monile*" for "*collana*," *necklace*, "*motto*" for "*parola*," *word*, "*nappo*" for "*tazza*," *cup*, "*noto*" for "*vento del sud*," *south-wind*, "*numi*" for "*dei*," *gods*, "*occaso*" for "*sera*," *evening*, "*orto*" for "*matina*," *morning*, "*ostello*" for "*albergo*," *abode*, "*pelago*" for "*oceano*," *ocean*, "*pieta*" for "*compassione*," *pity*, "*prence*" for "*principe*," *prince*, "*Progne*" for "*rondine*," *swallow*, "*quadrello*" for "*freccia*," *arrow*, "*rai*" for "*raggi*," *rays*, "*rio*" for "*ruscello*," *brook*, "*salma*" for "*corpo*," *body*, "*silva*" for "*foresta*," *forest*, "*speme*" for "*speranza*," *hope*, "*spirto*" for "*spirito*," *spirit*, "*stame*" for "*filo*," *thread*, "*strale*" for "*freccia*," *arrow*; "*stelo*" for "*gambo*," *stem of a plant*, "*suora*" for "*sorella*," *sister*, "*talamo*" for "*letto*," *bed*, "*vallo*" for "*fortificazione*," *fortification*; "*veglio*" for "*vecchio*," *old man*; "*vespero*" for "*sera*," *evening*; and "*vessillo*" for "*bandiera*," *flag*.

\* The poetical forms of verbs are given on page 92.

## LESSON XXIII.

## ON QUALIFICATIVE ADJECTIVES.

460. In Italian, qualificative adjectives agree in gender and number with the nouns they qualify, they end either in *o* or in *e* \*

461. Adjectives ending in *o*, become feminine by changing the *o* into *a*. They form their plural by changing the *o* into *i* for the masculine, and by changing the *a* into *e* for the feminine † Ex.

Il marito è ricco e generoso, e	The husband is rich and generous,
la moglie è bella e modesta	and the wife beautiful and modest
Questi uomini sono ricchi e	These men are rich and generous
generosi, e le loro mogli sono	and their wives are beautiful
belle e modeste	and modest

462. Adjectives ending in *e*, serve for both genders. They form their plural by changing the *e* into *i* Ex.

Il principe è illustre e potente,	The prince is illustrious and power-
e la principessa è amabile,	ful, and the princess is amiable
ed oltremodo intelligente.	and exceedingly clever.
Questi nobili sono illustri e po-	These noblemen are illustrious and
tenti, e le loro spose sono	powerful, and their wives are
amabili, ed eleganti.	amiable, and elegant.

463. In Italian, when an adjective qualifies two or more nouns, it is put in the plural form, and when the nouns are of different gender, the plural adjective agrees with the masculine. Ex.

Il padre e il figlio sono cattivi	The father and son are wicked
ed orgogliosi, mentrechè la	and proud, whilst the mother
madre e la figlia sono buone	and daughter are good and
e cortesi.	courteous.
Trovammo i contadini e le loro	We found the peasants and their
mogli assai industriosi e civili	wives very industrious and civil

464 \* "Pari," *equal*, "impari," *unequal*, and "dispari," *unlike*, *uneven*, *odd*, are the only Italian adjectives that end in *i*, in the singular, they have only one termination for both genders and numbers Ex. "Una vostra pari," *such a person as you are*

465 † Adjectives ending in "co," "go," "ca," "ga," in the singular, as a rule, form their plural in "chi," "ghi," "che," "ghe," as "antico," "antichi," "antica," "antiche," *ancient*.

466 Adjectives ending in "io" form their plural by merely cutting off the *o*, as "savo," plural "savi," *wise* But when the adjective ends in "io" the plural ends in "ni," as "lo," plural "ni," *worked*

467. In Italian there is *no fixed rule* for the position of adjectives ; they are placed before or after the nouns they qualify, according to taste, and euphony. Ex.

Un nemico potente, *or* un potente nemico. A powerful enemy

468 Adjectives denoting colour, shape, taste, physical qualities, or derived from verbs, or names of nations, follow the nouns they qualify. Ex.

Paolo porta un cappello bianco	Paul wears a white hat.
Le tavole rotonde sono eleganti	Round tables are elegant.
Mi davano medicine amare.	They gave me bitter medicine.
Un uomo cieco ha l'udito acuto	A blind man has sharp ears.
Queste sono cose sorprendenti.	These are surprising things
Leggo un romanzo francese	I am reading a French novel.

469. When two adjectives qualify the same noun, if they are short adjectives, they may be placed one before and the other after the noun, but if they are long words, they sound better after the noun. Ex.

Un bel cavallo nero	A beautiful black horse
Questa storia è interessante e istruttiva.	This history is interesting and instructive.

470 When there are more than two adjectives, they go after the noun they qualify. Ex

Un uomo ricco, intelligente e generoso	A rich, intelligent, and generous man
--	---------------------------------------

471 When the adjective is modified by an adverb, both the adverb and the adjective are placed after the noun. Ex  
Sono fanciulli molto intelligenti. They are very intelligent children

472. Some adjectives vary their significance according as they come before, or after the nouns they qualify ; the following are the most important —

" Un gentiluomo " means *a nobleman*.

" Un uomo gentile " means *a kind man*

" Un galantuomo " means *a worthy man*.

" Un uomo galante " means *a polite man*.

" Un grand'uomo " means *a great man*.

" Un uomo grande " means *a tall man*

" Una certa notizia " means *certain news*

" Una notizia certa " means *news which is authentic*.

\* A z, dotted thus z, has the soft sound of the z in the word *zeal* (50, 53)

ON THE ADJECTIVES "BELLO," "GRANDE,"  
"BUONO," AND "SANTO."

473 The adjective "bello," *beautiful, pretty*, is curtailed of the last syllable, before masculine nouns beginning with a *consonant*, except an *s* "*impure*", before a vowel it loses the final letter, and takes an apostrophe. The plural of "bello" is "bei," before a word beginning with a *consonant*, and "begli," before a word beginning with a *vowel* or an *s* "*impure*." Ex

Un bel quadro,	<i>a fine picture,</i>	bei quadri,	<i>fine pictures.</i>
Un bello scudo,	<i>a fine shield,</i>	begli scudi,	<i>fine shields</i>
Un bell' anello,	<i>a fine ring,</i>	begli anelli,	<i>fine rings.</i>

474. The adjective "grande," *great, tall, large*, loses the final syllable (*de*), before masculine nouns, beginning with a *consonant*, both in the singular and plural. This elision does not take place before an *s* "*impure*", before a *vowel*, "grande" drops the final letter and takes in its stead an apostrophe. Ex

Un gran popolo (21),	<i>a great people,</i>	gran popoli,	<i>great nations.</i>
Un grande scrigno,	<i>a large chest,</i>	grandi scrigni,	<i>large chests.</i>
Un grand' elogio,	<i>a great eulogy,</i>	grand' elogi.	<i>great eulogies</i>

475. The adjective "buono," *good*, loses the final *o*, before nouns, masculine singular, beginning with a *vowel*, or any *consonant*, except an *s* "*impure*" Ex

Un buon ammiraglio,	<i>a good admiral</i>
Un buon temperino,	<i>a good pen-knife</i>
Un buono scrittoio,	<i>a good writing-desk.</i>

476 "Il santo" means *the saint*, and is a noun

477. When "santo" means *saint*, and precedes a proper noun of the masculine gender, beginning with any *consonant*, except an *s* "*impure*," it loses the last syllable (*to*). This elision does not take place when "santo" means *holy*. Ex

Ho veduto la chiesa di San Pietro.	<i>I have seen Saint Peter's.</i>
Il martirio di Santo Stefano	<i>Saint Stephen's martyrdom</i>
Ho visitato il santo sepolcro	<i>I visited the holy sepulchre.</i>

478 \* Sometimes "grande" is also curtailed before feminine nouns, both in the singular and plural, as "Una gran disgrazia," *a great misfortune.*



## 479. A LIST OF IMPORTANT ADJECTIVES \*

Fresco,	fresh, new.	Abile,	clever.
Povero,	poor.	Sordo,	deaf
Giovine,	young.	Muto,	dumb.
Attempato,	aged	Idoneo,†	suitable.
Allegro,	cheerful	Vago,	vague, charming.
Mesto,	sad.	Vezzoso,	} pretty, charming.
Glorioso,	glorious	Leggiadro,	
Eminente,	eminent	Brutto,	ugly
Bravo,	brave, able	Savio,	wise.
Netto,	clean.	Stolto,	foolish.
Sporco,	dirty.	Oscuro,	dark
Alto,	high.	Grigio,	grey
Corto,	short.	Spesso,	thick
Pieno,	full.	Gentile,	polite
Vuoto,	empty	Rozzo,	rude
Stretto,	narrow.	Cattivo,	bad, wicked
Largo,	wide, broad.	Forse,	strong.
Pigro,	lazy.	Temerario,	rash.
Leggero,	light, clear	Avido,	greedy.
Pesante,	heavy	Rotondo,	round
Grosso,	large, big.	Ovale,	oval.
Grasso,	fat	Semplice,	simple
Magro,	lean	Finto,	feigned, artificial.

## EXERCISE XLV

Have you seen George's new carriage? Yes, I have (208), it is strong and well made. The glorious productions of the eminent painter Raphael will ever form the delight of mankind. Napoleon I often wore (Imp Ind.) a grey (468) coat, and a round hat, with (a) a broad brim. General Garibaldi was riding a beautiful (473, 469) black horse. A great (474) talker is seldom a great speaker. If we had a good (475) telescope we could (304) see the custom-house. A tall man (472) is not always a great man. There is (154) a great difference between a polite (472) man and an honest man. Go (340) and fetch me a jug of warm (468) water. Here it is, (245) on the oval table. Where are you going, Bertha? I am going (179) to Simpson's, (434) to buy some white cotton, and some red wool. I do not like this stair-case, it is dark, and not clean. She writes in a simple (469) and natural style. My aunt has sent me a basket of flowers (348), it contains some red and white (465, 468) pinks, some pretty roses, and several kinds (422) of ferns.

\* The above List does not contain the adjectives given on the previous pages.

480 † Adjectives ending in *eo* form their feminine by changing the *eo* into *ea*, and their plurals end in *ei* and *ee*. Ex "Idoneo," "idonea," "idonei," *suitable*

## ON THE WORD "TUTTO."

481. "Tutto," preceded by the definite article, means *the whole*, and is a noun. Ex.

Mi dia il tutto, Signore. Give me the whole, Sir.

482 "Tutto," meaning *all, every, whole*, is an adjective, variable; it is, *in all cases*, followed by the definite article. Ex.

Tutti gli ufficiali ricevettero la All the officers received the  
medaglia. medal

Tutto il paese era lieto The whole country was happy

483 "Tutto" (or rather "del tutto"), meaning "*intieramente*," *altogether, quite*, is an adverb Ex.

Siamo tutto, *or* del tutto convinti. We are quite convinced.

484 "Tutti quanti," means *the whole of them*. Ex.

Perirono tutti quanti The whole of them perished.

## ON THE WORD "MEZZO".

485. "Mezzo" means *middle, way, means*, and is a noun Ex

Nel mezzo del giardino. In the middle of the garden.

Non c'è mezzo di uscire. There is no way to get out.

Non hanno i mezzi They have not the means.

486 When "mezzo" means *half*, it is an adjective, and is variable when it precedes a noun, but remains invariable when it follows it Ex

Una mezza libbra di tè Half a pound of tea.

Una libbra e mezzo di zucchero A pound and a half of sugar

487 *Half, the half* is translated into Italian by "la metà" Ex.

Me ne dia la metà, il tutto Give me the half, the whole of  
sarebbe troppo. it would be too much.

Il terremoto distrusse la metà The earthquake destroyed half  
della città. of the city

## ON THE WORD "OGNI"

488 The adjective "ogni" means *each, every*, it is of both genders and can only be used in the singular. Ex.

Ogni paese ha i suoi costumi. Every country has its own customs.

Ogni signora aveva dei fiori nei Every lady had flowers in her  
capelli. hair

---

\* Two *zz*, dotted thus *zz*, have the soft sound of the *ss* in the word *muzzle* (52, 53)

# ON THE WORD "ALTRO."

489. "Altro," meaning *other*, is an adjective, and agrees in gender and number with the word to which it relates. Ex.

Ho un'altra sorella in Italia. I have another sister in Italy.

Non ha altri libri che questi? Have you no other books but these?

490. When "altro" is used as a noun, it means *one thing, something else* Ex.

Altro è il parlar di morte, altro è il morire. It is one thing to speak of death, but another to die.

491. "Non altro che" means *nothing else but* Ex.

Paolo non fa altro che ciarlare. Paul does nothing but talk

492 When "altri" is repeated it signifies *some others* Ex

Altri andavano, altri venivano. Some were going, others were coming.

493. In the colloquial style "altri" is sometimes used pleonastically after "noi" and "voi." Ex

Noi altri Italiani amiamo la musica. We Italians are fond of music

# ON THE WORDS "MOLTO," "TANTO," "ALTRETTANTO," "QUANTO," "TROPPO," AND "POCO"

494. The words, "molto," *much, very*, "tanto," *so much*, "altrettanto," *as much*, "quanto," *how much*, "troppo," *too much*, "poco," *little*, are adjectives, and therefore variable, when they precede a noun Ex

V'erano molti uomini e molte donne, ma pochi fanciulli. There were many men and women, but few children

495 "Molto," "tanto," "altrettanto," "quanto," "troppo," and "poco," are adverbs when they modify an adjective, a verb or another adverb Ex.

Queste ragazze sono molto intelligenti. These little girls are very intelligent

496 The expressions "Da quanto tempo," and "Da quanto in qua," mean *How long (up till now)*. Ex

Da quanto tempo studia la lingua italiana? (See rule 277) Italian?

497 The expression "Un poco di," means *A little*. Ex.

Antonio ha un poco di danaro. Anthony has a little money.

---

\* See rule 63, to understand the meaning of the letters in the darker type.

## EXERCISE XLVI.

Why do you like the Italian (468) language? I like it because it is sweet and harmonious. The whole (482) country was in a state of agitation. When the clergyman's children saw us, they became (Past Def) quite (483) cheerful. Let us go into that shop, I have seen there (239, 243) some pretty (473) ribbons and French lace. Here is (245) a pound of good tea, give (122) half (487) of it (240) to your sister. He spent an hour and a half (486) in writing (314) this letter. Louisa does nothing else but (491) sew and embroider. These chickens are large and fat, but the partridges are very lean. My brother has made me a (360) present of some beautiful (473) artificial flowers. How long (496) have you been waiting for (251) us? I have been waiting half (486) an hour. William began again to speak of his Italian acquaintances.

## POETICAL FORMS OF ADJECTIVES.

(Arranged Alphabetically)

"Algente" is used in poetry for "ghiacciante" *freezing*, "almo" for "che dà animo e vita," *reviving*, "altrice" for "nutrice," *fostering*, "aprico" for "esposto al sole," *sunny*, "boreale" for "setten-trionale," *northern*, "arto" for "stretto," *narrow*, "atro" for "nero," *black*, "baldo" for "coraggioso," *courageous*, "corrusco" for "brillantissimo," *very brilliant*, "diro" for "empio," *impious*, "diva" for "come una dea," *godlike*, "eburneo" for "come d'avorio," *like ivory*, "edace" for "divoratore," *devourer*, "ermo" for "solitario," *lonely*, "fedo" for "sporco," *dirty*, "fiebole" for "debole," *feeble*, "flavo" for "giallo," *yellow*, "fiebile" for "lacrimabile," *tearful*, "ferale" for "funesto," *baneful*, "frale" for "fragile," *fragile*, "immane" for "spietato," *pitiless*, "imo" for "bassissimo," *lowest*, "inulto" for "non vendicato," *unavenged*, "irto" for "irsuto," *shaggy*, "lieve" for "leggiere," *light*, "olezzante" for "profumato," *perfumed*, "pisco" for "primitivo," *primitive*, "protervo" for "arrogante," *arrogant*, "reduce" for "che è di ritorno," *returned from*, "repente" for "subitaneo," *sudden*, "reo" and "río" for "colpevole," *guilty*, "romito" for "solitario," *solitary*, "rondo" for "rugiadoso," *dewy*, "truce" for "fiero," *fierce*, "tumido" for "gonfio," *swollen and bumptious*, "ultrice" for "vendicatrice," *avenger*, "venusto" for "leggiadro," *charming*, and "vetusto" for "antico," *ancient*.

\* The poetical forms of verbs and nouns are given on pages 92 and 114.

498 † The expressions *to begin again to speak*, *to begin again to write*, &c., are translated into Italian by "tornare a parlare," "tornare a scrivere," &c.

## LESSON XXIV.

## ON THE FORMATION OF ADVERBS FROM ADJECTIVES

499. Adverbs are invariable and have no fixed place in a sentence, in Italian, but they are generally placed after the verb with which they are connected, when adverbs modify adjectives, or past participles, they precede them Ex.

Andrea scrive bene	Andrew writes well
Matilde parla correttamente	Matilda speaks correctly
Questi artisti sono molto bravi	These artists are very clever
Filippo era elegantemente vestito	Philip was elegantly dressed
Scrive il francese molto bene	He writes French very well

500 Some adverbs consist of a single word, as "quando," *when*, "sempre," *always* others are formed of two or more words, and are commonly called adverbial expressions,† as "all'improvviso," *unexpectedly*, "d'ora in poi," *henceforth*

501. Many adverbs are formed in Italian by adding "mente" (which means *manner*), to the feminine form of adjectives Ex

Generoso,	generous,	generosamente,	generously
Diligente,	diligent,	diligentemente,	diligently.
Dottissimo,	very learned,	dottissimamente,	very learnedly.

502 When adjectives end in "le" or "ic," the *e* must be suppressed in forming adverbs. Ex

Facile,	easy,	facilmente,	easily
Particolare,	particular,	particolarmente,	particularly

503. The adjectives "chiaro," *clear*, "forte," *hard*, "felice" *happy*, and a few others, are sometimes used as adverbs. Ex

Parlate chiaro.	Speak clearly.
Egli batte forte	He strikes hard.
Vivete felice †	Live happily †

504. Adjectives and adverbs may be used in the Positive degree, as "bello," *pretty*, or in the Comparative degree, as "più bello," *prettier*, or in the Superlative degree, as "il più bello," *the prettiest*

\* An *s*, dotted thus *s*, has the soft sound of the *s* in the word *rose*.

† Further on will be found a list of adverbs and adverbial expressions

## COMPARISON OF EQUALITY

505. Comparisons of equality having reference to adjectives, participles, and adverbs are formed, in Italian, in the following ways —

FIRST TERM	SECOND TERM
Così ( <i>or</i> sì), <i>as</i> ( <i>or</i> so)	come, <i>as</i> .
Tanto ( <i>or</i> altrettanto), <i>as, as much</i>	quanto, <i>as</i> Ex.
Egli è così ricco come mio nipote	He is as rich as my nephew.
Cesare era tanto valoroso quanto Pompeo	Cæsar was as brave as Pompey
Ella scrive così elegantemente come suo fratello	You write as elegantly as your brother

506. Comparisons of equality having reference to nouns are formed, in Italian, in the following ways —

FIRST TERM	SECOND TERM.
Tanta ( <i>or</i> altrettanta), <i>as, as much</i>	quanta, <i>as</i>
Tanti ( <i>or</i> altrettanti), } <i>as many</i>	{ quanti, } <i>as</i> Ex
Tante ( <i>or</i> altrettante), }	{ quante, }
Non ho tanti amici quanti ne ha mio fratello.	I have not as many friends as my brother has.

507. Comparisons of equality having reference to verbs are formed, in Italian, in the following ways —

FIRST TERM	SECOND TERM.
Più ( <i>or</i> quanto più), <i>the more</i>	più ( <i>or</i> tanto più), <i>the more</i>
Meno ( <i>or</i> quanto meno), <i>the less</i>	meno ( <i>or</i> tanto meno), <i>the less</i> .
Tale, } <i>such</i>	quale, } <i>as</i> Ex
Tal, }	quali, }
Più Carlo studia, più desidera di studiare	The more Charles studies, the more he desires to study.
Ci descrisse la scena tal quale l'aveva veduta.	He described the scene to us such as he had seen it.

508. The first terms “così,” “tanto,” “tale,” may be omitted.  
Ex.

Essa non è bella come sua sorella.	She is not so pretty as her sister
Egli non è sapiente quanto lo credevamo	He is not as learned as we believed him to be.

509 “Al pari di,” *or* “al pari che,” *as much as*, and “non meno di,” *or* “non meno che,” *not less than*, may be used instead of “così come;” “tanto quanto.”  
Ex “Egli fu lodato al pari di me” *He was praised as much as I*

## COMPARISONS OF SUPERIORITY AND INFERIORITY.

510. In Italian, the comparative degrees of Superiority and Inferiurity are formed by translating the adverbs *more*, by "più"; and *less*, by "meno", and the conjunction *than*, by "di" or "che".

511. When *more than* and *less than* indicate comparison, and are placed before nouns or adjectives, they are translated either by "più di" or "più che," and "meno di," or "meno che." Ex.

Carlo è più educato di (che) Pietro. Charles is more educated than Peter.

Nel decimo quarto secolo l'Italia era più colta di (che) tutte le altre nazioni dell'Europa. In the fourteenth century Italy was more polished than any other nation of Europe.

512. When *more than* and *less than* indicate comparison, and are placed before personal pronouns, they must be translated by "più di" "meno di," and the personal pronouns must be in the objective form ("me," "te," "lui," &c.) Ex.

Voi siete più ricco di me. You are richer than I.  
Ella è di lunga pezza più dotta di lui. She is a great deal more learned than he.

513. Notice, however, that when a personal pronoun is followed by a verb (not in the Infinitive) of which it is the subject, *than* is rendered by "che non," "di quel," or "di quello che," and the pronoun is used in the subjective form ("io," "tu," "egli," &c.), as in English. Ex.

Il disegno è più difficile che io non (di quello che) lo credevo. Drawing is more difficult than I thought.

514. When *more than*, *less than*, do not indicate comparison, they are expressed by "più di," "meno di." Ex.

Egli possiede più di trenta mila lire sterline. He possesses more than thirty thousand pounds sterling.

515. *Than* must be translated by "che" when the comparison takes place between two verbs in the Infinitive Mood, two nouns, two adjectives, or two adverbs. Ex.

E più difficile saper ascoltare, che saper parlare. It is more difficult to know how to listen, than to know how to speak.

A New York s'incontrano più Inglesi che Francesi. In New York one meets more English people than French.

A parer mio, essa è più vezzosa che bella. In my opinion, she is rather attractive than beautiful.

È meglio tardi che mai. It is better late than never.

516 \* "Piuttosto" (rather) might be used here instead of "più," thus "Essa è piuttosto vezzosa che bella." *She is attractive rather than beautiful*

## EXERCISE XLVII.

She is as (505) pretty as her sister, but not so (505) clever. The simplicity of nature is more pleasing than (511) the embellishments of art. Do not (122, 128) walk so fast, walk slower. It is nobler to forgive than (515) to avenge one's self. London has as many (506) inhabitants as Belgium. Shall we go to the Crystal Palace? I think so (271), it is better to go to-day than (515) to-morrow. Give him two guineas, you are richer (512) than I. The twilight in the south is much shorter than in the north. In the first centuries the Romans were more warlike than (515) literary. Wrought iron is much stronger than cast iron, it is less (510) brittle, and much (495) more durable. A feigned peace is more dangerous than open war. It is better to acquit a criminal than (515) to condemn an innocent person.

## ON THE SUPERLATIVE DEGREES

517 Adjectives and adverbs may be raised to the Superlative Relative, or to the Superlative Absolute degree

## ON THE SUPERLATIVE RELATIVE DEGREE

518. The Superlative Relative is formed by placing "il più," "il meno," before the adjective, or the adverb. Ex.

È il più ricco cittadino di Londra. He is the richest citizen in London.

Adolfo è il meno ingegnoso dei tre fratelli. Adolphus is the least ingenious of the three brothers.

La grazia è la più nobile parte della bellezza. Grace is the noblest part of beauty.

519 The article may be omitted when "più" and "meno" follow the noun. Ex.

Egli è l'oratore più eloquente dei nostri tempi. He is the most eloquent orator of our day.

520. The following adjectives form their Comparative, and their Comparative Superlative degrees in two ways —

POSITIVE	COMPARATIVE	SUPERLATIVE RELATIVE
Buono, <i>good</i>	Più buono, } <i>better</i> or migliore,	Il più buono, } <i>the best</i> or il migliore,
Cattivo, <i>bad</i>	Più cattivo, } <i>worse</i> or peggiore,	Il più cattivo, } <i>the worst.</i> or il peggiore,
Grande, <i>great</i>	Più grande, } <i>greater.</i> or maggiore,	Il più grande, } <i>the greatest.</i> or il maggiore,

521 \* Observe that in Italian after a superlative relative the preposition "di," not "in," is used before names of places



POSITIVE.	COMPARATIVE.	SUPERLATIVE	RELATIVE.
Piccolo, <i>small</i>	Più piccolo, } or minore, } <i>smaller.</i>	Il più piccolo, } or il minore, }	<i>the smallest</i>
Alto, <i>high.</i>	Più alto, } or superiore }	il più alto, } or il superiore, }	<i>the highest.</i>
Basso, <i>low.</i>	Più basso, } or inferiore, }	Il più basso, } or il inferiore, }	<i>the lowest.</i>

## EXAMPLES

Il mio libro è più buono, *or* migliore di quello di sua sorella. My book is better than that of your sister.

È il peggior romanzo ch'io abbia letto. It is the worst novel I ever read.

522 The following adverbs form the Comparative and Superlative degrees without the help of "più" or "meno"

POSITIVE	COMPARATIVE.	SUPERLATIVE.
Bene, <i>well,</i>	meglio, <i>better,</i>	il meglio, <i>the best.</i>
Male, <i>badly,</i>	peggio, <i>worse,</i>	il peggio, <i>the worst.</i>
Molto, <i>much,</i>	più, <i>more,</i>	il più, <i>the most</i>
Poco, <i>little,</i>	meno, <i>less,</i>	il meno, <i>the least</i>

## ON THE SUPERLATIVE ABSOLUTE DEGREE.

523. The Superlative Absolute degree is indicated in several ways in Italian

524 Adjectives and adverbs can be raised to the superlative absolute degree by changing their final vowel into "issima," "issima," "issimi," "issime" Ex

POSITIVE	SUPERLATIVE ABSOLUTE
Buono, <i>good,</i>	bonissimo, <i>very good</i>
Piccolo, <i>little,</i>	piccolissimo, <i>very little</i>
Bene, <i>well,</i>	benissimo, <i>very well</i>
Dottamente, <i>learnedly,</i>	dottissimamente, <i>very learnedly</i>

525. Adjectives ending in "io" lose these two vowels before the superlative termination "issimo," and those ending in "co" and "go," "ca" and "ga," which take an *h* in the plural also take it before "issimo." Ex.

Savio, <i>wise,</i>	savissimo, <i>very wise</i>
Ricco, <i>rich,</i>	ricchissimo, <i>very rich</i>
Largo, <i>wide,</i>	larghissimo, <i>very wide.</i>

526 \* In speaking of physical size "più grande," "il più grande," "più piccolo," "il più piccolo," must be used, and not "maggiore," "il maggiore," "minore," "il minore" Ex

La mia casa è più grande che la vostra My house is larger than yours  
527 "Maggiore" and "minore" signify also *eldest* and *youngest* Ex  
Mio fratello maggiore My eldest brother

528. A few adjectives form the superlative absolute in "errimo."

Ex.

Misero,	miserable,	miserrimo,	very miserable
Celebre,	celebrated,	celeberrimo,	very celebrated
Acre,	bitter,	accerrimo,	very bitter.
Integro,	honest,	integerrimo,	very honest.
Salubre,	salubrious,	saluberrimo,	very salubrious

529. Sometimes "ottimo," "pessimo," "massimo," "minimo," "sommo," and "infimo," may be employed instead of "bonissimo," "cattivissimo," &c

530. Adjectives and adverbs can be raised to the superlative absolute degree by translating *very*, or *most*, by the adverbs "molto," "assai," or "oltremodo" Ex

Egli è molto, assai, or oltremodo generoso He is very generous

531. Another way of raising adjectives and adverbs to their superlative absolute degree, is to repeat them Ex.

Ella divenne rossa rossa

She became very red

Entrarono pian piano

They went very softly.

## EXERCISE XLVIII

This tragedy is very interesting. (471) and very well written. She is taller (512) than you by<sup>1</sup> three inches. The mosaics (410) of Rome are the most famous (518) in Europe. Write to your brother and tell him (201) to call on me<sup>†</sup> as soon as possible.† I want to go to Paris; all the more so because<sup>§</sup> my sister is there also (there is (239) also my sister). She is so kind, amiable, and pretty that|| everybody admires her. My uncle's friend is the richest man in (521) this village. Gold is the purest, the most precious, the most ductile, and after platina, the heaviest of all metals. God's power extends from the lowest (520) abyss of the earth, to the highest (520) parts of the heavens. He is the bravest (518) and ablest general of his time.

532 \* The English expressions *taller by*, *richer by*, are translated into Italian by "più grande di," "più ricco di" Ex "E più ricco di me, di due mila lire sterline" He is richer than I am, by two thousand pounds

533 † The expressions *to call on*, *to go to the house of*, are translated into Italian by "andare da," "passare da" Ex "Andò da Giovanni, I will call on John

534 ‡ The expression *as quick as possible* is rendered in Italian by "il più presto possibile"

535 § The expression *all the more so because* is translated into Italian by "tanto più che"

536 || The expressions *so kind that*, *so amiable that*, &c, are translated into Italian by "così buono che," "talmente buono che," "buono a segno tale che," "amabile a tal segno che," &c Ex

E abile a segno tale che fa la meraviglia di tutti.

He is so exceedingly clever that he excites wonder in everybody.

## LESSON XXV.

## ON NUMERAL ADJECTIVES.

CARDINAL NUMBERS.		ORDINAL NUMBERS.	
Uno .. . . .	1	Primo	1st.
Due... .	2	Secondo . .	2nd
Tre . . . . .	3	Terzo . . .	3rd.
Quattro ... ..	4	Quarto .	4th
Cinque . . . . .	5	Quinto	5th
Six . . . . .	6	Sesto	6th
Sette. . . . .	7	Settimo	7th
Otto . . . . .	8	Ottavo	8th
Nove . . . . .	9	Nono	9th
Dieci . . . . .	10	Decimo	10th
Undici . . . . .	11	Decimo primo†	11th
Dodici . . . . .	12	Decimo secondo‡	12th.
Tredici . . . . .	13	Decimo terzo   .	13th
Quattordici . . . . .	14	Decimo quarto	14th
Quindici . . . . .	15	Decimo quinto	15th.
Sedici . . . . .	16	Decimo sesto	16th.
Diciassette . . . . .	17	Decimo settimo	17th
Diciotto . . . . .	18	Decimo ottavo	18th
Diciannove . . . . .	19	Decimo nono .	19th
Venti . . . . .	20	Ventesimo .	20th
Ventuno . . . . .	21	Ventesimo primo	21st
Trenta . . . . .	30	Trentesimo .	30th
Quaranta . . . . .	40	Quarantesimo	40th.
Cinquanta . . . . .	50	Cinquantesimo	50th.
Sessanta . . . . .	60	Sessantesimo	60th.
Settanta . . . . .	70	Settantesimo	70th
Ottanta . . . . .	80	Ottantesimo	80th
Novanta . . . . .	90	Novantesimo	90th.
Cento* . . . . .	100	Centesimo	100th
Centuno . . . . .	101	Centesimo primo	101st.
Mille† . . . . .	1,000	Millesimo .	1,000th
Un Milione . . . . .	1,000,000	Milionesimo	1,000,000th

537. \* "Cento" does not change in the plural. Ex "Due cento uomini," 200 men

538 † "Mille" (mas) does not require the indefinite article before it Ex "Mille soldati," 1,000 soldiers, and is changed into "mila," in the plural Ex "Tre mila scudi," 3,000 crowns

‡ Or "undecimo" § Or "duodecimo" || Or "tredecimo"

## ON THE USE OF NUMERAL ADJECTIVES.

539 A nought (*o*) in Italian is translated by "zero," plural "*zeri*."

540. The feminine of "*uno*," *one*, is "*una*," but the other cardinal numbers remain invariable Ex.

Ella ha due libri, ed io ne ho uno. You have two books, and I have one

541. "*Uno*," "*una*," used as nouns signify *a man, a woman*. Ex  
Ho visto uno che si vanta I have seen a man who is  
sempre. always boasting

542. When the noun is placed after "*ventuno*," "*trentuno*," &c, it must be in the singular, as it agrees with "*uno*," but when it comes before, it agrees with "*venti*," and is therefore in the plural Ex

"*Ventuno* cavallo," or "*Cavalli ventuno*," *twenty-one horses*.

543. In stating the order in which sovereigns, volumes and chapters of books, acts and scenes of plays, follow one another, the *ordinal numbers* (which are variable) are used in Italian as in English, but the article is omitted, and they must agree in gender and number with the noun to which they relate Ex.

Vittorio Emanuele secondo fu il primo re d'Italia Victor Emanuel the second was the first king of Italy.

Scena prima, atto secondo. Scene the first, act the second

544. The dates of the month, except the first day, are expressed in Italian by the *cardinal* numbers, preceded by the definite article in the singular or plural, *the first* is expressed by the *ordinal* number. The preposition "*di*" may be put before the day of the month. Ex

Quanti ne abbiamo del mese?	What is the day of the month?
Oggi è il primo (di) marzo	To-day is the first of March
Columbo scoprì l'America il dodici (di) ottobre, nell'anno, or simply, nel mille (e)	Columbus discovered America on (147) the twelfth of October, in the year four teen hundred and ninety-two
quattro cento§ novantadue	

545 \* The transposition of the units after the tens is not admissible in Italian, for instance, we never say "*due e venti*," but "*venti due*"

546 † *On the second*, &c, are translated into Italian by "*il due*," or "*al due*," or "*addì due*" (at the day two), &c Ex "*Londra, addì 20 febbrajo, 1892*"

‡ The Italians do not usually put the conjunction "*e*," *and*, between "*mille*" and "*milione*" and another number

547 § *Eleven hundred, twelve hundred*, &c, are rendered in Italian by "*mille cento*," "*mille e due cento*," and *not* by "*undici cento*," &c

## EXERCISE XLIX

In the year one (356) thousand and sixty-six, England (330) was conquered by (270) William of Normandy, an (353) event of the greatest (520) importance. I have been reading (179) the "Aristodemo," of Monti, and have learnt by heart scene (543) the fourth, act the first. How old\* is your nephew? He will be seventeen on (147) the 5th of next month. How long† will you remain in this city? I shall leave Rome on the 15th (546). Sardinia is (313) one hundred (356) and fifty miles (421) from Italy. Your letter of‡ the the 25th of February (74) reached me on the 1st instant (544). Frederick the second (543) king of Prussia, was a great warrior (474). What is the day (544) of the month? It is the 9th (546).

548. Expressions having reference to the hour of the day are rendered in Italian as follows —

Che ora è? <i>or</i> che ora abbiamo?	What o'clock is it?
È un'ora, <i>or</i> il tocco.	It is one o'clock.
Sono le due e mezzo.	It is half-past two.
Saranno presto le tre.	It will soon be three o'clock.
A che ora è partito suo fratello?	At what o'clock did your brother leave?
Quando partì erano le undici antimeridiane, ma il suo bastimento non fece vela che alle due pomeridiane.	When he left it was eleven o'clock a.m., but his ship did not set sail before two p.m.
Ora sono le sei meno un quarto, o meno dieci minuti	Now it wants a quarter, or ten minutes to six.

549. *Ago* is rendered in Italian by "*fa*," *this day week*, by "*oggi a otto*," *a fortnight*, "*quindici giorni*," *this day fortnight*, "*oggi a quindici*," *in a month*, "*fra un mese*," *or* "*da qui a un mese*." *Ex.*

Mio fratello lasciò Londra dieci giorni fa, e sarà di ritorno oggi a otto. My brother left London ten days ago, and will return this day week.

Credo che le elezioni avranno luogo fra un mese. I think that the elections will take place in a month.

550. \* The expression *how old is?* is translated into Italian by "*quanti anni ha?*" or "*che età ha?*", and *I am twenty*, &c., by "*ho vent'anni*," &c.

551. † In speaking of time, *how long* is translated by "*quanto tempo*"

552. Expressions like *your letter of the 15th instant*, &c., are translated by "*La sua (or vostra) lettera del quindici corrente*"

## DISTRIBUTIVE AND COLLECTIVE NUMBERS.

553. Un terzo,	one third	Un trimestre,	three months.
La metà,	the half	Un lustro,	five years.
Il doppio,	the double	Una volta,	once.
Una coppia,	a couple.	Due volte,	twice
Una dozzina,	a dozen.	Ad uno ad uno,	one by one
Una ventina,	a score.	A due a due,	two by two

554. *Both* is translated by "tutti e due," "tutt'e due," "ambo," "ambidue," or "ambidue," "entrambo," or "entrambi," and *n'* *three, all four, &c*, are translated by "tutti e tre," "tutti e quattro," &c, and the substantive which follows them takes the article. Ex.

Tutti e due i fratelli.	Both brothers.
Tutt'e tre le sorelle	The three sisters.

## EXERCISE L.

Send me (201) two dozen (555) of oranges (411), and three dozen of lemons. Neptune, the most (518) distant of the planets (397) takes  $164\frac{2}{3}$  (164 years and  $\frac{2}{3}$ ) (553) years to make its revolution round the sun, Uranus, 84 years and a few (494) days, Saturn,  $29\frac{1}{2}$  (486) years, Jupiter, nearly 12 years, Mars, 1 year, 10 months, and 21 days, (542) the Earth, 1 year, Venus, 7 months, and 13 days, Mercury, 2 months, and 27 days. I have just (299) sold my horse for (251) thirty pounds, and ten shillings. What is the height† of this room? It is about twelve feet high,† and seventeen feet long. Out of‡ fifteen thousand inhabitants, there were two thousand (538) killed. We generally breakfast at eight (548), have luncheon at one, and dine at six o'clock. Dante (334), Petrarca (333) and Boccaccio, lived in the fourteenth century,§ they are the most celebrated Italian *trecentisti*.

555. ~ When the words "dozzina," "ventina," "centinaio," "migliaio" (see rule 421), are used in the plural, they are variable. Ex. "Sei dozzine di bicchieri" *Six dozen glasses*

556. † The expressions *what is the size, height?* &c, are rendered in Italian by "qual'è la grandezza, l'altezza," &c, and *it is twelve feet high, long,* &c, are translated into "ha dodici piedi di altezza, lunghezza," &c

557. ‡ *Out of 15,000 men,* &c, is translated by "Di quindici mila uomini," &c.

558. § Instead of "Il decimo quarto," "Il decimo quinto," "Il decimo sesto secolo," the 14th, 15th, 16th centuries, the Italians often use the expressions "Il 1° cento," "il quattrocento," "il cinquecento," so that a personage who lived in the fourteenth, fifteenth centuries, &c, is called "Un trecentista," "un quattrocentista," &c

## LESSON XXVI

## ON POSSESSIVE ADJECTIVES.

559. In Italian the words "mio," "tuo," "suo," "nostro," "vostro," and "loro," are used both as Possessive Adjectives, and as Possessive Pronouns, they are possessive adjectives when they are *used with*, and possessive pronouns when they *stand for*, a noun

560. In Italian, possessive adjectives agree with the thing possessed, and *not* with the possessor, and are generally preceded by the definite article, as follows —

SINGULAR		PLURAL.		
MAS.	FEM.	MAS.	FEM.	
Il mio,	la mia,	i miei,*	le mie,	my
Il tuo,	la tua,	i tuoi†	le tue,	thy
Il suo,	la sua,	i suoi,	le sue,	his, her, its.
Il nostro,	la nostra,	i nostri,	le nostre,	our
Il vostro,	la vostra,	i vostri,	le vostre,	your
Il loro,	la loro,	i loro,	le loro,	their.

## EXAMPLES

Il mio amico vuol vendere la sua casa      My friend wants to sell his house.

I miei vicini hanno perduto il loro cane      My neighbours have lost their dog.

561. When several nouns follow one another in the same sentence (whether used as subjects or objects), the possessive adjective, as well as the preposition which may accompany it, must be repeated, in Italian, before each of the nouns, if they are already expressed before the first      Ex

Paolo ha preso i miei colori ed i miei pennelli ‡      Paul has taken my colours and brushes.

Parliamo sempre di voi e delle vostre sorelle.      We always speak of you and your sisters.

\* Notice that an *e* preceded by an *i* has always the broad sound of the *a* in the word *gate*

† Notice that an *o* preceded by a *u* has always the broad sound of the *o* in the word *ocean*

‡ Notice that the *e* in the syllable *ello*, ending nouns and qualificative adjectives, has always the broad sound of the *a* in the word *gate*

562. When *his*, *her*, do not refer to the subject of the verb, or when there are two nouns of different genders in the same sentence, in order to avoid ambiguity, the pronouns “di lui,” *of him*, “di lei,” *of her*, *of you*, replace the adjectives “il suo,” “la sua.” Ex.

Ella bruciò tutte le di lui lettere    She burnt all his letters.

Egli condusse seco sua sorella    He took with him his sister,  
e i di lei figli    and her sons.

563. The article is omitted before “mio,” “tuo,” “suo,” “nostro,” “vostro,” (*not* “loro”) when they *immediately* precede nouns of kindred, and rank, in the singular. But when the noun of kindred is in the plural or is preceded by an adjective, or modified by a suffix, the article is prefixed to the possessive adjective. Ex

Mia madre e le mie sorelle partiranno per Venezia domani    My mother and sisters will leave for Venice to-morrow.

Furono presentati a Sua Eccellenza dal Principe    They were introduced to His Excellency by the Prince

Il loro padre è in villa    Their father is in the country

Fui cortesemente ricevuto dal suo ottimo padre    I was courteously received by your most excellent father

Ho dato una cassetta di dolci al vostro fratellino.    I have given a box of sweets to your little brother.

564. The possessive adjectives require the article when they precede the following nouns of kindred —

Il mio genitore,	<i>used instead of</i>	mio padre, <i>my father</i> .
La mia genitrice,	„	mia madre, <i>my mother</i> .
Il mio fanciullo,	„	„
Il mio ragazzo,	„	„ mio figlio, <i>my son</i> .
La mia fanciulla,	„	„
La mia ragazza,	„	„ mia figlia, <i>my daughter</i> .
Il tuo germano,	„	„ tuo fratello, <i>your brother</i> .
La tua germana,	„	„ tua sorella, <i>your sister</i> .
Il suo sposo,	„	„
Il suo consorte,	„	„ suo marito, <i>her husband</i> .
La vostra sposa,	„	„
La vostra consorte,	„	„ vostra moglie, <i>your wife</i> .

\* Notice that the *e* in the termination *enza* has always the broad sound of the *a* in the word *gate*.



565 The possessive adjectives may be placed after the noun, and in this case the article is placed before the noun. Ex.

Se così piace all'Eccellenza If it is agreeable to your Excellency.  
vostra

L'onor mio non permette ciò. My honour does not permit this

566. The expressions, *a friend of mine, a sister of yours, &c.*, are rendered by "un mio amico," "una vostra sorella," &c., or "uno dei miei amici," "una delle vostre sorelle," &c. Ex.

Ho incontrato un vostro amico, I met a friend of yours on  
sul ponte di Londra. London Bridge.

567. The relation expressed by the possessive adjectives is elegantly conveyed in Italian by means of the conjunctive pronouns "mi," *to me*, "ti," *to thee*, "gli," *to him*, "le," *to her*, or *to you*. Ex.

Egli mi è padre (*instead of* He is my father

Egli è mio padre).

Io non gli sono amico (*instead of* I am not his friend.  
of Io non sono suo amico)

Io le son figlio (*instead of* I am her son.  
son suo figlio).

568. When the possessive adjectives *its* and *their* relate to things, and are in the same clause of a sentence with the possessor (noun or pronoun, used as subject), and when they are preceded by any preposition, they are translated into Italian by "il suo," "la sua," "i suoi," "le sue," "il loro," "la loro," "i loro," "le loro." Ex

Parigi ha le sue bellezze, am- Paris has its beauties, I admire  
miro lo stile dei suoi pubblici the style of its public edifices  
edifici

569 When the possessive adjectives *its* and *their* are *not* in the same clause of a sentence with the possessor, and are *not* preceded by a preposition, they are expressed in Italian by "ne," before the verb, and the article, "il," "lo," "la," &c., before the noun. Ex

Comprerò questi cavalli, quan- I shall buy these horses, al-  
tunque io non ne conosca la though I do not know their  
razza, or complessione \* breed (real constitution).

570 \* "Complessione" means *constitution, physique, temperament* Complexion is translated into Italian by "carnagione"

## EXERCISE LI

The rose has its (560) beauty, its freshness and its fragrance; but it has also its thorns. The lustre of our ancestors' glory reflects on us, to (225) inspire us (198) to imitate their (560) virtues. One of our horses is so lame (536) that we cannot drive him to-day. That lady is a relation of mine (566). One of my favourite studies is botany. She showed him her (562) splendid picture-gallery, and costly jewels. Cornelia, the mother of the Gracchi, said to her (562) friends as she (*mentre*) showed them (211) her sons, "These are (245) my jewels." He is a friend of mine, (566) and has just married one of my cousins. I do not like to hear cats mewling (314) at night. Your sister is prettier (510) than my cousin Jane, she has† fair hair, blue eyes, and a beautiful complexion (570).

571 The Italians make use of the definite article, and *not* of the possessive adjective, when the sense *clearly points out* who is the possessor. Ex.

Oggi mi duole il capo	My head aches to-day
Diresse le parole alla moltitudine irritata	He directed his words to the angry multitude.

572 Before a noun indicating mental or physical qualities, or any part of the dress or body, if the action expressed by the verb falls on its subject, the Italians make use of the definite article, and *not* the possessive adjective, and the verb is used reflectively. Ex.

Mi lavo le mani con sapone	I am washing my hands with soap.
Si è fatto male alla mano destra	He has hurt his right hand
Essa si levò subito i guanti	She took off her gloves at once.
Gaddo mi si gettò piangendo a' piedi (Dante)	Gaddo threw himself at my feet weeping.

573 ' *To mew*, like a cat (*gatto*), is translated by 'Miagolare'  
*To bark*, like a dog (*cane*) 'Abbaire'  
*To growl*, like a dog (*cane*) 'Lairare'  
*To neigh*, like a horse (*cavallo*) 'Nitrare'  
*To bray*, like an ass (*asino*) 'Raghiare'  
*To bellow*, like an ox (*bue*) 'Muggire'  
*To grunt*, like a pig (*porcello*) 'Gingnare'  
*To bleat*, like a sheep (*pecora*) 'Belare'  
*To roar*, like a lion (*leone*) 'Ruggire'  
*To howl*, like a wolf (*lupo*) 'Urlare'  
*To crow*, like a cock (*gallo*) 'Cantare'  
*To sing*, like a nightingale (*rosignuolo*) 'Cantare'  
*To chirp*, like a sparrow (*passero*) 'Garrare'  
*To talk*, like a parrot (*pappagallo*) 'Parlare'  
*To squeak*, like a mouse (*sorcio*) 'Squittire'

574 † After the verb "Avere" when particular qualities of the body are mentioned, the definite article is used in Italian. "Ha i capelli biondi." *She has fair hair*

575 But when the action of the verb is *not* directed to its subject, the English possessive adjective is replaced in Italian by the conjunctive pronouns "mi," *to me*, "ti," *to thee*, "gli," *to him*, "le," *to her*, or *to you*, &c Ex

Mi fate sempre male alla mano    You always hurt my hand.  
Il chirurgo gli rimise il braccio,    The surgeon set his arm, in a  
in poco tempo.                            very short time

576 The expression *one's own* is rendered in Italian by "il proprio," "la propria," &c, or "il mio proprio," "la mia propria," &c Ex

L'ho veduto coi propri, or I saw him with my own eyes.  
co'miei propri occhi

577. In the following cases the definite article is *not* required before the possessive adjectives "mio," "tuo," "suo," &c.

- I. In addressing a person Ex "Mio caro," My dear.
  - II. In exclamations Ex "Oh! miei Signori!" Oh! gentlemen!
  - III In many idiomatic expressions, like the following —
- Ho incontrato una persona di I have met an acquaintance of  
mia conoscenza mine  
Faccio a mio capriccio (voglia I act according to my whim,  
or senno). (will, or mind)  
L'ho salutata da parte vostra I gave her your compliments.  
E colpa vostra It is your fault  
Fabbro a mie spese. I am building at my own expense.

### ON POSSESSIVE PRONOUNS.

578. The Possessive Pronouns, *mine, thine, his, hers, ours, yours, theirs*, are translated into Italian by the Possessive Pronouns "il mio," "il tuo," &c, "i miei," "i tuoi," &c, which agree in gender and number with the noun to which they relate. Ex.

Mi dia il suo libro, e prenda il Give me your book, and take  
mio. mine  
La nostra casa è più grande Our house is larger than theirs  
che la loro

579 When possessive pronouns are used simply to indicate possession, without limiting the number of persons, or objects, possessed, the article *is not* required before them. Ex.

Questo cavallo è suo.                    This horse is his.  
Di chi è questo sigillo? È mio.    Whose seal is this? It is mine  
Aspetto vostre lettere.                I expect letters from you.

580 \* The expressions *to write with one's own hand*, *to think with one's own mind*, are rendered by "scrivere di propria mano," "pensare di proprio senno"

581 When, in speaking of several persons, animals, or objects, reference is made to something of which each person, animal, or object has *only one*, the Italians always use the name of that thing or object in the singular Ex.

S'in vigoriscono la mente collo	They strengthen their minds
studio della filosofia	with the study of philosophy
Sacrificarono la vita in un' in-	They sacrificed their lives in a
presa inutile.	useless undertaking

582 The possessive pronouns "il mio," "il tuo," &c., used as nouns, signify *my property, my share, &c.*, and "i miei," "i tuoi," &c., mean *my friends, relations, supporters, followers, &c.* Ex.

Spendete il vostro, se vi piace	Spend your own, if you like.
Ho veduto i miei un mese fa	I have seen my people a month
	ago
Lasciò il paese con molti de'	He left the country with many
suoi	followers

### EXERCISE LII

Do you like my (560) books? Yes, I like them (193), they are better (520) than mine. Instead of giving the money to his father, he put (mettersi) it (218) in (572) his own pocket Your garden is prettier than ours, but our orchard is larger, and better (522) stocked than yours Henry IV. (543) of France used to play with his (560) children, carrying them on his (571) back round his royal apartments Do you buy your clothes ready made?† No, I have them made to order‡ at Johnson's (434). The unfortunate Charles VI of France passed his (571) time in (278) playing at cards with his attendants The customs of our ancestors were simpler and healthier than ours (578) The books you have sent to the bookbinder are mine (578) and not yours. He spoils his (572) health by studying too much at night

- 
- 583 \* *To play* (to amuse one's self) is translated by "Giocare," or "Divertirsi" *To play a game at*, by "Giocare una partita a," or "Giocare a" *To play upon the violin, &c.*, by "Suonare il violino," &c. *To play the part*, by "Fare, o rappresentar la parte" *To play upon* (with guns, &c.), by "Far fuoco su o sopra" *To play* (speaking of a fountain), by "Zampillare," or "Gettare" *To play the fool*, by "Fare il pazzo," or "Ruzzare" *To play a trick*, by "Fare una buia," or "eclia" *To play one out*, by "Prendersi gioco di" *To play false*, by "Ingannare"

584 † The expressions *ready made, already written, &c.* are translated into Italian by "bello e fatto," "belli e fatti," "bello e scritto," &c.

585 ‡ *To have a thing done (to order), to have a thing written, &c.* are translated into Italian by "farsi fare," "farsi scrivere," &c.

## LESSON XXVII.

## ON DEMONSTRATIVE ADJECTIVES

586 In Italian the words "questo," "cotesto," and "quello," are used both as Demonstrative Adjectives, and Demonstrative Pronouns, they are demonstrative adjectives when they are *used with* a noun, and demonstrative pronouns when they *stand for* a noun.

587. The Demonstrative Adjectives agree in gender and number with the noun with which they are used. They are —

SINGULAR.		PLURAL	
Mas. Questo,	} this.	Questi,	} these
Fem Questa,		Queste,	
Mas Cotesto,	} that.	Cotesti,	} those.
Fem. Cotesta,		Coteste,	
Mas. { Quello,	} that.	Quegli,	} those.
{ Quel,		Quei or que',	
Fem. Quella,		Quelle,	

588 "Questo," "questa," "questi," and "queste,"<sup>†</sup> precede a noun indicating a person or a thing near the speaker, either with regard to place or time. Ex.

Questo signore e questa signora This gentleman and this lady.

Questi scrigni e queste cassette. These chests and these boxes.

589 "Cotesto," "cotesta," *that*, "cotesti," and "coteste,"<sup>†</sup> precede a noun indicating a person, or an object, near the person spoken to, and distant from the speaker Ex.

Dove ha ella comprato cotesto Where have you bought that  
bel quadro? beautiful picture?

Di chi sono cotesti bei fanciulli? Whose are those beautiful children?

590 \* In the colloquial style "stamattina," "stasera," "stanotte," are frequently used instead of "questa mattina," "questa sera," "questa notte"

591 † The poets often use "esto," "esta," "esti," "este," instead of "questo, &c." "Maestro, esti tormenti cresceranno ei dopo la gran sentenza?" (Dante). *Master, will these torments increase after the great judgment?*

592 ‡ "Cotesto," "cotesta," &c., are frequently spelt "codesto," "codesta," &c.

593 "Quello" and "quel," *that* are used before a noun indicating a person or thing distant from the person who speaks, and also from the person addressed. "Quello" is used before nouns beginning with a vowel, or an *s* followed by another consonant, and "quel" before nouns beginning with a consonant. Ex

Quello specchio è rotto in due posti.	That looking-glass is broken in two places
Quel signore canta bene	That gentleman sings well
A' quel tempo c'era vino in abbondanza	At that time wine was plentiful

594 "Quegli" and "quei" (or "que'") *those*, are used before a noun indicating a person or thing distant from the person who speaks, and also from the person addressed. "Quegli" is used before nouns beginning with a vowel, or an *s* followed by another consonant, and "quei" before nouns beginning with a consonant. Ex

Quegli uccelli sono di rara bellezza	Those birds are very beautiful
Quegli schioppi si fabbricano a Woolwich	Those guns are manufactured at Woolwich
Quei ragazzi giuocano tutto il giorno.	Those boys are playing all day long.

595 "Quella" and "quelle" are used before feminine nouns beginning with a consonant; before a vowel they are very often changed into "quell'". Ex

Quella tela si fabbrica in Irlanda.	That cloth is manufactured in Ireland
Dove si comprano quelle belle cornici?	Where are those beautiful frames bought?

596 Sometimes the word which ought to follow "questo," "questa," "quello," "quella," is understood. Ex

In questo (momento) egli arrivò.	At this moment he arrived
In quella (ora) essa morì.	At that hour she died.

597. Sometimes "questo" and "quello" means *this thing, that thing*, and are nouns. Ex

Fate questo, vi dico.	Do this, I tell you
-----------------------	---------------------

598 \* Before a vowel, "quello" is very often changed into "quell'". Ex.  
 Quell' arcobaleno è stupendo. That rainbow is magnificent

599 When several nouns follow one another, in the same sentence (whether used as subjects or objects), the Demonstrative Adjective must be repeated before each of them, when it is expressed before the first. Ex

Comprerò questi pettini e queste I will buy these combs and  
spazzole da capelli. hair-brushes.

### EXERCISE LIII.

These (588) cherries and (599) strawberries are ripe, but those (595) pears are not. Go and (340) fetch me that (593) looking-glass. How much time did you spend (have you spent) in (to) painting (314) your sister's portrait? I could (sapere) not tell (it) you (198, 218). This money is his (579), and not yours Give me that (593) thimble, those (594) needles, and that thread. Take off those (589) ugly boots of yours (449, 572); they will lame your feet (572). Have you paid much for (251) these jewels? Yes, I have, I paid (180) two pounds ten shillings for this necklace

### DEMONSTRATIVE PRONOUNS

600 "Questo," ‡ "cotesto," "quello," "questi," "cotesti," "quelli" (not "quegli," nor "quei" §), are demonstrative pronouns when they are used instead of nouns, and, of course, they agree in gender and number with the noun to which they relate Ex

Non voglio il vostro cavallo; I don't want your horse, I want  
voglio questo this one.

Se io fossi in Lei, non comprerei If I were in your place, I would  
queste carte geografiche, not buy these maps, I would  
comprerei quelle buy those

601 \* When the word *so* is understood in English, it must be translated into Italian by the pronoun *lo*, which always remains invariable

602 † *Time*, is translated by "tempo" *Time* (of the day), is translated by "ora," as "A che ora arriva il treno?" *At what time does the train arrive?* *Time*, meaning *epoch*, is translated by "allora," as, "Allora era ricco" *Then he was rich* *Time*, meaning *season*, is translated by "stagione," as, "In questa stagione dell'anno" *In this season of the year* *Time*, meaning *occasion*, is translated by "volta," as, "L'ho visto due volte" *I saw him twice*

603 ‡ The adverbs "qui" and "là" are sometimes put after the demonstrative pronouns, to indicate more forcibly the person or thing referred to Ex

Comprì questo qui, e non quello là Buy this one, and not that one

604 § "Quei" is however used as a pronoun in expressions like "Quei di Milano" *The men (people) of Milan* Dante often uses "quei" instead of "colui" Ex  
E come quei, che con lena affannata And even as he, who, with panting breath

605. "Questo" and "quello," "questa" and "quella," "questi" and "quegli," are also used as relative pronouns, meaning *the latter*, and *the former*, "questo" and "quello" should be used with reference to *things*, in speaking of persons "questi" and "quegli" are used, but *only* as subjects, in the masculine singular. Ex

Ho comprato una grammatica francese e un dizionario te- desco, quella per Filippo, questo per Guglielmo	I have bought a French grammar and a German dictionary, the former for Philip, the latter for William.
--	---

I due più grandi oratori dell' antichità furono Demostene e Cicerone, quegli era greco, questi romano	The two greatest orators of anti- quity were Demosthenes and Cicero, the former was a Greek, the latter a Roman.
--	---

### ON DEMONSTRATIVE PERSONAL PRONOUNS.

606. THE ITALIAN DEMONSTRATIVE PERSONAL PRONOUNS ARE —

Costui,	<i>this man</i>	Costei,	<i>this woman</i>	Costoro,	<i>these men</i>
Cotestui,*	<i>that man</i>	Cotestei,	<i>that woman</i>	Cotestoro,	<i>those men</i>
Colui,		Colei,		Coloro,	<i>those women</i>

607. The above pronouns are used for persons only, and do not refer to any antecedent. When they are used in prose, especially in the colloquial style, they *often* express contempt towards the person or persons alluded to; whilst in poetry they are *often* used in the sense of highest admiration, and even reverence. Ex.

Dimmi, chi è costui ?	Tell me who is this man (fellow) ?
-----------------------	------------------------------------

Sa ella che costoro sono ladri ?	Do you know that these fellows are thieves ?
----------------------------------	--

"Quando vidi costui (Virgilio) nel gran deserto" (Dante).  
*When I beheld him (Virgil) in the great desert*

### ON THE INDEFINITE DEMONSTRATIVE PRONOUNS

608. The demonstrative indefinite pronouns *that* and *this* (meaning *that thing*, *this thing*), are translated into Italian by "ciò." Ex

Ciò (69) non mi va a genio	I do not like that
Non parliam più di ciò.	Let us speak of that no more
Da ciò capisco il resto	From that I understand the rest

609 \* There is the same difference in meaning between "costui," "cotestui," and "colui," as there is between "questo," "cotesto," and "quello" (See 587-595)



610 The indefinite pronouns *that, that which, what*, are translated into "ciò che," "quel che," or "quello che." Ex

Ciò che sorprende tutti è l'arrivo	What surprises everybody is the
del principe	arrival of the prince.
Quel che dice è vero	What he says is true
Tutto quello che risplende non è oro.	All is not gold that glitters

611. The indefinite pronoun *what*, meaning *which thing*, is translated into "che," or "che cosa." Ex.

Che cosa volete, Francesco ?	What do you want, Francis ?
A che pensa, Signore ?	What are you thinking of, Sir ?

#### EXERCISE LIV.

What (611) do you think of this country ? I like it almost as much as (505, 508) my native country Of these three he is, this is the one (which)† I should prefer Modesty (328) is to merit what (610) shadows are to the figures in (di) a painting We are body and mind, the former (605) should (224, 307) obey, the latter command That which (610) is superfluous often costs more than that which is necessary That man, by (con) his (560) extravagance, has not only squandered all his own property, (582) but also that (600) of his wife I am influenced by (272) love (328) and (by) anger, the former (605) pleads that I should forgive him, the latter that I should punish him Dante (334) and Shakespeare (333) were two great poets, the former (605) was (Imp. Ind.) an (354) Italian, and the latter an Englishman. I will do all that which (610, 612) depends upon (from) me to obtain that (593) post for you (198) Your sister has just (299) made me a (360) present of this beautiful bunch§ of grapes That (593) clock is fast,|| and my (560) watch is ten minutes slow.

612 \* "Quanto" is often used instead of "tutto quello che" Ex

Fa quanto dipende da lui He does all he can

613 † *Country* is translated into Italian by "paese" when it means a territory occupied by a people Ex "L'Italia è un bel paese" *Italy is a fine country*

614 *Country* is translated into Italian by "campagna," when it means the country, the fields Ex "Va a passare l'estate alla campagna" *He is going to spend the summer in the country*

615 *Country* is translated into Italian by "patria," when it means the fatherland Ex "Amo la mia patria" *I love my native country*

616 ‡ *The one (which)*, is translated by "quello che," and "quella che"

617 § *A bunch of grapes* is translated by "Un grappolo d'uva," *a bunch of keys* by "Un mazzo di chiavi," *a bunch of flowers*, by "Un mazzo di fiori"

618 || In speaking of a clock, or watch, *to be fast* is rendered by "Avanzare," and *to be slow*, by "Star indietro," or "Ritardare"

## LESSON XXVIII.

## ON RELATIVE PRONOUNS.

619. THE ITALIAN RELATIVE PRONOUNS ARE —		
	il quale, m. s. }	
SUBJECT.	Che, <i>or</i>	la quale, f. s. <i>who, which, that.</i>
		i quali, m. p.
		le quali, f. p.
DIR. OBJ	Cui, <i>or</i> il quale, &c.	<i>whom, which</i>
	Di cui,* <i>or</i> del quale, &c.	<i>of whom, of which, whose.</i>
	A cui, <i>or</i> al quale, &c.	<i>to whom, to which.</i>
INDIR. OBJ }	Da cui, <i>or</i> dal quale, &c.	<i>from whom, from which</i>
	Per cui, <i>or</i> pel quale, &c.	<i>for whom, for which.</i>
	Con cui, <i>or</i> col quale, &c.	<i>with whom, with which.</i>
	In cui,† <i>or</i> nel quale, &c.	<i>in whom, in which</i>

620 Both the pronouns “che” (“cui,” “di cui,” &c.), and “il quale” (“del quale,” &c.), are used with reference to persons, animals, and things, but still, when referring to animals or things, “il quale,” “del quale,” &c., is generally used. Ex.

Il giovine che ( <i>or</i> il quale) parla	The young man who is speaking.
Ecco l'albero il quale ( <i>or</i> che) produsse tanti fiori l'anno passato.	There is the tree which produced so much blossom last year
Il signore di cui ( <i>or</i> del quale) le ho parlato	The gentleman of whom I have spoken to you.
Le farò vedere il fiume dal quale ( <i>or</i> da cui) tutta questa valle è irrigata.	I will show you the river by which all this valley is watered.

621 \* When reference is made to things, “di che,” “a che,” &c., may be used instead of “di cui,” “a cui,” &c. Ex

La materia di che parlar dobbiamo è importantissima	The matter about which we have to speak is most important
---	---

622 † When referring to time “che,” instead of “in che,” *or* “in cui,” is used. Ex

“Lo dì che (in cui) hanno detto ai dolci amici addio” (Dante)	On the day they said good-bye to their dearest friends
---	--

623 The relative pronoun must always be expressed in Italian, even when it is omitted in English Ex.

Il ragazzo che vidi non era così grande come mio fratello.      The boy I saw was not so tall as my brother

624 "Che" as well as "cui" may be used in the accusative, but when there may be ambiguity between the subject and the object of the phrase, "cui" (which is never used as subject) should be used, and not "che." Ex.

L'individuo cui maltrattò lo stro fratello.      The individual whom your brother ill-treated

L'eroe, cui tutto il mondo onora.      The hero who is honoured by the whole world.

625 When "di cui" corresponds to *whose*, it is generally placed between the article and the noun with which it is used, and the preposition "di" is omitted. Ex.

La Fiammetta, i cui capelli erano crespi, lunghi e d'oro      Fiammetta, whose hair was crisp, long, and like gold.  
(Boccaccio).

626. In poetry, and in the higher style, "onde" is used instead of "di cui," "del quale," &c, "da cui," "dal quale," &c. Ex.

"Amor depose la faretra e l'arco,  
Onde (di cui) sempre va carco." (Tasso).

*Love laid down the bow and quiver,  
With which he is always armed.*

"Que' begli occhi ond' escon saette" (Petrarca).  
*Those beautiful eyes whence arrows dart.*

627. When referring to persons the "a," of "a cui," is often omitted. Ex.

"Voi, cui (a cui) fortuna ha posto in mano il freno  
Delle belle contrade ." (Petrarca).

*You, in whose hands fortune has placed the control  
Of the beautiful lands*

628. When *which*, *of which*, *to which*, &c., have for antecedent a clause, or the whole of a foregoing sentence, they are translated by "il che," "del che," "al che," &c. Ex.

Il povero vecchio piangeva amaramente, il che mi commosse oltremodo.      The poor old man was weeping bitterly, which moved me very much.

Lo hanno maltrattato, di che si lagna sempre.      They ill-treated him, of which he always complains.

' An *e*, dotted thus *e*, has the broad sound of the *a* in the word *gate*

629. The pronouns *he who, she who, the one who, those who, the one that, the one which, those which*, having reference to an antecedent, are relative pronouns, and are expressed by "quello che," "quella che," "quelli che," or "quelle che." Ex.

Ammiro questi giovinetti, specie quello che ha recitato "Il Cin- que Maggio" del Manzoni.	I admire these youths, particu- larly the one who recited "The Fifth of May" by Manzoni.
---	---

630. But when the words *he who, she who, those who*, do not refer to any antecedent, they are Indefinite Personal Pronouns, and are translated by "colui che" (or "il quale"), "colei che" (or "la quale"), "coloro che" ("i quali," or "le quali") Ex.

Colui che le ha detto ciò, si è fatto beffe di Lei.	He who said that, was making fun of you.
Coloro che si somigliano si a- mano.	Birds of a feather flock to- gether

631 "Che," "quale," and "quali" are also used as inter-rogative pronouns; "che" then means *what*, and "quale," and "quali" mean *which* (of two, or several persons or things). Ex.

Che lavoro c'è da fare?	What work is there to do?
Quale preferite di queste case?	Which of these houses do you prefer?

632. The exclamations *what! what a!* are translated by "che!" or "quale!" Ex.

Che bel palazzo! che peccato che non sia abitato.	What a beautiful palace! what a pity it is not inhabited.
--	--

633. The expressions "un non so che," "alcun che," mean *a something or other* (indescribable) Ex.

Ha "un certo non so che," che mi va a genio.	There is something or other in him that I like.
---	--

634. "Quale" (or "quali") . "quale" (or "quali"), mean *one... another, some others* Ex.

Quali andavano, quali venivano, tutti erano affaccendati	Some were going, some were returning, all were busy.
---	---

635. "Quale" is sometimes used in the sense of *such as*. Ex.

"E quale è quel che volentieri acquista." (Dante).  
*And as he is who willingly acquires.*

---

\* A z, dotted thus z, has the soft sound of the z in the word *real*.

636. When "che" means *that*, it is a conjunction, and is always expressed in Italian, even when it is omitted in English. Ex

Non credo che abbia alcun diritto di parlare I do not think he has any right to speak.

637. "Chè" (whether the accent is marked or not) is often used instead of "perchè," *for, because*. Ex.

"...chè, poder ch'egli abbia,  
Non ti torrà lo scender questa roccia." (Dante).  
*for, any power that he may have,  
Shall not prevent thy going down this crag*

638. "Che," preceded by a verb used negatively, means *nothing, nothing but, only*. Ex

Luigi non ha che fare Louis has nothing to do.  
Non ricevette che lodi, nep- He received nothing but praises;  
pure un soldo not so much as a half-penny.

639. "Non che," followed by a verb in the Infinitive, is equivalent to the English expression, *not only...but*. Ex.

Non che scrivervi, venne Not only did he write to me,  
a vedermi due volte. but he came twice to see me.

640. "Che" is sometimes used instead of "quando," *when*. Ex.  
Pietro venne che avevo già Peter came when I had already  
finito. finished

641. "Chè!" or "ma chè!" mean the same as *nonsense!* Ex.  
Ma chè! non sa neanche leggere Nonsense! he cannot even read.

### EXERCISE LV

Which (631) do you like best of those (594) three books? The one that (629) has the illustrations, and is bound in parchment. That lady is Mrs. Trivelli, of whom (619) I spoke (Past Def.) to you yesterday. My sister learns music from the gentleman whom (624) your brother recommended (180) to me (193). The young lady (623) we met last night at Mrs. Jones' (434) has just (299) entered (183) the drawing-room. Which one? (631). The one who (629) spoke French to you. The watch (623) you bought me is broken (rompersi). Not only (639) did he send us the tickets, but he took us to the theatre in his carriage. Historians represent men such as (635) they are poets depict them such as they should be (224).

---

\* The straight reading of this sentence is "Non dico che spero trovar perdono; dico che spero trovar anche pietà." *I do not say that I hope to find pardon, I say that I hope to find also pity (sympathy)*

## LESSON XXIX.

## ON INDEFINITE PRONOUNS.

## 642. THE PRONOUN "CHI."

Chi,	<i>who, whom, he who, him who.</i>
Di chi,	<i>of whom, whose, of him who.</i>
A chi,	<i>to whom, to him who.</i>
Da chi,	<i>from whom, from him who.</i>
Per chi,	<i>for whom, for him who.</i>
&c	&c. &c.

643 The pronoun "chi" is both an indefinite and an interrogative pronoun, it is used for persons only, is invariable, and serves for both genders and numbers, it has no need of any antecedent. Verbs employed with "chi" are used in the singular only, except "essere" which is used in both numbers. Ex.

Chi le ha fatto questo regalo ?	Who made you this present ?
Chi sono i di lei corrispondenti ?	Who are your correspondents ?
Sappiamo di chi volete parlare	We know whom you allude to.
A chi ha dato il biglietto ?	To whom did you give the ticket ?
Da chi ha ricevuto questa buona notizia ?	From whom did you receive this good news ?
Per chi dipinge questo bellissimo quadro ?	For whom do you paint this beautiful picture ?

644. "Chi" "chi" mean *one another, some others.* Ex.

Chi accorre, chi sguizza tra uomo e uomo, e se la batte (Manzoni).	One runs up, another sneals away between man and man, and takes to his heels.
--	---

645. "Chi" is often used instead of "colui che," "colui che," "coloro che," especially in proverbial expressions. Ex.

Chi legge, regge.	Knowledge is power.
Chi è in difetto, è in sospetto,	He who is in fault, is in suspicion
Chi si scusa, ‡ si accusa.	He who excuses himself, accuses himself.

\* See rule 63, to understand the meaning of the letters in the darker type.

† Notice that an *o*, preceded by a *u* has always the broad sound of the *o* in the word *orphan*

‡ An *s*, dotted thus *s*, has the soft sound of the *s* in the word *rose*.

### "CHIUNQUE," AND "CHICCHESSIA."

646. The Indefinite Pronouns, "chiunque," and "chicchezza" (plural "chicchessiano") mean *whoever*, and can only refer to persons; "chicchessia" is followed by the conjunction "che," and a verb in the Subjunctive Mood Ex.

Chiunque desiderava parlarle,	Whoever desired to speak to
doveva ottenerne il permesso	her, was obliged to get per-
dal magistrato	mission from the magistrate
Ditelo pure a chicchezza che	Tell it to whomsoever you like.
vi piaccia.	

### "CHECCHESSIA."

647. The pronoun "checchezza," means *anything whatever* Ex  
Datemi checchezza Give me anything whatever.

648 "Qualunque," "qualsia," "qualsivoglia," and their plural forms "qualsisiano," and "qualsivogliano," mean *whatever, whatsoever*, they may refer to things or persons, and are adjectives or pronouns, according as they precede, or stand for a noun Where they are adjectives they are followed by a verb in the Subjunctive Mood preceded by the conjunction "che" Ex

Dategli un vestito qualunque	Give him any coat you like
Qualunque raccomandazione	Whatever recommendation he
ch'egli abbia, non sarà elet-	may have, he will not be
to.	elected.

### "ALCUNO"

649. "Alcuno," "alcuna," "alcuni," "alcune," "qualcuno," "qualcheduno," mean *some, any, someone, some people*, "alcuno," &c., are adjectives when they precede a noun, and pronouns when they stand for a noun, "qualcuno" and "qualcheduno" are only pronouns Ex.

Alcuni poemi italiani sono diffi-	Some Italian poems are difficult
cili a tradursi.	to translate.
Non ho ancor visto alcuno	I have not seen anybody yet.

### "TALE," AND "COTALE."

650. "Tale" and "tal," "cotale" and "cotali" mean *such a, some one*. These words are adjectives or pronouns, according as they precede or stand for a noun. Ex.

Un tal uomo non è da com-	Such a man is not to be pitied.
piangersi.	

\* An o, dotted thus o, has the broad sound of the o in the word *orphan*

## "CERTO."

651. "Certo,"\* "certa," "certi," and "certe" mean *certain*. These words are adjectives or pronouns, according as they precede or stand for a noun Ex.

Ho sentito una certa notizia. I have heard certain news.

652. "Tale," "tali," and "cotale," "cotali" are also used to begin the second part of a simile, and mean *such, even so*. Ex.

"Quale colui, che grande inganno ascolta

Che gli sia fatto, e poi se ne rammarca,  
Tal sì fe' Flegias nell'ira accolta." (Dante).

*As one who listens to some great deceit*

*Which has been done to him, and then sore resents it,  
Such grew Phlegyas in his gathered rage.*

"Cotali uscir dalla schiera ov' è Dido" (Dante).

*So came they from the band where Dido is*

## "TALUNO" AND "CERTUNI"

653. "Taluno" and "certuni" are indefinite pronouns, "taluno" means *some one*, and is only used in the singular; "certuni" means *some people*, and is only used in the plural. Ex.

C'è taluno là che non mi va molto a gemo There is some one there I do not much like.

Certuni hanno idee curiose. Some people have odd ideas.

## EXERCISE LVI

Who (643) is knocking at the door? My little brother James. To whom (643) have you told the news? To my sister-in-law. The road through which (619) we passed was (Imp Ind) very lonely. From whom (643) do you expect a letter? From that lady who (619) spoke to you at my brother's house. Children (328) who (619) obey (to) their parents† deserve to be praised. What (631) is the weight of this shield? It is about ten pounds.‡ For whom are you painting that vase? For my mother-in-law. The pencil with which (619) I was writing (179) is broken. Whose hat is this? It belongs to that little girl (442). What (611) are you thinking of? I was thinking of the advice§ you gave (180) to me.

654 \* "Un certo tale," "una certa tale" mean *a certain person* Ex.

Ho incontrato un certo tale I have met a certain person

655 † *Parents* is translated into Italian by "genitori," "parenti" means *relations*. The word *acquaintance* is translated by "conoscenti," and "conoscenze"

656 ‡ *Pound*, weight, is translated by "libbra," *pound sterling*, by "lira sterlina" "Lira," alone, means *tenfence*

657 § *The advice of a friend* is translated by "il consiglio di un amico," *advice*, in the sense of *opinion*, is rendered by "parere"



### "OGNUNO."

658. "Ognuno," "ognuna," mean *any man, any woman, any one*; they are used with or without an antecedent. Ex.

Ognuno che voglia esser mem-	Any one who wishes to be a
bro di quella società deve	member of that society, must
pagare una ghinea.	pay one guinea.

### "CIASCUNO" AND "CIASCHEDUNO."

659 "Ciascuno," "ciascheduno," and their feminine forms, mean *every, everyone, each*, and are adjectives or pronouns; they are adjectives when they precede a noun, and pronouns when they stand instead of a noun. Ex

Ciascuno degli ufficiali ebbe a	Every officer had to pass an
subire un esame.	examination.
Ricevettero una lira sterlina	Each of them received a pound
ciascheduno.*	sterling

### "ALTRI"†

660. The indefinite pronoun "altri" means *others, I* Ex

Gli altri non parleranno.	The others will not speak.
Altri non agirebbe così	Another (I) would not act thus.

661. The pronoun "altri" is sometimes used in Italian, when in English the verb may be used in the passive form Ex.

"Venite a noi parlar, s'altri nol nega" (Dante).  
*Come and speak to us if it is not forbidden.*

### "ALTRUI"

662. "Altrui" means *other, others*, and only refers to persons; it is employed both in the singular and plural numbers, as the direct or indirect object of a verb, but never as its subject. The prepositions "di," and "a," before "altrui," are often omitted. Ex.

Egli brama l'altrui.	He covets other people's property.
Vuol sempre aver notizia dei fatti altrui (or di altrui).	He always wants to know other people's business
"La mia vita che è celata altrui." (Petrarca)	My life which is hidden to others

\* Instead of "ciascheduno" one could say "per uno," or "a testa." Ex.

Datemi una ghinea a testa Give us a guinea each

663. † "Altri" "altri" mean *one another, some others* Ex  
 Altri veniva, altri andava via, &c One came, another went away, &c.

## "L'UN L'ALTRO."

664. The reciprocal pronouns "l'un l'altro," ("l'una l'altra," "gli uni gli altri," &c.) mean *one another*, the second term of these pronouns ("l'altro," "l'altra," &c.) may be preceded by a preposition. Ex

Si aiutano l'un l'altro : They aid one another.  
 Parlano l'una dell'altra. They speak ill of one another.

## "L'UNO E L'ALTRO," &amp;c., "AMBO," &amp;c

665 The collective pronouns "l'uno e l'altro," "l'una e l'altra," "tutti e due," "tutt'e due," "ambo," "ambidue," "entrambi," &c., mean *both*, "gli uni e gli altri," "le une e le altre," mean *all of them*. They are followed by the definite article, when they precede a noun; before a verb the article is omitted. Ex.

L'uno e l'altro de' miei fratelli Both my brothers were out of  
 erano fuori di casa doors.

"Ambo le mani per dolor mi morsò" (Dante).

*Both my hands in agony I bit*

Gli uni e gli altri furono puniti. All of them were punished.

## "O L'UNO, O L'ALTRO," &amp;c.

666. The pronouns "o l'uno, o l'altro," "o l'una, o l'altra," † &c., mean *either one, or the other, (or others,) either* Ex.

Mi mandi l'uno, o l'altro. Send me either one or the other.

## "NÈ L'UNO NÈ L'ALTRO," &amp;c.

667 The relative pronouns "nè l'uno nè l'altro," "nè l'una nè l'altra," &c., mean *neither the one nor the other*. The verb used with these pronouns must be accompanied by the negation "non," and be in the singular or in the plural number, according as the action it expresses may be done by one, or both the persons spoken of, or alluded to Ex.

Non comprerò nè l'uno nè l'altro I shall not buy either of them

Nè Foscolo nè Monti non è Neither Foscolo nor Monti is  
 l'autore di questo poema, the author of this poem.

Nè l'una nè l'altra non verranno. Neither the one nor the other will come.

668. \* Instead of the reciprocal pronouns "l'un l'altro," &c., the Italians sometimes use the adverbs "scambievolmente," *mutally*, "reciprocamente," *reciprocally*

669 † The other disjunctives used in Italian instead of "o" are "ovvero," "ossia," "oppure," "odanche"

## "NIUNO," "NESSUNO," "VERUNO."

670. "Niuno," "Nessuno," "Veruno," and their feminine forms mean *nobody*, *no one*, and are adjectives, or pronouns, according as they precede or stand for a noun. When they follow the verb, they must be preceded by the negation "non," but when they precede it, they do *not* require any negation before them. Ex.

Niun uomo è senza difetti	No man is without his defects
Non ho parlato a nessuno	I have not spoken to anyone.
Nessuno è profeta nel proprio paese.	No one is a prophet in his own country

## ON THE WORDS "NIENTE," AND "NULLA "

671 "Niente" and "nulla" used as nouns (preceded by an article) mean *nothing*, *the slightest thing*, *a trifle*. Ex.

Rientrerà presto nel nulla	He will soon re-enter into the insignificance from whence he arose
dond'è sortito.	

Per un niente si arrabbia      A trifle makes him enraged

672 "Niente" and "nulla" are also used as indefinite pronouns, in the sense of *nothing*, when they follow a verb, that verb must be preceded by the negation "non" Ex

Pareva che nulla si potesse far senza di lui.	It seemed as if they could do nothing without him
Questi ragazzi non sanno niente	These boys do not know anything.

673 "Niente" and "nulla" often have the meaning of "qualche cosa," *something*, *anything* Ex

Non vuol nulla oggi?	Do you want anything to-day?
----------------------	------------------------------

## ON THE WORDS "QUANTO," "QUANTUNQUE"

674 "Quanto" is also (494) an adverb, and means *how much*, it is always used with a verb in the subjunctive mood Ex.

S'ella sapesse quanto io la stimi!	If you knew how much I esteem you!
------------------------------------	------------------------------------

675 "Quantunque"\* is an indefinite pronoun and means *all that which*. Ex

"Chi vuol veder quantunque può natura." (Petrarca).  
Whoever wishes to see all what nature can do

\* "Quantunque" is also a conjunction, meaning *although* See rule 740.

## ON THE WORDS "PER QUANTO," AND "PER QUANTI"

676 "Per quanto" is an adverb, and means *however, however much*, it is used with a verb in the subjunctive mood Ex.

Per quanto abili siano, non riesciranno nell'impresa. However able they may be, they will not succeed in the undertaking

677. Instead of "per quanto," "per," followed by the conjunction "che" may be used Ex.

Per vantaggiose che fossero le sue offerte, non volli accettarle. However advantageous his proposals might have been, I would not accept them.

678. "Per quanti" and "per quante" are adjectives and mean *whatever*, they are employed with a verb in the subjunctive mood. Ex.

Per quante ragioni adducesimo, non ci fu dato di convincerlo. Whatever reasons we adduced, we were not able to convince him

## EXERCISE LVII

They were both (665) students at the University of Oxford. Every one (659) of the pupils of the Royal College of Music and of the Royal Academy of Music received (Past Def) a ticket of admission to the International Concert. Chaitty rejoices at the good fortune of others (662). Neither my grandfather nor my aunt (275, 667) have arrived. Neither of them (667) is the owner of the house (623) we have seen. Rich as they are, they will not be admitted to that society. Let them be ever so clever (however clever they may be) (676), they will never succeed (258) in such an undertaking. Some people (649) are never satisfied, however (676) prosperous they may be. I shall buy either (666) this box† or that trunk. How much capital‡ have you entrusted to him? I have entrusted to him about five hundred (537) pounds.

679 \* The expressions *such as they are, determined as they were, &c.* may be rendered in Italian by "sicchi quali sono," "risoluto quali erano," &c.

680 † *Box*, if of a good size, is translated into Italian by "cassa," if a small one, by "cassetta," and if a very small one, by "scatola."

*Snuff box* is translated by "scatola da tabacco."

*A box*, at the theatre, is translated by "un palco," or "un palchetto."

*The box of a carriage*, is translated by "il sedile d'una carrozza."

*A cartridge box*, is translated by "una giberna."

*Box-wood*, is translated by "bosso."

*A box on the ear*, is translated by "uno schiaffo."

*To box*, is translated by "fare a pugni."

681 ‡ *The capital*, meaning *the funds, money*, is translated by "il capitale."

*The capital*, meaning *the chief town*, is translated by "la capitale."

*The capital of a column*, is translated by "il capitello di una colonna."

## LESSON XXX.

## ON THE INFINITIVE MOOD.

## ON THE USE OF THE PRESENT.

682. The Present of the Infinitive is used in Italian, as in English, to express an action in an indefinite manner, without any reference to time or person. Ex

Cantare, *or* il cantar troppo a di- To sing too much before break-  
giuno guasta la voce fast spoils the voice

683. The Present of the Infinitive is used in Italian as a noun, both as subject, and object in the sentence, and is generally translated into English by a present participle, or by a noun Ex

Lo scrivermi ella così spesso, mi Your writing to me so often,  
fa molto piacere gives me much pleasure

Non mi piace quel suo parlare I do not like his (*or* her) enig-  
matico. ' matic way of speaking.

"Non era l'andar suo cosa mortale" (Petrarca)

*Her gait was not like that of a mortal being*

684. As already stated in rule 126, the Present of the Infinitive is used in Italian, instead of the second person singular of the Imperative used negatively Ex

Non andar giù, Carlino Don't go down, Charlie

## ON THE USE OF THE PAST

685. The Past of the Infinitive is used in Italian as a noun, both as subject, and object in the sentence, and is generally translated into English by the Past Gerund Ex

L'avermi ella parlato, è causa di Your having spoken to me, is  
tutta questa gelosia the cause of all this jealousy

## ON THE USE OF THE GERUND

686. The English Present Participle, preceded by the prepositions *by*, *through*, *with*, *on*, is translated into Italian by the Gerund, *without* any preposition before it. Ex.

Scrivendogli ogni giorno, lo for- By writing to him every day,  
zai a rispondermi I compelled him to reply.

687. Instead of the gerund, the present of the infinitive, preceded by the preposition "con," *with*, and the definite article, may be used Ex.

Con lo scrivergli ogni giorno lo By writing to him every day,  
forzai a rispondermi. I compelled him to reply

See rule 63, to understand the meaning of the letters in the darker type.

688 The English Present Participle, preceded by the preposition *in*, should be translated into Italian, by the Present of the Infinitive, preceded by “*nel*” or “*nello*” Ex.

*Nello* scriverle, potete palesarle In writing to her, you can inform  
il vostro progetto. her of your plan.

689 As already stated in rule 200, the Compound of the Gerund is used in Italian as in English, except that in Italian the auxiliary “*avendo*,” or “*essendo*,” is omitted, and the past participle alone is expressed, and is variable, according to the object in the sentence (when “*avendo*” is omitted), or the subject (when “*essendo*” is omitted) Ex

*Datoci* (*avendoci* *dato*) *il* *di-* Having given us the despatch,  
*spaccio*, *parti* *a* *gambe* he ran off  
*Sedutasi* (*essendosi* *seduta*) *per* Having seated herself on the  
*terra*, *si* *mise* *a* *cucire* ground, she began to sew.

## EXERCISE LVIII

He kept us waiting (683) in the rain till two o'clock (548) in the afternoon Your having told (685) him frankly that we would wait no longer offended him Having conducted me (689) into the room destined for (to) me, he wished me a (the) good-night, and went away Princes (328) who (620) in governing (688) their subjects, are not guided by (270) principles of justice, excite disaffection Having seated herself (689) on a comfortable arm-chair, she began to narrate the scene (623) she had witnessed. I admire those (594) artists, I saw them painting some very fine pictures. I should like to have one of those pictures, I saw them being painted I often heard him speaking (690) against you, but I never thought (636) he would dare to cause you any loss. Young as he is (679) he knows how to make himself feared. § I like Miss Williams' voice, I heard her singing (690) last night. The song (623) you have composed is very pretty, I have heard it sung (690) several times. Having dressed (689) themselves in their best clothes, they went out for a walk I came earlier (510) this morning, because I thought (691) I should have found you at home. I do not like to see horses running (683) so fast.

690. \* Both the English expressions *I saw them painting*, and *I saw them painted* (being painted), are translated into Italian by “*Gli ho veduti dipingere*”

691 † *To think*, meaning *to believe*, is translated into Italian by “*Creedere*” The meanings of “*Pensare a*,” and “*Pensare di*,” are given in rule 248

692 § The expressions *to make himself*, or *herself loved, respected, feared* by are translated into Italian by “*farvi amare, rispettare, temere da*”

693 || Notice that in Italian the latter of two verbs is generally put in the Present of the Infinitive, when both verbs have the same subject Ex

*Vorrei poter partire subito pel con-* I wish I could start at once for the  
*tinente* continent

## LESSON XXXI.

## ON THE INDICATIVE MOOD.

## ON THE USE OF THE PRESENT

694 The Present of the Indicative is used in Italian, as in English, to express an action which always happens, or which is happening at the present time. Ex.

Non lavoriamo per lui	We do not work for him
Disegno <sup>a</sup> un ricamo per mia sorella.	I am making <sup>†</sup> a design which my sister will embroider.
Carolina coglie <sup>†</sup> fragole per la colazione	Caroline is gathering strawberries for breakfast

## ON THE USE OF THE IMPERFECT.

695 In Italian the Imperfect of the Indicative is used when the verb expresses an action which was still in progress when another action was done Ex.

Leggevo quando Giorgio entrò nella mia camera	When George entered my room, I was reading <sup>‡</sup>
Le mie cugine coglievano <sup>†</sup> fiori nel giardino	My cousins were gathering <sup>†</sup> flowers in the garden

696 A verb is also used in the Imperfect of the Indicative when it describes the state or condition of persons and things at a past time, specified or alluded to Ex.

Quando entrammo, lo specchio era già rotto	When we entered, the looking-glass was already broken
A quell'epoca gli Spagnuoli erano un gran popolo	At that time the Spaniards were a great people

697 In Italian, the Imperfect Indicative is also used when the verb expresses an action often repeated at a past time Ex.

Quand'ero a Milano, andavo al teatro tutte le sere	When I was at Milan, I used to go to the theatre every night.
--	---

698 \* Expressions like these may also be rendered in Italian by the verb "Stare," when the principal verb in the sentence, whilst describing a progressive action, denotes repose, rest Ex.

Sto disegnando un ricamo per mia sorella	I am making a design which my sister will embroider
Stavo leggendo, quando Carlo entrò nella mia camera	I was reading, when Charles entered my room

699 † Expressions like these may also be rendered in Italian by the verb "Andare" when the principal verb in the sentence expresses motion and progression Ex.

La Carolina va cogliendo fragole per la colazione	Caroline is gathering strawberries for breakfast
Le mie cugine andavano cogliendo fiori nel giardino	My cousins were gathering flowers in the garden

700. ‡ As already stated, the English expressions *I am making, I was reading, they were gathering, &c.*, are translated into Italian as if they were *I make, I read, they gathered, &c.*

701. In Italian, the Imperfect Indicative is also used when the verb denotes the qualities (physical or moral), habits, and customs of persons and nations no longer existing. Ex.

Cesare Borgia aveva il (574) viso pallido, colle guance infossate, con baffi e barba rossa (D'Azeglio)	Cæsar Borgia had a pale face, sunken cheeks, and a moustache and beard of a reddish colour.
--	---

Francesco primo amava la gloria e il potere.	Francis the First loved glory and power.
--	--

I Greci coronavano i loro famosi poeti di alloro e di edera.	The Greeks used to crown their famous poets with laurel and ivy.
--	--

702. In Italian, the Imperfect Indicative is also used when the verb denotes the qualities (physical or moral), habits, and customs possessed or practised at a past time by persons and nations still existing. Ex.

Quand'era giovane amava lo studio delle scienze	When he was young he loved the study of sciences.
---	---

Altrevolte i Greci coltivavano le arti e le scienze con grandissimo amore	Formerly the Greeks cultivated the arts and sciences with very great ardour.
---	--

703. Notice that if the time during which the qualities were possessed, the habits and customs were practised, is specified, the verb is put in the Past Definite. Ex.

Francesco primo amò la gloria durante tutta la sua vita.	Francis the First loved glory during the whole of his life.
--	---

Gl'italiani fecero gran progressi durante il decimo-terzo secolo (or il trecento)	The Italians made great progress during the fourteenth century.
---	---

#### ON THE USE OF THE PAST DEFINITE.

704. The Past Definite is used whenever the verb expresses an action which was begun and entirely completed at a time entirely past, and specified. Ex.

Napoleone entrò in Mosca il 24 agosto, 1812	Napoleon entered Moscow on the 24th of August, 1812
---	---

705. The Past Definite is also used when the verb expresses an action which was done to a person or thing at a past specified time. Ex.

Furono sconfitti una seconda volta, ai venti luglio, dello stesso anno	They were defeated a second time, on the 20th July, of the same year
--	--

---

706 \* Italian poets often use the Past Definite, instead of the Past Indefinite. Ex.  
 Ah! caro Tito, io fui teco ingiusta (METASTASIO.)      Ah! dear Titus, I have been unjust towards you.



## ON THE USE OF THE PAST INDEFINITE

707. The Past Indefinite is used when the verb expresses an action which happened at a time past, but not specified. Ex.

Carlo ha trovato questo libro Charles found this book on my  
sulla tavola di mio zio. uncle's table

Abbiamo viaggiato molto. We have travelled a great deal.

Ho scritto i miei temi I have written my exercises.

708 The Past Indefinite is used when the verb expresses an action which happened at a period of time not entirely past, as "questa mattina," *this morning*, "oggi," *to-day*, "questa settimana," *this week*, &c. Ex.

L'ho incontrato stamattina. I met him this morning.

## ON THE USE OF THE PLUPERFECT INDICATIVE

709. The Pluperfect is used to express an action which had happened, at a time *not specified*, before another action occurred. Ex.

Avevano già distrutto le mura They had already destroyed the  
quando arrivai walls before I arrived.

## ON THE USE OF THE PAST ANTERIOR

710. The Past Anterior is used to express an action which has been done immediately before another action occurred. Ex.

Tosto che avemmo scritto i As soon as we had written our  
nostri temi, uscimmo. exercises, we went out

711 Notice, however, that if the two actions were repeated or habitual, the Pluperfect should be used. Ex.

Tosto che avevamo preso il tè, As soon as we had taken tea,  
andavamo a fare un giro we used to go for a walk.

## EXERCISE LIX

When I was (696) in Paris I often met (697) your American friend Thomas à Becket was kneeling† (696) before the altar when the knights struck (704) him. At two clock we were (696) far from the batteries, and had escaped (709) a great danger. The general assured us that the enemy were (696) not sufficiently numerous to (225) attack us. What (611) did you do (697) in the evening when you were in the country? (614). My brother and I read, and my sisters either sewed, or played upon (583) the piano. Frederick the Great always wore (701) a dark blue uniform. When he entered (183, 704) the room, all the servants were asleep (696). Spain had (696) formerly immense possessions in America

712 \* Notice that the Past Anterior is only used after the expressions "tosto che," "appena," "quando," "quanto prima."

713 † *Was kneeling* must be translated by "era inginocchiato" "S'inginocchiava" would mean *was in the action of kneeling*

## FURTHER REMARKS ON MOODS AND TENSES.

## ON THE USE OF THE PRESENT INDICATIVE

714. When the verb expresses an action or a state which has lasted for some time past, and is still lasting, it must be put in the Present Indicative in one of the two following ways —

Sto in questa casa da cinque anni.	Or	} I have been living in this house these five years.
Sono cinque anni che sto in questa casa.	I have been living in this house these five years.	

## ON THE USE OF THE IMPERFECT INDICATIVE.

715. When the verb expresses an action or a state which had lasted for some time, and was still lasting when a past action occurred, it must be put in the Imperfect Indicative in one of the two following ways —

Quando Giorgio venne, io lavoravo già da due ore.	Or Erano* due ore che lavoravo, quando Giorgio venne.	} I had already been working for two hours when George came.
Quando Giacomo disse la nuova, io non ne sapevo nulla.	When James told the news, I knew nothing about it.	

## ON THE USE OF THE FUTURE.

716. A verb preceded by the adverbs *as soon as*, *when*, &c., indicates a future time, and therefore the future, and *not* the present tense, must be used in Italian. Ex.

Scriverò quando avrò tempo. I will write when I have time.

717. Sometimes in Italian a verb is used in the Future when it expresses a present action accompanied by an idea of doubt. Ex.

Crederà che sia per indifferenza sui dolori altrui (Pellico)	Perhaps you think it is through indifference concerning other people's misfortune.
--	--

## ON THE USE OF THE CONDITIONAL.

718. In Italian the Conditional is sometimes used instead of the English Present of the Indicative. Ex.

Saprebbe dirmi dove stia di casa il console inglese?	Can you tell me where the English consul lives?
--	---

No, non saprei dirglielo.	No, I can't tell you.
---------------------------	-----------------------

Vorrei ch'ella venisse meco.	I wish you would go with me.
------------------------------	------------------------------

719. The Past Conditional is often used in Italian instead of the English Present Conditional. Ex.

Promise che m'avrebbe dato da vivere.	He promised that he would give me wherewith to live.
---------------------------------------	--

\* An *e*, dotted thus *e*, has the broad sound of the *a* in the word *gate*

720. The Conditional, instead of the Present Indicative, and the Conditional Past, instead of the Imperfect Indicative, are often used in Italian to express a fact the reality of which depends upon a statement contained in a previous sentence Ex

<p>I giornali dicono che una battaglia ha avuto luogo fra le truppe reali ed i ribelli. Agguangono che mille di questi sarebbero stati uccisi, e due mila sarebbero prigionieri</p>	<p>The newspapers say that a battle has been fought between the royal troops and the rebels. They add that a thousand of the latter were killed, and two thousand are prisoners.</p>
---	--

### EXERCISE LX.

Her father was (701) a handsome man, but very proud. Man formerly lived (701) in forests, the meadows were (696) his walks, he had for his food the fruits of the earth, and the chirping (683) of birds delighted (701) his (575) ears. When Cræsus showed (704) to Solon his vast treasures, the latter (605) said: "Sire, if anyone (649) come with better iron than yours, he will be master (146) of this gold." According to the statement of the governor, they escaped (720). My servant behaved (703) very well for the first five years, but afterwards he became (704) very rude, and dishonest. I speak of the Normans, because they were (696) then at the height of their glory. Napoleon commanded (704) the artillery at the siege of Toulon, and gained (704) brilliant victories in Italy, as general-in-chief of the French republic. We met (704) last year at Paris. I had never seen (709) him before. Louis XIV lived (703) seventy-eight years, and reigned seventy-two. I wrote (708) to him this morning, immediately after breakfast. Dante was born (704) in 1265, and died in exile in 1321 (544). When Tasso was (550, 696) twelve years old he composed (701) very good Greek verses. If (112) I were you, I would not lend him any money. He was (701) very odd, he used to tell the same story so many times, until it was (696) positively painful to hear him. As soon as they reached (710) the top of the mountain, they were killed (705). Ferdinand and Isabella reigned (696) in Spain when Columbus discovered (704) America. In crossing (688) the moor, I saw a flight of ravens, flying (292) towards the mountains.

721. \* *A flight of birds* is translated by uno stormo d'uccelli "  
*A flock of sheep* "un gregge di pecore "  
*A herd of cattle* "una mandra di bestiame."  
*A herd of stags* "un branco di cervi "  
*A pack of hounds* "una muta di cani."  
*A swarm of bees* "uno sciame di api "  
*A gang of thieves* "una banda di ladri "

## LESSON XXXII.

## ON THE USE OF THE SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD.

722. *The Main Rule is this.* A VERB SHOULD BE USED IN THE SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD WHENEVER THE ACTION IT EXPRESSES IS NOT POSITIVE, therefore a verb is used in the Subjunctive Mood in the following cases —

723. A verb is used in the Subjunctive Mood, when it is governed by another verb expressing doubt, fear, wish, command, exhortation, &c Ex.

Dubito ch'ella possa riuscire.	I doubt whether you will succeed
Temiamo che non piova.	We are afraid it will rain.
Amo credere ch'ella sia bene.	I hope that you are well.
Voglio che facciate ciò.	I want you to do this.
Ella desidera ch'egli venga.	She desires that he should come.
Mi sorprende che ciò l'adiri.	I am surprised that this should make you angry.

724 A verb is also used in the Subjunctive Mood when it is governed by a verb used interrogatively, negatively,<sup>†</sup> or interrogatively with a negation | Ex.

Cred'ella ch'egli sia uscito ?	Do you think that he has gone out ?
Si spera che egli sia eletto ?	Do they hope that he will be elected ?
Non credo che sia ammalato.	I do not think he is ill
Non crede che sia arrivato ?	Do you not think he has arrived ?

\* The negation in cases like this is explained on pages 174 and 175.

725 Notice that "Dimenticare," *to forget*, "Dissimulare," *to dissimulate*, and "Ignorare," *to ignore*, used negatively, govern a verb in the Indicative, because the two negatives (one inherent, and the other added to the verb) amount to an affirmative Ex

Non dimentico che mi ha parlato	I do not forget that he has spoken to me
Non ignoro ch'ella ha talento	I am aware that you have talent

726 † Notice that a verb may be used negatively, without being accompanied by any negative particle Ex

È impossibile che siamo attaccati in questa posizione	It is impossible that we should be attacked in this position
---	--

727 ‡ Notice that a verb may have an interrogative form or be used interrogatively with a negation, without expressing a real interrogation, and, in that case, it is followed by a verb in the Indicative Ex

Dimentica che siamo qui per vegliare agli interessi della nostra patria ?	Do you forget that we are here to watch over the interests of our country ?
Non crede che è arrivato ?	You do not believe (the fact) that he has arrived ?

728 Notice that in many cases instead of the Subjunctive, the Present Infinitive may be elegantly employed, so long as the sense of the sentence remains clear. Ex.

Mi permisc di andare a vedere He consented that I should go  
l'Abbazia di Westminster \* to see Westminster Abbey.

729. A verb is in the Subjunctive Mood when it is governed by the Impersonal verbs "Sembrare," "Parere," "Essere probabile," "Bisognare," "Essere mestieri,"† &c. Ex.

Sembra ch'egli abbia ragione. It seems that he is in the right.  
Bisogna che me ne vada subito I must go away at once

730 A verb is used in the Subjunctive Mood when it is preceded by one of the following conjunctions, which imply condition, or uncertainty —

Perchè,	} so that,	Dato che,	} supposing that.
Affinchè,		Posto che,	
Acciochè,	} in order that	Supposto che,	}
Puiche,		Posto il caso che,	
A patto che,	} provided that,	Quand' anche,	even if
A condizione che,		Solo che,	if but.
Anzi che,	} that	Se mai,	if ever.
Innanzi che,		Nel caso che,	in case that.
Avanti che,	} before that	Come se,	as if
Prima che,		A meno che,†	unless.
Senza che,	} without	Per tema che,	} for fear that,
Checcchè,		Per paura che,	
	whatever.		lest.

#### EXAMPLES

Gli parli prima che egli parta. Speak before he departs.

Purchè agisca a modo mio. Provided he acts as I like.

731. "Che," when used instead of "perchè," "affinchè," and "acciochè," is followed by a verb in the Subjunctive Mood. Ex.

Venga, che (affinche) parliamo Come, so that we may talk  
delle nostre faccende. about our business

\* Instead of "Permisc ch'io andassi a vedere l'Abbazia di Westminster"

732 † But such Impersonal verbs as "Essere certo," "Essere evidente," &c., are followed by a verb in the Indicative Mood, because the latter expresses an action in a positive manner. Ex.

L certo ch'egli è stato eletto It is certain that he has been elected

733 ‡ Notice that the conjunctions "a meno che," "per tema che," "per paura che," and "che," used instead of "senza che," are followed by the Subjunctive, preceded by "non" Ex.

A meno che Lei non gli parli, egli Unless you speak to him he will never  
non lavorerà mai work.

Si tenne chiuso in castello, per He kept himself shut up in the castle, for  
paura che non l'attaccassero fear of being attacked.

Non fa mai viaggio, che non sia He never travels without getting ill.  
ammalato

734 As stated in rules 674, 676, 677, the Subjunctive Mood is also used after the adverbs "quanto," *how much*, and "per quanto," or "per," *however much*. Ex.

L'opera umana, per buona che    Human work, be it ever so good,  
sia, trova sempre critici            always finds critics.

735. The conjunctions "in maniera che," "in modo che," "talmente che," *in such a manner that*, "finchè," "sinchè," "sino a che," "fintantochè," *until* (in keeping with THE MAIN RULE), are followed by a verb in the Indicative, when the action it expresses is positive, and that is when the tense used is past or present. Ex.

Parlò in maniera che fu udito    He spoke in such a manner that  
da tutta l'adunanza.            he was heard by the whole  
meeting.

736 But the above conjunctions are followed by the verb in the Subjunctive Mood, when the verb *does not* express a positive action, and that is when it has reference to a future time. Ex.

La prego di parlare in modo    I beg of you to speak in such a  
tale che sia intesa e capita       manner that you may be heard  
da tutta l'assemblea (l'adu-      and understood by the whole  
nanza).                              assembly.

737 Notice that in many sentences a verb may be in the Indicative or in the Subjunctive Mood, according as the action it expresses is certain or doubtful. Ex.

Andrò in un sito dove sarò    I shall go to a place where I  
quieto                              shall be quiet (*I know I shall*).  
Andrò in un sito ove io sia    I will go to a place where I shall  
quieto.                              be quiet (*I hope I shall*).  
Cerco un uomo che sa la lin-    I am looking for a man who  
gua cinese                        knows the Chinese language  
    (*I know he does*).  
Cerco un uomo che sappia la    I am looking for a man who  
lingua cinese.                    knows the Chinese language  
    (*I hope to find one who knows it*).

738. Notice that in many sentences it is necessary to supply the words left out in them, to appreciate correctly the use of the Subjunctive. Ex.

Voglia il cielo ch'ella sia felice!    Heaven grant that you may be  
happy

Which means "Bramo che il cielo voglia ch'ella sia felice!"

739. Notice that in all the cases hitherto mentioned, the verbs are logically used in the Subjunctive Mood because they *do not express a positive fact*, but the Italians indiscriminately employ the Subjunctive Mood, also, in the following cases —

\* Notice that the *e* in *ea*, etc., has always the broad sound of *a* in the word *ga'e*.

740. The Italians put a verb in the Subjunctive Mood, also, when it is preceded by the conjunctions "benchè," "ancorchè," "sebbene," "contuttochè," "quantunque," "avvegnachè," and "nonostantechè," *although* Ex.

Voglio andare a ballare, quan- I want to go to dance, although  
tunque non mi senta bene I do not feel well

"Italia mia, benchè I parlar sia indarno" (PETRARCA)

*My Italy, although speaking may be in vain*

741 The verb is put in the Subjunctive Mood, also, when it is preceded by the indefinite pronoun "mente," *nothing*, or the adjectives "solo,"† *only*, "primo," *first*, "ultimo," *last*, "unico," *only one*, "pochi" "poche," *few*, or any adjective in the superlative-relative degree, as "il più grande," *the greatest*, "il migliore," *the best*, &c, followed by a relative pronoun Ex

Non c'è mente che mi spiaccia There is nothing I dislike so  
come l'ipocrisia much as hypocrisy

Il cane è il solo animale la cui The dog is the only animal  
fedeltà sia provata whose fidelity has been proved

742. But when "solo," "il più grande," &c, are followed by an indirect object, the verb is used in the Indicative Ex

Londra è la più grande delle London is the largest of the  
città che ho vedute towns I have seen

## EXERCISE LXI

Do you hope that he will be elected (724) a (354) member of Parliament? I wish he may succeed (723) in his undertaking It is possible that I may have been (729) imprudent, but I have not been criminal I do not like you to go out (724) with that good-for-nothing fellow I do not think you have acted (724, 636) prudently I take this much care of your education, in the hope that you will profit (723) by it (240). I do not forget that you have invested (725) much capital (681) in that speculation Tell the servant to awake (723, 728) me early to-morrow morning Stop with me until I receive (730) assistance, I beg of you

743 † Notice that, according to THE MAIN RULE, as stated at the beginning of this lesson, the verb which follows "benchè," "ancorchè," &c, should be used in the Subjunctive Mood *only when the action it expresses is not positive*, so in the first example given above Petrarca rightly uses "essere" in the Subjunctive Mood, because its action is *not positive*, but in the second example the Subjunctive is illogically used, because the verb "sentire" expresses *a most positive fact*. There are, however, many examples of the Indicative Mood being used by the best Italian authors, after the above-mentioned conjunction For instance, Tasso in the second canto (stanza xxv) of the "Gerusalemme Liberata," says —

"Benchè ne furto è il mio, nè ladra sono"

*Although my deed is not a theft, nor am I a thief*

744 † The above remark holds good with regard to "solo," "il più grande," &c.

RULES FOR THE CONCORD BETWEEN THE TENSES OF THE  
GOVERNING VERB AND THE GOVERNED VERB.

745 The use of the four tenses of the Subjunctive Mood depends upon the tense of the governing verb in the Indicative Mood.

746. When the governing verb is in the Present or in the Future (Indicative), the governed verb is put in the Present of the Subjunctive, to express a present or a future action, or state, and in the Imperfect, or in the Past Subjunctive, to express a past action, or state, in the Imperfect, if the action or state is alluded to as having been incomplete at a past time, in the Past, if it is alluded to as complete. Ex.

Non credo che Giuseppe lavori adesso I do not think that Joseph is working now.

Pagherò purchè io abbia denaro I will pay, if I have money.

Non credo che lavorasse quando siamo venuti I do not think that he was working when we came.

Dubito che abbia ricevuto la lettera di suo padre. I doubt whether he has received his father's letter.

747 Notice that the Imperfect, instead of the Present Subjunctive, and the Pluperfect, instead of the Past Subjunctive are used when some conditional expression follows the verb in the subjunctive. Ex.

Dubito ch'ella studiasse, se non ci fosse costretta I doubt that you would study, if you were not compelled to do so

748 When the governing verb is in one of the past tenses (Indicative), or in the Conditional, the governed verb is put in the Imperfect Subjunctive to express a present action, or state, but in the Pluperfect Subjunctive to express a past action, or state. Ex.

Non sapevo che Carlo dimorasse qui I did not know that Charles was living here.

Vorrei ch'ella venisse da me domani I wish you would call on me to-morrow

749 Notice that when the governing verb is in the Past Indefinite, followed by "*perchè*," "*affinchè*," "*benchè*," "*quantunque*," &c, the governed verb is put in the Present Subjunctive, to express a present, or a future action, or state. Ex.

Vi ho dato il denaro perchè possiate andare a vedere i vostri. I gave you the money so that you may go to see your friends.

750 Notice finally that when the governing verb is in the Past Indefinite, it is customary to use the Past, instead of the Pluperfect Subjunctive. Ex.

Non ho mai conosciuto un uomo che abbia tanto lavorato I have never known a man who has worked so hard



## ON THE CONJUNCTION "SE," IF.

751. When "se" is a real Conditional Conjunction, it is followed in Italian either by a verb in the Indicative or in the Subjunctive Mood, according to the following rules —

752 "Se" is followed by a verb in the Present Indicative, if the condition refers to a future time, not far off Ex

Se mio zio viene dategli di If my uncle comes tell him to  
aspettarmi. wait for me.

Se fa bel tempo domani, andre- If it is fine to-morrow, we shall  
mo alla campagna go into the country

753 "Se" is followed by a verb in the Future, if the condition refers to a future time, far off. Ex.

Se mi pagheranno alla fine dell' If they pay me at the end of the  
anno, vi darò una guinea year, I will give you a guinea

754 "Se" is followed by a verb in the Imperfect Subjunctive, if the condition refers to the present time Ex.

Se avessi denaro comprerei If I had money I would buy this  
questo orologio watch.

Se io fossi in Lei non gli If I were you I would not write  
scriverei questa sera to him this evening

755. "Se" is followed by a verb in the Pluperfect Subjunctive, if the condition refers to a time past Ex

Se avessi conosciuto le sue in- Had I known his intentions, I  
tenzioni, non gli avrei parlato should not have spoken to him

756 But when "se" is *not a real Conditional Conjunction*, when it means, in fact, *whether, as, or when*, it requires after it the verb in the same mood and tense as the English conjunction *if* Ex

Essi non sanno se ritorneremo They do not know if (whether)  
qui, o no we shall return here, or not

Se aveva bisogno di me, era If (when) he needed my help,  
amabilissimo. he was very amiable.

757. A verb is used in the Subjunctive Mood after "quando," "ove," and "qualora," when these words are used instead of "se," meaning *in case that*. Ex.

Quando (or ove) le piaccia, an- If you like we will go to the  
dremo al teatro questa sera. theatre this evening

758. A verb is put in the Subjunctive Mood after "che" used instead of repeating "se." Ex

Se è ricca e che voglia aver If you are rich and wish to have  
amici, sia buona e generosa. friends, be good and generous

759 \* In poetry, by a turn of the phrase, "se," *if*, is often omitted. Ex.  
"Almeno Tito trovar potessi" (METASTASIO) *If, at least, I could find Titus*

## EXERCISE LXII.

Unless you invite (733) him yourself, he will not come. The elephant never attacks, unless he is provoked. I do not think he was working (724, 746) when I rang the bell. It was necessary (704) that two of our squadrons should advance (729), and force the enemy's line. Learn your lessons for to-morrow, lest your master punish (733) you. If Mr John comes (752) before dinner, tell him to wait for (251, 728) me, until I come back (736). I wish (718) you would (748) play this piece of music slowly and with expression †. He wishes (desiderare) that I should reflect (723) on that proposal. I wrote (707) to him by post, so that (730) he might learn the news in time. That man has given me a fearful blow with a stick †. If (754) I had some paper, I would write to him. Whatever he undertakes (730) to do, he does it diligently. Your father will pay all your debts, on condition that (730) you will execute his orders faithfully. I do not know where little William is (724). There are few men whose character is (741) better known (365) than his. It is the most interesting book I ever read (741). However ingenious the Greeks and Romans were (734), still they did not discover the art of printing books. It seems as if (che) nothing could (729, 746) save him. I find it § difficult to learn poetry by heart (imparare a mente).

760 ~ A *squadron* (of cavalry), is translated by "uno squadrone"

A *squadron* (of ships), is translated by "una squadra"

761 † "Adagio" is the technical expression for *slow and with expression*

Ad libitum=at the performer's pleasure	Decrescendo or Diminuendo=gradually softer
Affettuoso=with tenderness	
Allegro=quick, lively	Dolce=soft, dolcissimo=very soft
Allegretto=not so quick as Allegro	Forte=loud, fortissimo=very loud
Al segno=return to the sign	Gorgheggi=trills
Amoroso=softly, tenderly	Legato=smoothly
Andante=slow and distinct	Maeztoso=majestic
Andantino=not so slow as Andante	Moderato=moderately quick
Bis=twice	Piano=soft, pianissimo=very soft.
Calando=gradually slower and softer	Presto=quick, prestissimo=very quick.
Con brio=with spirit and brilliancy	Sostenuto=sustain the sound.
Crescendo=gradually louder	Volto subito=turn over quickly.
Da capo=repeat from the beginning	Vivace or Con vivacità=with vivacity

762 ‡ The suffix "ata" signifies a *blow from*, &c., hence "una bastonata," means a *blow from a stick*, "una boccata," a *mouthful*, or a *bite*, "un'occhiata," a *glance of the eye*

763 § The pronoun *it* is not translated into Italian in sentences like this

## LESSON XXXIII.

## ON THE FORM AND USE OF PASSIVE VERBS.

764. There are three ways of expressing the Passive Form of verbs, in Italian

765. The first way is to use the verb "Essere" as an auxiliary, followed by the Past Participle of any active transitive verb Ex

Egli è stimato da tutti	He is esteemed by everybody.
Ed io dico che gli Egiziani	And I say that the Egyptians
furono sconfitti dai Francesi	were defeated by the French
alla battaglia delle Piramidi	at the battle of the Pyramids.

766. A verb is rendered passive in the way indicated above only when one desires to lay a stress on the result of the action.

767. Many English sentences are best rendered into Italian by giving them an active turn, and this is done by changing the indirect object in the sentence into the subject, and the subject into the direct object Ex

Ognuno desidera le ricchezze.	Riches are desired by everybody.
La sua cattiva condotta mi	I was ruined by his bad conduct.
ruinò	
Gli fecero regalo di un anello	They presented him with a ring
I Francesi sconfissero gli Egiziani	The Egyptians were defeated by
alla battaglia delle Piramidi	the French at the battle of the Pyramids

768 The second way is by using the verb "Venire," instead of "Essere" as an auxiliary Ex.

Venni chiamato agli esami.	I was called to the examination.
Vennero dichiarati innocenti.	They were declared innocent
Sono sicuro che verrà eletto deputato	I am sure he will be elected a deputy

769 \* Notice that the verb "Venire" is used instead of "Essere" only in the simple tenses of passive verbs, for instance, it would be wrong to say, "Erano venuti dichiarati innocenti" *They had been declared innocent* The right form is "Erano stati dichiarati innocenti"

770. The verb "andare" is also used in some cases instead of "essere" in the passive forms of verbs Ex.

La cosa va fatta così	The thing is done in this way
Il vero merito va sempre congiunto alla modestia	True merit is always accompanied by modesty

771 The third way of forming a Passive Verb—the way most congenial to the Italian language—is to employ the word “*si*,”\* followed by a verb in the third person singular, or plural, according as the noun in the sentence is in the singular, or plural Ex.

<i>Si dice che la Regina partirà domani</i>	<i>It is said that the Queen will depart to-morrow.</i>
<i>Il buon vino si vende a caro prezzo in Inghilterra</i>	<i>Good wine is sold very dear in England</i>
<i>I libri si stampano a buon mercato in Germania</i>	<i>Books are printed cheaply in Germany</i>
<i>Vi si parlano tutte le lingue europee</i>	<i>All the European languages are spoken there</i>
<i>Se ne parla dappertutto</i>	<i>It is talked of everywhere</i>

772. The expressions, *I am asked, He is promised, They were ordered, &c*, are translated by ‘*Mi si dice,*’ or ‘*Mi si domanda,*’ “*Gli si promette,*” “*Si comandò loro,*’ &c Ex

<i>Mi si disse di parlare</i>	<i>I was told to speak</i>
<i>Si permise loro di uscire</i>	<i>They were allowed to go out.</i>

773 Sometimes, and more especially when the verb is in the reflective form, “*l'uomo,*” “*uno,*” “*alcuni,*” or “*la gente,*” is used, instead of “*si*,” before the verb Ex

<i>Uno si avvezza facilmente alla pigrizia</i>	<i>We easily accustom ourselves to idleness</i>
--	---

774. Whenever “*si*” would cause any ambiguity in the sense of the phrase, the passive verb must be formed with “*essere,*” or “*venire,*” as explained above Ex

<i>Gli uomini virtuosi sono ammirati (not si ammirano, which might mean they admire themselves)</i>	} <i>Wise men are admired.</i>

775 \* Notice that the word “*si*,” which translates the English words *one, they, we, people*, has all the appearance of *always* being an indefinite pronoun, the same as the French word “*on*,” but it is not so, the proof of this assertion is that the verb used with “*si*” must agree in number with the noun in the sentence. Nor is “*si*,” as it has often been wrongly stated, a mere reflective pronoun, for it would be a very weak way of expressing, to say, for instance, *It says itself that the Queen will start to-morrow* “*Si dice che la Regina, &c,*” “*I libri si stampano, &c,*” are really passive sentences, in which the word “*uomo*” (which does the action expressed by the verb) is understood, thus “*Si dice (dall' uomo) che la Regina partirà domani*” “*I libri si stampano (dall' uomo) a buon mercato in Germania*” This shows that verbs in the passive form are used nearly as often in Italian as in English

776 † In this case, when “*si*” is used with an indirect complement (see rule 196), it is an indefinite pronoun, like the French word “*on*”

## EXERCISE LXIII

He is greatly loved (765) by (270) his parents He has been long considered (714, 765) the best poet of the age They were ordered (772) to keep themselves ready, in case of a sudden attack The Austrians were defeated (767) by the Prussians at the battle of Sadowa We went (699, 704) wandering all night through the forest It is generally believed (771) that Rome was founded (723, 765) by Romulus, though there are no proofs in support of the tradition Is it true that your cousin John has married (727) a Spanish lady? I think so (271), they speak of it (771) everywhere in town I have heard\* the report of a gun I am requested (772) to tell you not to go away without leave They were allowed (772) to enter the church after Divine Service These pictures have been admired (765), but I am sure (636) they will not be sold (771). It is reported† that he will be made (769) Minister for Foreign Affairs I have heard it said‡ that lions can be trained (771) to perform like dogs I have not heard from§ my brother-in-law since the 15th (546) of January At country fairs|| one sees very curious people¶ It is said (771) that popular songs reveal (723) the character of a people They were advised (767) by the judge to confess their crime The barbarous sport of the bull fight was introduced (765) into Spain by the Arabs, amongst whom it was celebrated (771) with great pomp They were promised (772) two pounds each (659)

777 \* *To hear* is translated into Italian either by "Udire," or by "Sentire" Ex. Ho udito (or sentito) la voce di mio fratello I have heard my brother's voice

778 "Sentire" means also *to feel* Ex. "Non mi sento bene" I do not feel well

779 † *It is said that, it is reported that, people will have it that,* are elegantly translated into "corre la voce che," "corre fama che," "si vuole che"

780 ‡ *I have heard it said that,* is translated into "ho sentito dire che"

781 § *To hear from,* in the sense of *to receive news from,* is translated into "ricevere lettere da," "ricevere notizie da"

782 || *A fair,* meaning a market, is translated into Italian by "una fiera"

*A fair lady,* is translated by "una bella signora"

*A fair complexion,* is translated by "una carnagione bianca"

*A fair price,* is translated by "un prezzo giusto"

783 ¶ *The people,* meaning the inhabitants of a country, is translated by "il popolo." (21) *People,* meaning persons, is translated by "la gente" Ex.

"E che gent'è che par nel duol sì vinta?" (Dante).

*What folk is this which seems by pain so vanquished?*

## LESSON XXXIV.

ON "VOLERE," "DOVERE," "POTERE," AND  
"SAPERE"

784. When *do, did, will, shall, would, should, may, might, can,* and *let*, are employed as auxiliary verbs, they are *not* translated into Italian, but when they are used as distinct verbs of themselves, each of them has its corresponding Italian verb.

785 When *do* and *did* are not mere auxiliaries, they are translated by "Fare" Ex.

Ho fatto il mio lavoro                      I have done my work.

786. When *will, would, and shall* are not mere auxiliaries, they are translated by "Volere" or "Dovere," according as *will* or *duty* is to be expressed Ex.

Voglio parlargli io stesso	I will speak to him myself
Voleva sempre parlare.	He would always speak
Dovrà lavorare.	He shall (he will have to) work.

787. The expressions *will you have ? will he have ? &c*, meaning *do you wish ? do you like ? or do you choose to have ? &c*, are translated by the corresponding tenses of the verb "Volere" Ex.

Vuole un biglietto per il concerto di mia sorella ?	Would you like to have a ticket for my sister's concert ?
Quale vuole dei due ?	Which do you choose of the two ?

788. The expressions *will you have the kindness ? will you have the goodness ? will you do me the favour to ?* are translated into Italian by "Vuol' avere la bontà di," or "Vuol farmi il piacere di." Ex.

Vuol' avere la bontà di tradurmi questa lettera in italiano ?	Will you have the kindness to translate this letter into Italian for me ?
---	---

789 The expressions *I will have him, you would have me, I want him*, are translated into Italian by "Volere," followed by "che," and the verb in the Subjunctive Mood. Ex.

Voglio che stia a casa finchè sia guarito.	I will have him stay at home until he is quite well.
Vorrebbe che lavorassimo dalla mattina alla sera.	He would have us work from morning till night

An *o*, dotted thus *o*, has the broad sound of the *o* in the word *orphan*.

790 The verb *to have to* (*to be obliged to, to think it right to*), is translated into Italian by "Dovere." Ex.

Debbo essere al mio posto a I am to be at my post at noon.  
mezzogiorno.

791 The verbs *I ought, you ought, I ought to have, &c., I should, you should, I should have, &c.*, are also translated by the Conditional, or the Conditional Past, of "Dovere." Ex

Dovrei andare da mio cognato I ought to call on my brother-in-law

Dovrebbe scrivere a suo padre You ought to write to your father.  
Avrebbero dovuto pagarmi prima They ought to have paid me  
di lasciar Londra. before they left London

792 The verb *I must, you must, &c. (I am expected to, I am to, &c.)*, is also translated by "Dovere." Ex

Debbo parlare al presidente del I must speak to the chairman of  
comitato the committee

793. The verb "Dovere" is sometimes used to express *probability* that the action expressed by the chief verb in the sentence will happen (is expected) Ex.

Il mio viaggio deve durare My journey is to last five days  
cinque giorni

Si sapeva che doveva un giorno It was known that he was likely  
governare la Francia one day to govern France

794 When the verbs *can* and *could, may* and *might*, are not mere auxiliaries, they are translated by "Potere." Ex

Posso rendervi questo servizio I can render you this service

Potrei andare a Parigi I could go to Paris

Potete venir meco You may come with me.

Avreste potuto venir prima You might have come before  
d'ora now

795 When *can* and *could* are used in the sense of *to know how*, they are translated into Italian by "Sapere." Ex

Sa ella parlare francese? Can you speak French?

Sapeva disegnare, ma non sa- He could draw, but he could  
peva dipingere not paint.

Sapreste insegnarmi la via che Could you tell me the way to  
conduce al ponte di Londra? London Bridge?

796. When *to let* is a verb by itself it is translated by "Lasciare." Ex.

Lasciatemi andar fuori. Let me go out

\* Two *zz*, dotted thus *zz*, have the soft sound of the *zz* in the word *muzzle* (52, 53)-

## EXERCISE LXIV.

I would like (718, 786) to speak to you on (298) a matter of importance. They are to be (790) here this afternoon at three o'clock. I ought to (791) write to my mother. My essay must be (792) ready for the next issue of the magazine. Will you have (787) a steel pen, or a quill? I prefer a quill, if you have one (144). Will you be so good as (788) to tell me where you buy your gloves? With the greatest (520) pleasure, I buy them at Johnstone's (434). Our cousin Charles is expected (793) to visit us to-morrow, or the day after to-morrow. The Queen is expected (793) to leave London this week. We should (791) encourage the beautiful, (336) because the useful is sure to be sought after. They say (771) that the procession is (792) to pass through Piccadilly. It ought to have passed (791) through Oxford Street. Am I to do (792) all this work for nothing? No, you will be paid. She is to write (792) to him three times a (the) week. Will you go (305) with me, or not? I want you (789) to make up your mind. I am sorry, but I cannot, I have to be at my father's office before five o'clock (548). You should have told me (786) that last night, I could have asked Charles to come. Do not let (796) him bring those (594) flowers in your bedroom (431).

## LESSON XXXV

## ON THE NEGATION

797. The Italian negatives are "No," "Non," "Nè."

798. "No" has the same meaning in Italian as in English.

799. "Non" means *not*, and always precedes the verb. Ex.

Egli non parla bene. He does not speak well.

800 "Nè nè" mean *neither*. *nor*, and are used when there is no verb before *neither* *nor*. Ex.

Nè leggo, nè scrivo. I neither read nor write.

801 But when there is a verb before *neither* *nor*, they are translated by "Non nè nè" (See rule 667). Ex.

Non ha nè danaro nè amici. He has neither money nor friends.

802 "Non che," "non altro che," mean *nothing but*, *only*. Ex.

Paolo non fa che parlare. Paul does nothing but talk.

Non avevo che un cavallo. I had but one horse.

---

803 \* The expression to *make up one's mind* is translated into Italian by "prendere il suo partito" Ex.

Ha preso il suo partito. He has made up his mind.



804. "No, mai" and "non. mai" (in answer to a question), mean *never*. Ex.

L'ha mai veduto? No, mai. Have you ever seen him? Never  
Non l'ho mai veduto. I have never seen him.

805 The words "mica," "punto," "neppure," and "già," add strength to the negation "non." Ex

Non ho mica danaro I have no money at all  
Non credo punto quel che I do not believe a word that he  
dice. says

Non ho neppure un soldo. I have not even a half-penny  
Non crediate già ch'io voglia You must not think that I care  
sapere i vostri affari to know your affairs

806 The negation "non" is *always* required after the verbs "impedire," *to prevent*, "evitare," *to avoid*, "badare" (followed by a verb in the Subjunctive Mood), *mind lest*, "guardarsi di," *to beware of*. Ex.

La neve impedì che non venisse The snow prevented his coming  
Badì che il cane non le scappi Mind the dog does not escape  
you

Gli dica che si guardi di non Tell him to beware of believing  
credere la notizia the news

807. The negation "non" is *always* required after the compound conjunctions "a meno che," *unless*, "per paura che," "per tema che," *for fear that, lest*, and "che," used instead of "senza che" Ex

Verrà per certo, a meno che non He will certainly come unless  
sia partito. he has departed

Me ne vado per paura che non I go away for fear that he  
m'insulti should insult me

808 The verbs "temere" and "aver paura," *to fear, to apprehend*, require after them the negation "non" when they are used affirmatively, and *the realisation of the action expressed by the verbs they govern is feared* Ex

Temo che Carlo non venga I fear that Charles will come.

"E temo che non sia già sì smarrito" (Dante)

*And I fear that he is already so far bewildered*

809 \* Observe that "bada che," "badì che," and "badate che," followed by a verb in the Indicative Mood, means *notice that* Ex

Badate che non ha fatto il suo dovere Notice that he has not done his duty

810 † The use of the negation in all the cases mentioned in this lesson can be justified on the ground that the "non" does *not* negative the verb expressed, but a verb left out (because of the excited state of the mind under fear, &c.), whose meaning is the reverse of the meaning of the verb expressed. For instance, in the example cited above, "Temo che Carlo non venga," the full meaning of the sentence is "Temo che Carlo non rimanga dov'è, ma che venga," *I fear that Charles will not remain where he is, but that he will come*

811. The verbs "temere," and "aver paura," *to fear, to apprehend*, require "non mica" "non punto" when they are used affirmatively, and we fear the *non-realization* of the action expressed by the verbs they govern Ex

Temo ch'ei non venga mica I fear that he will not come

812. But when "temere," and "aver paura," are used negatively, they do not require the negative after them Ex

Non temo che vengano I do not fear they will come.

813. The negation "non" is also required after the noun "altro," *another thing*, the adjectives "migliore," *better*, "peggiore," *worse*, "più grande," *greater*, &c, and the adverbs "altrimenti," *otherwise*, "meglio," *better*, "peggio," *worse*, "meno," *less*, and "più," *more*, when the verb which precedes them is used affirmatively. Ex

Questo terreno è migliore ch'io This soil is better than I  
non lo credevo thought

Egli era più ricco che voi non He was richer than you are  
siete. now.

Parlano altrimenti che non They speak otherwise than they  
agiscono act

814. But when the verbs preceding the above-mentioned adjectives and adverbs are used negatively, no negative is required after them Ex

Non parlano altrimenti che They do not speak otherwise  
agiscono than they act.

815. Many authors put the negation "non" after the verbs "negare," *to deny*, and "dubitare," *to doubt*, when they are used negatively, or interrogatively with a negation. Ex.

Non nego che non sia un uomo I do not deny his being an able  
abile man

### EXERCISE LXV

Can (795) that boy write? No, he can neither (801) write nor read. My brother has (802) only one horse, but it is a good one. They could (794) not deny the accusation we brought against them. Mind (806) they do not come here, if (752) they do, I shall never come to see you again! I recognised him, although (740) I had never (804) seen him before. He can (802) only do mathematics (419). It was they who prevented us from writing (to write). Unless you speak to them, they will always prevent us coming. I apprehend (808) that he will succeed, I wish (748) he would not ‡. I do not deny (815) his being extremely clever, but he is too conceited. I am afraid (808) that Frederick will not succeed (258); I wish he would ‡. I have no fear (812) of her speaking.

816 \* It would be very difficult to justify the negation in such cases as this

817 † *Any more, never* (verb) *again*, are translated into "non (verb) più"

‡ Add *succed*

## LESSON XXXVI.

## ON THE PAST PARTICIPLE.

818. The Past Participle is a word which partakes of the nature of a verb and an adjective, it is conjugated either with "Avere,"\* or "Essere,"† used as auxiliaries. When a Participle is conjugated with "Avere," it is a verb, but when it is conjugated with "Essere," it may be regarded as an adjective.

819. The following rules are adhered to by most Italians at the present time.

## ON THE PARTICIPLE PRECEDED BY "AVERE"

820. The Past Participle of an Active Transitive verb (see rule 159) is conjugated with "Avere," and remains invariable, that is to say ends in *o*, when the Direct Object (see rule 195) in the sentence follows it ‡ Ex.

Abbiamo comprato tre libri      We have bought three books

821. But when the Direct Object precedes the Past Participle, the latter is variable. Ex.

Ecco qui i libri che ho com-      Here are the books I bought  
prati questa mattina      this morning

Li ho comprati a buon mercato      I bought them cheap

Le ho vedute ballare      I have seen them dancing

Ho scritto a mia madre, e l'ho      I have written to my mother,  
pregata di venir qui      and asked her to come here

822. The Past Participles "potuto," "creduto," "dovuto," and "desiderato," are often invariable because the Direct Object in the sentence, which ought to follow them, is left understood. Ex.

Gli ho reso tutti i servizi che      I did him all the services I was  
ho potuto (rendergli)      able to

823. \* All the Active Verbs—both Transitive and Intransitive (see rules 159 and 160)—and most Neuter verbs (see rule 274), are conjugated with "Avere."

824. † "Essere" is used to form the compound tenses—(a) of Passive Verbs (see rule 765)—(b) of eighteen Neuter Verbs, (see rule 275)—(c) of Reflective Verbs (see rule 280)

825. ‡ There are cases when the Past Participle, conjugated with "Avere," does not express an action, but expresses a quality of the Object in the sentence; when this is the case the Participle agrees with the noun it qualifies. Ex.

"Un altro, che forata avea la gola" (Dante)  
*Another one, who had his throat pierced through*

826 The Past Participle of Active Intransitive Verbs (see rule 160) always remains invariable Ex

Ci hanno parlato stamattina They spoke to us this morning.

827. The Past Participle of most Neuter Verbs is preceded by "Avere" (see rule 274), and remains invariable. Ex.

Abbiamo passeggiato tutta la We have been walking about  
mattina. all the morning.

828. With regard to the Impersonal Verbs, the Past Participle of those which, like "Piovere," can be conjugated either with "Essere" or "Avere" (see rule 283), always remains invariable. Ex

E or ha piovuto tutta la notte It rained all night

829 But the Past Participle of those Impersonal Verbs which are conjugated like "Bastare" (see rule 283), and have "Essere" for an auxiliary, is variable Ex.

I suoi libri gli sono bastati His books have been sufficient  
for him

## ON THE PARTICIPLE PRECEDED BY "ESSERE."

830 The Participle conjugated with "Essere" (or "Venire," (see rule 768) always agrees with the Subject in the sentence, whether it belongs to an active verb, used passively, or to one of the eighteen neuter verbs conjugated with "Essere," as explained in rule 275 Ex

Ella è stimata da tutti She is esteemed by everybody

Essi sono caduti nella rete They have fallen into the trap.

831 Notice that sometimes the auxiliary is not expressed, but understood, in that case the ellipsis must be supplied, and then the participle will be found to follow the rules given above Ex.

Oh! quante case (sono state) di- Oh! how many houses (have  
strutte! been) destroyed!

Le battaglie (che sono state) The battles (which have been)  
vinte dagl' Inglesi won by the English

832 Instead of "Quand' ebbi veduto," *when, or as soon as I had seen*, "Quand' ebbi sentito," *when, or as soon as he had heard*, "Quando fui arrivato," *when, or as soon as I had arrived*, "Quando fu scoperto," *when, or as soon as he was discovered*, &c., the more elegant expressions "Veduto che ebbe," "Sentito che ebbe," "Arrivato che fu," "Scoperto che furono," &c., are used Ex.

Veduto che ebbi il palazzo, mi As soon as I saw the palace,  
venne l'idea di comprarlo. I had the idea of buying it.

\* See rule 63, to understand the meaning of the letters in the darker type

833 In the following cases, and in scores of a similar nature, the Past Participle in Italian is illogically inflected for the sake of euphony —

Egli ci ha mandati a cercare.	He sent for us.
Questi quadri mi vanno a genio, li ho veduti dipingere	I like these pictures very much; I saw them being painted
Figliuoli, vi siete dimenticate le mie parole.	Children, you have forgotten my words
Non mi date più fragole, ne ho mangiate abbastanza	Do not give me any more straw- berries, I have eaten enough

## EXERCISE LXVI

Have you finished (820) the letter (636) I gave you to (310) write? The heavy rains, which we had (704) in the spring, have been the cause of many diseases We have not slept (714, 827) for the last forty-eight hours The painter Caracci having been plundered by some robbers, drew their likenesses so well that they were discovered (704, 830) The hostile army being routed (689), their camp plundered, their baggage carried away, their ammunition taken, the French re-entered triumphant A noble but confused thought is a diamond covered with (831, 348) dust The high mountains of (330) Switzerland are always covered with snow and ice King Harold and his two brothers were killed (704, 830) at the battle of Hastings Demetrius, on hearing that the Athenians had overturned (833) his statues, remarked, "They have not overturned the virtues which erected (821) them to me." (218). Look, I have bought this box (680) to put my clothes in (198, 238), do you think it is large enough? Yes, I think so (271) As soon as he had received (832) his money, he started for America Before (730) men possessed the art of writing, all deeds worthy of being preserved were transmitted (701, 769, 830) to posterity in verse (verses)

\* "Mandati" should be "mandato," because "ci," is governed by "cercare," and not by "mandati," but "mandato," near to "ci," would sound inharmonious

† "Veduti" should be "veduto," because "li," is governed by "dipingere," and not by "veduti;" but "veduto," near to "li," would sound inharmonious

‡ "Dimenticate" should be "dimenticato" because "le mie parole" is the direct object of "dimenticato," but "dimenticato" would make the sentence sound inharmonious

§ "Mangiate" should be "mangito," because this participle is not preceded by a direct object, but "mangiato" would make the sentence sound inharmonious

834 ¶ In English when there are two or more verbs, in the same sentence, denoting actions done by the same subject, the verb expressing the action which was done first, is often employed in the Present Participle, but in Italian it must be used in the compound of the Gerund (as explained in rule 689) thus "Demetrio, udito che gli Ateniesi avevano," &c

## LESSON XXXVII.

## ON THE VERB "AVERE," USED IDIOMATICALLY.

835 "Avere" is used idiomatically to translate the English expressions, *What is the matter with you?* *What is the matter with him?* &c Ex.

Non so che cosa **abbiano** questi I do not know what is the matter  
fanciulli, **sembrano** molto with these children; they  
addolorati. seem very grieved.

836 "Avere," followed by a noun, is used in Italian in the following idiomatical expressions, instead of the verb *to be*, followed by an adjective, as in English —

- |   |  |
|---|--|
| (a) Aver caldo, <i>to be warm</i>           | (g) Aver torto, <i>to be in the wrong.</i> |
| (b) Aver freddo, <i>to be cold</i>          | (h) Aver paura, <i>to be afraid.</i>       |
| (c) Aver fame, <i>to be hungry</i>          | (i) Aver fretta, <i>to be in a hurry.</i>  |
| (d) Aver sete, <i>to be thirsty</i>         | (j) Aver piacere, caro, <i>to be glad.</i> |
| (e) Aver sonno, <i>to be sleepy.</i>        | (k) Aver cura di, <i>to be careful of.</i> |
| (f) Aver ragione, <i>to be in the right</i> | (l) Aver giudizio, <i>to act sensibly.</i> |

## EXERCISE LXVII.

Are you (122) warm, (a) Charles? Yes I thank you, when I came in I was very cold (b) When these men came in (705) they were (695) very hungry (c) and thirsty (d) The children are very sleepy (e). Do you think (691) that Margaret is in the right (f) (724)? Yes, and that you are in the wrong (g) I never thought (691) that you would be so wicked as to offend her. These little children (442) are afraid (h) of that big dog (437) Do (126, 128) not detain me, because I am in a hurry (i). I am very glad (j) to hear that your brother is going to Florence. Shut that window, I feel very cold (b) Those who (630) think they are always in the right (f) are often wrong. They were very happy (j) to be again with us I think you should be (791) more careful of (k) your health. If (754) he would act sensibly, (l) he would be liked by (270) everybody If he were wise, (l) he would be rich.

837 \* The expressions *to be so good as*, *to be so wicked as*, &c, are translated into Italian by "essere abbastanza buono per," "essere abbastanza cattivo per"

## ON THE VERB "AVERE" USED IDIOMATICALLY.

838. "AVERE" IS USED IDIOMATICALLY IN THE FOLLOWING EXPRESSIONS —

- |  |  |
|--|--|
| (a) Aver buona cera, <i>to look well.</i>  | (k) Aver un bel dire, un bel fare,           |
| (b) Aver cattiva cera, <i>to look ill.</i> | &c., <i>to speak in vain, to act in</i>      |
| (c) Aver male a, <i>to feel a pain in.</i> | <i>vain, &amp;c.</i>                         |
| (d) Avere a mano, <i>or in pronto,</i>     | (l) Aver voce in capitolo, <i>to have</i>    |
| <i>to have a thing ready</i>               | <i>much influence</i>                        |
| (e) Aver bisogno di, <i>to need</i>        | (m) Aver il capo ai grilli, <i>to be out</i> |
| (f) Aver l'intenzione di, <i>to intend</i> | <i>of temper</i>                             |
| (g) Aver voglia di, <i>to have a wish.</i> | (n) Aver della ruggine con, <i>to</i>        |
| (h) Aver vaghezza di, <i>to have a</i>     | <i>bear a grudge to</i>                      |
| <i>great desire to</i>                     | (o) Averla con, <i>to be angry with</i>      |
| (i) Aver di mira, <i>to aim at</i>         | (p) Aversela a† male, <i>to take of-</i>     |
| (j) Aver luogo, <i>to take place.</i>      | <i>fence</i>                                 |

## EXERCISE LXVIII

Your brother looked very well (a) when I saw him a few days ago. You do not look well (b), what (611) is the matter with you (835)? I feel a pain in (c) my head, and in my right arm. She has the money ready (d) to pay him if (752) he comes. I intend (f) to buy a copy of Tennyson's poems for you (213). He has a wish (g) to eat some French strawberries. She had a great desire to (h) see the Tower of London. They aim at (i) making money. Now I will tell you what took place (j) at my brother's house (434). He may say what he likes (k), he may do what he likes (k), he will not succeed (258). Do not pay attention to (216) what (610) he says, he has no influence (l). Your brother Louis is always out of temper (m). I am afraid (808) he bears you a grudge (n), I do not know why. He is angry with (o) me because I sold (707) the horse without telling him anything. Charles is easily offended (p). It is true that† I intend (f) to go to Florence and remain there (239) for (311) five or six months, but I cannot make up my mind (803) thus in a moment §

839 \* "Averla con" is conjugated as † "Aversela a male" is conjugated as follows —

L'ho con, <i>I am angry with</i>	Me l'ho a male, <i>I am offended</i>
L'hai con, <i>thou art angry with</i>	Te l'hai a male, <i>thou art offended</i>
L'ha con, <i>he is angry with</i>	Se l'ha a male, <i>he is offended</i>

840 † The expression *It is true that* is rendered in Italian by putting "ben" or "bensì" after the first verb in the sentence. Ex

Ho ben l'intenzione di viaggiare ma. It is true that I intend to travel, but not now

841 § The expressions *in a moment, on the spur of the moment*, are rendered in Italian by "su due piedi," or "in quel subito"

## ON THE VERB "ESSERE" USED IDIOMATICALLY.

842 "ESSERE" IS USED IDIOMATICALLY IN THE FOLLOWING EXPRESSIONS —

- |  |  |
|--|--|
| (a) Essere necessario di, essere d'uopo di, essere mestieri di, esser forza di, <i>to be necessary, or I, you, one, we, they must, or I have to, &amp;c.</i> | (h) Essere un poco di buono, <i>to be a good for nothing.</i>  |
| (b) Essere prezzo dell'opera, <i>to be worth while</i>   | (i) Essere da poco, <i>to be worth little</i>  |
| (c) Essere in grado di, <i>to have it in one's power.</i>  | (j) Essere da più di, <i>to be worth more than</i>   |
| (d) Esser pago, or soddisfatto di, <i>to be satisfied with</i>   | (k) Essere a mal termine, <i>to be in a critical position.</i>   |
| (e) Essere all'ordine, or pronto, <i>to be ready</i>   | (l) Essere sul punto di, essere in procinto di, essere per, esserc lì per, <i>to be on the point of.</i> |
| (f) Essere in ritardo. <i>to be late.</i>  | (m) Essere in buon concetto, <i>to bear a good character.</i>  |
| (g) Essere d'accordo, <i>to agree</i>  | (n) Essere vago di, <i>to desire.</i>  |

## EXERCISE LXIX

It is necessary (a) to make all (482) preparations for the Prince of Wales, who will arrive at two o'clock, with the Princess of Wales and the Prince of Naples. I must (a) make a speech on behalf of our College. It is worth while (b) to go to (make) some expense on (650) such an occasion. They have it in their power (c) to do a great deal of good to the institution. I hope our director will be satisfied with (d) our endeavours. I am sure he will (208). Well, boys, are you ready (e)? Yes, we are quite ready, except Mary, she is always late (f). Those two boys never agree (g). To (225) say the truth, that little fellow there, is a good for nothing (h). When I caught hold of him, he was (695) on the point of (l) throwing a stone at my window. Does that man (606) bear a good character? (m). No, he does not (208). I should be very glad (n) to know who that lady is. I have had (dovere)† to grant him all (610) he asked me. I have had (dovere)‡ to come alone. He has not been able (potere)† to sleep. He has not been able (potere)‡ to succeed. They would (volere)† (707) not walk. They would (volere)! (707) not live in (with) dishonour.

\* Rule 287 holds good with these verbs

843 † When the verbs "dovere," "potere," and "volere" are followed by verbs, which, in their compound tenses, are conjugated with "avere," they ("dovere," "potere," and "volere") are also conjugated with "avere."

844 ‡ When the verbs "dovere," "potere," and "volere" are followed by verbs, which, in their compound tenses are conjugated with "essere," they ("dovere," "potere," and "volere") are conjugated with "essere."



## ON THE VERB "ANDARE," USED IDIOMATICALLY

845. "Andare" is used Idiomatically in the following expressions.—

- |   |  |
|---|--|
| (a) Andare a genio a, <i>to like.</i>                             | (j) Andar di male in peggio, <i>to get worse and worse</i> |
| (b) Andare a piede, <i>to go on foot</i>                          | (k) Andare a vuoto, <i>to fail.</i>                        |
| (c) Andare in carrozza, <i>or in legno, to ride in a carriage</i> | (l) Andare a fondo, <i>to sink</i>                         |
| (d) Andare a cavallo, <i>to ride</i>                              | (m) Andar dietro a, <i>to follow</i>                       |
| (e) Andare in collera, <i>to get into a passion</i>               | (n) Andar per la mente, <i>to be in one's mind.</i>        |
| (f) Andare in estasi, <i>to fall into ecstasies.</i>              | (o) Andare alle corte, <i>to come to a decision</i>        |
| (g) Andare altiero di, <i>to be proud of</i>                      | (p) Andare alla lunga, <i>to go on slowly</i>              |
| (h) Andare a vele gonfie, <i>to prosper per</i>                   | (q) Andar di mezzo, <i>to suffer from</i>                  |
| (i) Andar di bene in meglio, <i>to get better and better.</i>     | (r) Andarsene,* <i>to go away</i>                          |
|   | (s) Andare a prova, a gara, <i>to vie.</i>                 |

## EXERCISE LXX

I do not like (a) to go on foot (b) My sisters are very fond of riding in a carriage (c), they very seldom walk (b) Elizabeth rides (d) every morning to the top† of the hill with her brother Why do you get into a passion (e) for nothing? The sound of this instrument is so (536) melodious that it makes me fall into ecstasies (f) He is very proud of (g) his (560) riches, and she is very proud of her beauty His affairs are very prosperous (h) His business is getting better and better (i) Their condition is getting worse and worse (j) The scheme has failed (k), I am afraid (808) he is ruined. I do not think so (271) The ship sank (l) near the harbour, at three o'clock p.m. (548) His dog followed him (m) (697) wherever he went Some of his verses are really beautiful, they are always in my mind (n) Let us come to a decision (o) at once, I am tired of arguing (683) He was so slow (p) in making up his mind (803) that I lost my patience. I do not want to suffer from it (q) (240) I am going (r) now, goodbye

846 \* "Andarsene" is conjugated thus "me ne vo," "te ne vai," "se ne va," &c

847 † Top (of a mountain, hill) is translated by "sommità," "sommò" Top (of a house, wall), "comignolo," "vetta" Top (of a tree), "cima" Top (of a table), "coperchio" A top, "un palco"

## ON THE VERB "DARE," USED IDIOMATICALLY.

848 "Dare" is used idiomatically in the following expressions —

- |  |   |
|--|---|
| (a) Dare ad intendere a, to make believe                                       | (k) Dar conto di, to account for                          |
| (b) Dar fede a, to believe   | (l) Dar nel rosso, to border on red.                      |
| (c) Dar retta a, to mind, to listen  | (m) Dar del furfante a, to call one a rascal              |
| (d) Dar del (or di) tu a, to address one in the second person singular         | (n) Dare sfogo a, to give vent to                         |
| (e) Dar del (or di) voi a, to address one in the second person plural          | (o) Dar d'occhio a, to look at.                           |
| (f) Dar del (or di) lei a, to address one in the third per. sing. (fem.)       | (p) Dare udienza a, to receive.                           |
| (g) Dar parola a, to promise   | (q) Dar di piglio a, to seize.                            |
| (h) Dar fuoco a, to set fire to  | (r) Dar ragione a, to agree that someone is in the right. |
| (i) Dai mano a, to begin   | (s) Dar torto a, to say that someone is in the wrong.     |
| (j) Dar una mano a, to give some help, to give a coat of (paint, varnish, &c.) | (t) Dar lo sfratto a, to expel.                           |
|  | (u) Dar volta, to turn back                               |
|  | (v) Dar carico a, to accuse                               |
|  | (w) Dar bene (a pen), to write well.                      |

## EXERCISE LXXXI

He would make me believe (a) that he was rich I never believe (b) flatterers He does (784) not repent of (184) having listened to (c) his bad companions He always addresses everybody in the second person singular (d) Italian ladies and gentlemen address their inferiors in the second person plural (e) I always address him in the third person singular (f), respectfully. He gave me his word (g) that he would be here again in a week (549). It is said (771) that he set fire to (h) his house Why do you not begin (i) your poem? You had better help me a little (j). They were obliged to account for (k) their (560) conduct This cloth borders on red (l) I wish I could† give vent to (n) my feelings. They looked at me (o) two or three times The President received him (p) this morning He seized (q) a stick, and began to strike me He agrees that you are in the right (r). This pen writes well (w)

849 \* The verb "Dare," used impersonally, with the pronoun "si," means to be probable. Ex.

Può darsi che non vengano

It is probable that they will not come

850 † The expressions I wish I could speak, I wish I could have written, &c., are translated into Italian by "Vorrei poter parlare," "Vorrei aver potuto scrivere, &c."

## ON THE VERB "DARE," USED IDIOMATICALLY

851 "Dare" is used Idiomatically in the following expressions —

- |  |   |
|--|---|
| (a) Dare alla luce, <i>to publish.</i>                         | (k) Dar di naso da per tutto, <i>to meddle with everything.</i>               |
| (b) Dar nella rete, <i>to fall into a snare</i>                | (l) Darsi la mano <i>to wed</i>   |
| (c) Dar l'animo a di, <i>to be bold enough to.</i>             | (m) Darsi vanto di, <i>to boast</i>   |
| (d) Dar luogo a, <i>to give rise to</i>                        | (n) Darsi allo studio, <i>to apply one's self to study</i>                    |
| (e) Dar la burla, <i>or la bala, to make fun of</i>            | (o) Darsi bel tempo, <i>or Darsi al dolce far niente, to live in idleness</i> |
| (f) Dar la colpa a, <i>to throw the blame on</i>               | (p) Darsi a conoscere per, <i>to make one's-self known as</i>                 |
| (g) Dare in ismanie, <i>to show a great deal of irritation</i> | (q) Darsi briga di, <i>to meddle with.</i>                                    |
| (h) Dare in uno scoppio di risa, <i>to burst out laughing</i>  | (r) Darsi pensiero di, <i>to worry one's-self about</i>                       |
| (i) Dare in uno scoppio di lagrime, <i>to burst out crying</i> | (s) Darsi pace, <i>to be contented</i>  |
| (j) Dare in prestito a, <i>to lend.</i>                        | (t) Darsela a gambe, <i>to run away.</i>                                      |
|  | (u) Poter darsi, <i>to be possible.</i>                                       |

## EXERCISE LXXII

He has published (a) a good translation of Molière's Comedies. He fell (704) into the snare (b) like an idiot I am bold enough (c) to send him a challenge His election gave rise to (d) (704) a very warin discussion They are making fun of you (e) Mary always throws the blame on (f) her sister When we accused him, he showed a great deal of irritation (g) When I told him the news, he burst out laughing (h) I advise you not to lend her (j) your parasol That busybody meddles with everything (k) They are leading a life of idleness (o) He would not make himself known as (p) the author of the comedy I wish that she would not (723) meddle with (q) my affairs My dear friend, do not worry yourself about (r) trifles, be contented (s) The thief ran away (t) directly. It is possible (u) that Frederick and his friends will arrive (Pres Subj.) this afternoon.

852. \* The verb "Darsela a gambe" is conjugated as follows —

Me la do a gambe, <i>I run away</i>	Ce la diamo a gambe, <i>we run away.</i>
Te la dai a gambe, <i>thou runnest away.</i>	Ve la date a gambe, <i>you run away</i>
Se la dà a gambe, <i>he runs away</i>	Se la danno a gambe, <i>they run away.</i>

## ON THE VERB "FARE," USED IDIOMATICALLY.

853. "Fare" is used Idiomatically in the following expressions --

- |   |  |
|---|--|
| (a) Farbeltempo, <i>to be fine weather</i>      | (m) Far mestieri di, or far d'uopo di, <i>to be necessary.</i> |
| (b) Far cattivo tempo, <i>to be bad weather</i> | (n) Far vela, <i>to set sail.</i>                              |
| (c) Far freddo, <i>to be cold.</i>              | (o) Far naufragio, <i>to be shipwrecked</i>                    |
| (d) Far caldo, <i>to be warm</i>                | (p) Far vista, or mostra di, <i>to pretend.</i>                |
| (e) Far umido, <i>to be damp</i>                | (q) Far piacere a, <i>to please.</i>                           |
| (f) Far colazione, <i>to breakfast</i>          | (r) Far le veci di, } <i>to act as.</i>                        |
| (g) Far merenda, <i>to have luncheon</i>        | (s) Far le parti di, }   |
| (h) Far animo, <i>to encourage.</i>             | (t) Far da,  |
| (i) Far pompa di, <i>to boast</i>               | (u) Far brindisi a, <i>to drink the health of</i>              |
| (j) Far ala a, <i>to make room for</i>          | (v) Far il dottore, <i>to lay down the law</i>                 |
| (k) Far alto, <i>to halt</i>                    |  |
| (l) Fare il grugno a, <i>to sulk</i>            |  |

## EXERCISE LXXIII

It was fine weather (a) (704) during the whole month we remained at Brighton. The weather is very bad (b) just now, we cannot go out. Sometimes it is very cold (c) in (207) Paris, I assure you. In summer it is very warm (d) in Italy, perhaps too warm. In the western part of Iceland the weather is very damp (e). At home we breakfast (f) at seven o'clock (548) in (328) summer, and eight o'clock in winter. We shall have luncheon (g) before we go out. I encouraged him (h) by promising (686) that I would take him with me. He was always boasting (i) (701) of his ancestors. The crowd made room for (j) her. They halted (k) during the night. He is sulking (l) with me, because I would not lend him my horse. The ship set sail (n) for America three days ago, she had three hundred passengers on board. They were shipwrecked (o) off the coast of Cornwall. He pretended (p) to give the money to his father, but instead of that, he put it in his pocket (572). He played another tune to please (q) the officers of the staff. On (298) that occasion he acted as (r) chaplain. He acted as (s) a father to her. They drank the chairman's health (u). He is always laying down the law (v).

854 \* *Staff* (military), is translated by "Stato Maggiore" *Staff* (of a newspaper), "redazione" *Staff* (stick), "bastone" *Pilgrim's staff*, "bordone"

## ON THE VERB "FARE," USED IDIOMATICALLY

855. "Fare" is used Idiomatically in the following expressions —

- |   |   |
|---|---|
| (a) Fare i conti di, <i>to intend</i>                       | (n) Farsi fare, <i>to have made for one's-self</i>              |
| (b) Fare una visita, <i>to pay a visit</i>                  | (o) Farsi animo, <i>to take courage</i>                         |
| (c) Fare una passeggiata, <i>to take a walk</i>             | (p) Farsi nuovo di, <i>to pretend to be ignorant of</i>         |
| (d) Fare un bagno, <i>to take a bath</i>                    | (q) Farsi beffe di, <i>to ridicule</i>                          |
| (e) Far l'orecchio del mercante, <i>to turn a deaf ear</i>  | (r) Farsi innanzi, <i>to put one's-self forward</i>             |
| (f) Far vedere a, <i>to show</i>                            | (s) Farsi in qua, <i>to draw near</i>                           |
| (g) Far male a, <i>to hurt</i>                              | (t) Farsi in là, or indietro, <i>to draw back</i>               |
| (h) Fare attenzione, <i>to pay attention.</i>               | (u) Far tanto di cappello a, <i>to bow most respectfully to</i> |
| (i) Far parola di, <i>to mention</i>                        | (v) Sul far del giorno, <i>at the break of day</i>              |
| (j) Far prova di coraggio, <i>to give proofs of courage</i> | (w) Sul far della notte, <i>at sunset.</i>                      |
| (k) Far capolino, <i>to peep in</i>                         |   |
| (l) Far fare, <i>to have made</i>                           |   |
| (m) Far risaltare, <i>to fetch out</i>                      |   |

## EXERCISE LXXIV

I intend (a) to pay him a visit (b) We shall take a walk (c) this evening after tea I take a bath (d) every morning before breakfast I asked him to lend me his gun, but he turned a deaf ear (e) I want to show him (f) that I am not easily frightened Do not (126) hurt him (g) with that big stick You never pay attention (h) to what I tell you Remember that you have promised me not to mention it (i) to my brother He gave proofs of great courage (j) in the last war We were busy preparing the exhibition when my father peeped in (k). I have had two tables made (l) for the garden He had a letter written (l) to me by his secretary This dark tint fetches out (m) the colours of the flowers Take courage, (o) my dear friend He pretended to be ignorant of (p) all that (610) had happened They ridicule (q) everybody You should not be afraid, you should put yourself forward (r) If you draw near (s), you will see the effect Draw back (t) a little, I cannot see the game. When they meet, they bow to one another most respectfully (u) He always gets up to work (225) at the break of day (v), and comes home at sunset (w).

## ON THE VERB "FARE" USED IDIOMATICALLY.

857. "FARE" IS USED IDIOMATICALLY IN THE FOLLOWING EXPRESSIONS —

- |   |  |
|---|--|
| (a) Far caso di, <i>to value</i>  | (j) Far rigar dritto, far stare a segno, <i>to take down a peg or two.</i> |
| (b) Far specie a, <i>to be astonished</i>                                     | (k) Fare il sarto, <i>to be a tailor.</i>                                  |
| (c) Far meno di, far a meno di, <i>to help it, or to do without</i>           | (l) Far crocchio, <i>to form groups</i>                                    |
| (d) Far senno, <i>to become serious</i>                                       | (m) Far festa a, <i>to greet.</i>  |
| (e) Fare spalla, <i>to back.</i>  | (n) Farsi mallevadore, <i>to stand guaranty</i>                            |
| (f) Fare una domanda, <i>to ask a question</i>                                | (o) Non fa niente, <i>never mind.</i>                                      |
| (g) Far l'indiano, <i>to look as if butter would not melt in one's mouth.</i> | (p) Come si fa? <i>what will you do?</i>                                   |
| (h) Fare il bell'umore, fare il gallo, <i>to be impertinent</i>               | (q) È un uomo così fatto, <i>that is his character.</i>                    |
| (i) Fare il bravo, <i>to brag</i>   | (r) C'è un bel da fare, <i>there is plenty to do.</i>                      |

## EXERCISE LXXV

He does not value (a) your friendship, so much the worse for him. I was astonished (b) to see him dressed in mufti. I could not help it (c). He promised to become serious (d), and I backed him (e) with all my means. I asked his parents (655) some questions (f). When I caught the pickpocket, at first he looked as if butter would not melt in his mouth (g), and then he began to be impertinent (h). The policeman told him that it was useless to brag (i), and that he would take him down a peg or two (j). What do these men do? This one is a tailor (k) and that one a carpenter. The procession broke up (704) and the people began to form groups (l). They greeted us (m) warmly. He has promised my father to stand guaranty (m) for me. Never mind (o), he will be compelled to speak. What will you do (p)? I know him, that is his character (q). There is plenty to do (r), the members of the Commission are coming here to dine. This time the secretary will have something to do for his salary †

858 \* The expressions *so much the better, so much the worse*, are translated into Italian by "tanto meglio," "tanto peggio."

859 † *The salary of a secretary* is translated by "lo stipendio di un segretario"  
*The wages of a servant* "il salario di un servo"  
*The wages of a workman* "la paga di un operaio"

## ON THE VERB "STARE" USED IDIOMATICALLY.

860. "Stare" is used idiomatically in the following expressions —

- |   |   |
|---|---|
| (a) Stare (disalute), <i>to be (in health)</i>      | (k) Star in forse, or Star tra il sì e il no, <i>to hesitate.</i> |
| (b) Stare di casa, <i>to reside.</i>                | (l) Star quieto, fermo, <i>to be quiet.</i>                       |
| (c) Stare a sedere, <i>to be seated.</i>            | (m) Star allegro, <i>to be merry</i>                              |
| (d) Stare in piedi, <i>to stand.</i>                | (n) Stare zitto, cheto, <i>to be silent</i>                       |
| (e) Stare a sentire, <i>to listen.</i>              | (o) Sta a me di, <i>it is my turn.</i>                            |
| (f) Stare all'erta, <i>to be on one's guard</i>     | (p) Stare a galla, <i>to float.</i>                               |
| (g) Stare in orecchi, <i>to prick up one's ears</i> | (q) Star con le mani a cintola, <i>to stand idle</i>              |
| (h) Star per, <i>to be on the point of</i>          | (r) Star fresco, <i>to be in a pickle</i>                         |
| (i) Star in agguato, <i>to lie in wait</i>          | (s) Non istar bene, <i>to be wrong</i>                            |
| (j) Star sull'avviso, <i>to be prepared</i>         |   |

## EXERCISE LXXVI

How are (a) you to-day? I am very well, I thank you. Do you reside (b) in this neighbourhood? No, I am staying† with my sister. The ladies were allowed to sit down (c), but the gentlemen had (790) to stand (d) all the time. When you came in I was listening (e) to (698) a very interesting conversation. Be on your guard (f), for he might (794) escape. I saw that the stranger was pricking up his ears (g) when you were speaking to my partner. Lions and tigers lie in wait (i) for their prey near streams and brooks. He wanted to (786, 307) surprise us, but we were prepared (j). I hesitated (k) whether I was to go (756) to Paris. Be quiet (l), John. Let us be merry, (m) children, to-day it is little Charlie's (448) birthday. His being (683) silent (n) gave great advantage to his enemies. Now it is his turn (o) to speak. Light substances float (q) on water. Write this exercise, instead of standing idle (q). Elizabeth, we have missed our train, we are in a pickle (r) now. It is wrong (s) to gamble.

861 \* The expressions "tocca a me di," "a voi di," &c, are frequently used instead of "sta a me di," &c, but "tocca a me di," &c, has more force, it often means *it is my duty, it is my right*.

862 † The Italian for *to stay with*, is "essere in visita da"

863 ‡ In speaking of dresses, "Star bene" means *to suit, to become*, and "Star male," *to be unsuitable, to be unbecoming*.  
 Cotest abito non le sta bene      That coat does not suit you

IDIOMS FORMED WITH "SAPERE," "TENERE,"  
"VOLERE," AND "VENIRE."

864. IDIOMS WITH "SAPERE"

- |  |   |
|--|---|
| (a) Sapere a mente, <i>or</i> a memoria, <i>to know by heart</i> | (e) Saper di poco, <i>to have little taste, or smell.</i>   |
| (b) Saper male, <i>to be sorry for.</i>                          | (f) Saper di niente, <i>to have not any taste, or smell</i> |
| (c) Saper di buono, <i>to have a good taste, or smell</i>        | (g) Saper di muschio, <i>to smell of musk</i>               |
| (d) Saper di cattivo, <i>to have a bad taste, or smell</i>       | (h) Saper di pesce, <i>to smell of fish.</i>                |

865 IDIOMS WITH "TENERE,"

- |   |   |
|---|---|
| (i) Tenere a bada, <i>to trifle with</i>                      | (l) Tener le lagrime, <i>or</i> le risa, <i>to keep from weeping, or laughing</i> |
| (j) Tenere a battesimo, <i>to be god-father, or godmother</i> | (m) Tener uno per galantuomo, <i>to believe one an honest man</i>                 |
| (k) Tenere da uno, <i>to side with one.</i>                   |   |

866 IDIOMS WITH "VOLERE"

- |  |                                |
|--|--------------------------------|
| (n) Voler bene a, <i>to be fond of</i> | (o) Voler dire, <i>to mean</i> |
|--|--------------------------------|

867. IDIOMS WITH "VENIRE."

- |   |   |
|---|---|
| (p) Venir meno, <i>to faint</i>           | (r) Venir voglia a, <i>to take a fancy.</i> |
| (q) Venire in mente a, <i>to remember</i> | (s) Venir fatto a, <i>to succeed.</i>       |

EXERCISE LXXVII

My brother knows by heart (a) many Italian sonnets I am sorry (b) to see you afflicted, I hope that you have not received any bad news These apples have a good smell (c) I am sure that he is trifling with (i) you She has been godmother (j) to all my children I side with (k) you because you are in the right (836, f) Camellias are very beautiful flowers, but they have not any smell (l) All her clothes smell of musk (g) We could not help weeping (l) I always believed (707) him to be (m) an honest man William is very fond of (n) your cousin Elizabeth If I had known what he meant (o), I should have spoken to him. When she heard the news, she fainted (p) in her mother's arms I remember (q) that I promised to meet her at my mother's house, at three o'clock this afternoon I took a fancy (r) to go and (340) see the exhibition (856) He succeeded (s) (693) in obtaining the post.

\* 868 \* The expressions *I hope that, we hope that, &c.*, when referring to a present or past time, are translated by "Amo credere che," "ci piace credere che," &c. (followed by the verb in the Subjunctive) To hope for a thing *that is, or has been, is* illogical



## LESSON XXXVIII.

## ADVERBS.

869. The rules for the formation of adverbs from adjectives, and the mode of forming the degrees of comparison are given in pages 122, and following

870. Adverbs are divided into classes according to their signification

## 871. THE PRINCIPAL ADVERBS OF AFFIRMATION.

Sì,	yes.	Già,	} exactly so.
Certo,	certainly.	Appunto,	
Sicuramente,	surely	Per l'appunto,	} really
Indubitatamente,	} undoubtedly.	Infatti,	
Senza dubbio,		Davvero,	} be it so.
Senz' altro,		Sia così,	

872 In giving an answer containing the verbs "credere," "sperare," "dubitare," and "temere," the idioms "di sì," and "di no," are used instead of "sì" and "no." Ex.

"In casa mio zio? Credo di sì. Is my uncle at home? I think so.

## 873 THE PRINCIPAL ADVERBS OF NEGATION.

No,	no	Niente affatto,	} by no means.
Non (verb),	not, no	In nessun modo,	
Non (verb) mica,	} not at all	Non (verb) mai,	} never
Non (verb) punto,		Non (verb) giammai,	

874 The negation *not* is translated into Italian by "non," and is always placed before the verb. Ex.

Non vi ho chiamato, Enrico. I did not call you, Henry.

## 875 THE PRINCIPAL ADVERBS OF ORDER

Prima,	} first.	Dopo,	after
In prima,		Poi,† poscia,	then
Dapprima,		Indi, quindi,	next
Primieramente,	} to begin with.	Gradualmente,	gradually.
Secondariamente,		Successivamente,	successively.
In terzo luogo,	in the third place.	Finalmente,	finally.

876. † "Poi," also means *besides* Ex. "Aveva poi un modo di vestire tutto suo." *Besides, he had a very peculiar way of dressing himself*

## 877 THE PRINCIPAL ADVERBS OF PLACE.

Qui, qua, ci,	here.	In su,	upwards.
Costi, costà,		In giù,	downwards
Li, là, colà,	there.	Su e giù,	up and down
vi, ivi,		Vicino,*	near.
Ove, dove,	where.	Lontano,†	far.
Onde, donde,	} whence.	Altrove,	elsewhere.
di dove,		Da banda,	aside.
Quassù,	up here.	Da parte,	
Quaggiù,	down here.	A mano destra,	on the right.
Lassù,	up there.	A destra, dritta,	
Laggiù,	down there.	A sinistra, manca,	on the left.
	above,	Avanti, innanzi,‡	forward
Di sopra,	upstairs	Da per tutto,	
Di sotto,	below,	Ovunque,	everywhere.
Da basso,	downstairs	Ognidove,	

878. qua," and " i " (*here*), are used to indicate the place in which the speaker is, " costi," " costà (*there*), the place occupied by the person addressed, " Li," " là," colà," " ivi," and " vi (*there*), mark a place distant alike from the speaker and the person addressed " Qui " and " costì " are generally used with verbs expressing state, whereas " qua " and " costà " are always connected with verbs expressing movement.

879. " Ci," " vi," and " ivi," can only be used when the place to which these adverbs refer has been already mentioned in the sentence Ex.

Ora che sono in questo posto    Now that I am in this place I  
ci voglio rimanere                      will remain in it.

## 880. ADVERBS WHICH CAN BE USED INTERROGATIVELY

Quando ?	when ?	Ove ?	where ?
Quanto ?	how much ?	Dove ?	
Mai ?†	ever ?	Donde ?	whence ?
Giammai ?	ever ?	Perchè ?	why ?
Come ?	how ?	Fin dove ?	how far ?

Da quando in qua ? since when ?    Fino a quando ? until when ?

881 " Mai " and " giammai," employed without being preceded by " non," have the signification of *ever*, but when they are employed with " non," or " no," they mean *never* Ex

Ha ella mai visto il duomo di    Have you ever seen the cathedral  
Milano ? No, mai                      of Milan ? No, I have not.

\* " Vicino," " lontano," " avanti," and " innanzi " can also be used as prepositions.

882 † " Unqua " is often used in poetry instead of " mai "

## 883. SENTENCES CONTAINING ADVERBS OF TIME.

(To be learnt by heart)

Giuseppe andò al passeggio ieri, ed io v'andrò oggi e domani.	Joseph went for a walk yesterday, and I shall go to-day, and to-morrow
Vidi i miei avantieri (a), e li vedrò ancora fra poco (b).	I saw my family the day before yesterday, and I shall see them again very soon
E difficile di fare utili scoperte al giorno d'oggi (c)	Now-a-days it is difficult to make useful discoveries
Che faremo ora? (d) Non faremo niente fino a posdomani (e)	What shall we do now? We shall do nothing till the day after to-morrow
Pel momento (f) non posso dar risposta, ma deciderò al più presto possibile	For the present I cannot give an answer, but I will decide as soon as possible
Finora (g) egli ha fatto a modo suo, oramai mi obbedirà	Hitherto he has done what he likes, now he will obey me
L'ho visto due ore fa, e lo rivedrò oggi a otto	I saw him two hours ago, and I shall see him again to-day week
È ancora (i) prigioniero, ma sarà liberato fra (j) un mese	He is still a prisoner, but he will be liberated in a month
Incontrai Carlo poc'anzi (k)	I have just met Charles
Non l'ho veduto da due mesi in qua	I have not seen him for the last two months
Pel passato lo vedevo raramente, (l) ma d'ora in avanti (m) lo vedrò sovente (n)	In past time I seldom saw him, but henceforth I shall see him often
Quando partiremo? Subito (o), ho già preparato i miei bauli	When shall we start? At once, I have already prepared my trunks
Egli si decise su due piedi (p)	He made up his mind in a moment
Per l'avvenire verrò a trovarla di quando in quando (q)	For the future I shall come to see you now and then
Non mancherò di scrivergli subito che (r) arriverò a Parigi	I shall not fail to write to him as soon as I arrive in Paris

(a) Or ieri l'altro

(j) Or da qui a un mese

(o) Or a momenti, immediatamente

(b) Or tosto, fra breve, quanto prima

(k) Or pur dianzi, pur mo, pur ora, pocofa, testè

(p) Or in un attimo, in un batter d'occhio, in men che non si dice

(c) Or oggidì, oggimai

(l) Or di rado

(m) Or d'ora innanzi, da

(q) Or di tempo in tempo, di tratto in tratto

(d) Or domani l'altro

(n) Or d'ora innanzi, da qui

(r) Or tosto che, appena, come prima

(e) Or per ora, per adesso

(o) Or di rado

(f) Or infino ad ora

(p) Or d'oggi in poi

(g) Or tuttora, tuttavia.

(q) Or spesso

884 \* "Ratto" is sometimes used in poetry instead of "subito"

Non l'ho vista d'allora in poi (a)	I have never seen her since then.
Altre volte era ricca, ma in questi ultimi tempi (b) divenne povera	Formerly she was rich, but of late she became poor.
Vi prego di venire per tempo, (c) allorquando (d) volete parlarvi.	I beg of you to come early, whenever you wish to speak to me.
Roberto viene sempre (e) a scarami, ora (f) per una cosa, ora per l'altra	Robert always comes to bother me, now for one thing, then for another.
Allora Carlo arrivava per lo più prima di me	Then Charles generally arrived before me
Andiamo, si fa tardi, siamo sempre in ritardo, ciò non va bene	Let us go, it is getting late, we are always late, that is not right.
Era fin d'allora all'apice della sua gloria.	He was even then at the very height of his glory.
Lo vidi circa sei giorni fa	I saw him about six days ago.
Qualche volta (g) restava per molto tempo scioperato	Sometimes he remained for a long while idle.
All'indomani era di gran lunga innanzi dei suoi competitori	On the morrow he was far ahead of his competitors.
Verrete da me qualora vi piaccia (h)	You will come to me whenever you like
Agguantò l'agnello addirittura, e, senz'altro, se lo divorò	He seized the lamb, and without more ado, devoured it.

## EXERCISE LXXVIII

What are you doing here, Mrs Vincenzi? I am spending an hour in the fresh air, I come here almost every morning. Where have you been? (123) I do not know from whence I came, we lost our way after (185) crossing the little green bridge, near Mr. Prati's house. We went up and down I do not know for how long, but at last we have arrived here safe and sound. Will you go with me to see the pictures in the National Gallery? Yes, if you will permit me to take my sister with me. With the greatest pleasure. No doubt you have seen Mascagni's new opera? No, not yet; I have no time at all, just now. Now we will begin this work, we shall finish it before midnight. If I were in your place, I would remain in Nice during the winter. I often meet your cousin, Mrs Alberti, sometimes in the park, sometimes in the Reading Room of the British Museum

- (a) *Or d'allora in qua*  
 (b) *Or recentemente,*  
     *non ha guari*

- (c) *Or di buon ora*  
 (d) *Or ogniqualvolta*  
 (e) *Or ognora*

- (f) *Or quando quando*  
 (g) *Or talora.*  
 (h) *Or quando che sia.*

# 885. SENTENCES CONTAINING ADVERBS OF QUALITY AND MANNER.

(To be learnt by heart.)

Ella parla bene, ma parlerebbe meglio (a) se parlasse più adagio.	You speak well, but you would speak better if you spoke slower.
Il suo sarto lavora male (b) perchè lavora in fretta.	Your tailor works badly because he works in a hurry.
Credo di no, il fatto sta che lavora malvolentieri (c)	I do not think so; the fact is he works unwillingly.
Davvero lavora alla carlona (d), di male in peggio (a) ogni giorno.	Really he works carelessly, worse and worse every day.
Si direbbe che lo fa apposta (e), o per burla (f), per mettervi in collera	One would say that he does it on purpose, or for fun, to make you cross
Vorrei parlarle a quattr'occhi (g), ho qualcosa da dirle a bocca (h)	I would like to see you privately, I have something to tell you by word of mouth.
Volentieri (i), eccomi qui, dite presto, sotto voce ma senz'ambagi	Willingly, here I am, be quick, in a whisper but to the point
Tutta la casa è a soqquadro (j) e sua moglie piange dirrottamente (k)	The whole house is in confusion, and your wife is weeping bitterly.
Parlate sul serio (l), non son cose da dirsi alla pazza	Speak seriously, they are not things to be said wantonly
Vendeva i suoi quadri di mano in mano che li finiva.	He sold his pictures as fast as he finished them.
Lo passò da parte a parte (m), ad onta della (n) maglia che portava	He pierced him through and through, in spite of the coat of mail he wore.
Tutt'a un tratto (o) si rimisero a lavorare con amore.	All at once they began again to work in good earnest.
Me ne vivo quietamente in questo castello, mercè la bontà del governatore.	I live quietly in this castle, thanks to the kindness of the governor.
Agirò comunque ei voglia.	I shall act just as he wishes

- (a) The adverbs, "meglio" and "peggio" are the comparative forms of "bene" and "male" Their superlative forms are "ottimamente," "pessimamente"
- |                       |                          |                                   |
|-----------------------|--------------------------|-----------------------------------|
| (b) Or malamente      | (g) Or da solo a solo    | (l) Or da senno                   |
| (c) Or a malincuore.  | (h) Or a voce, viva voce | (m) Or da banda a banda           |
| (d) Or alla buona     | (i) Or buona voglia      | (n) Or malgrado                   |
| (e) Or a bello studio | (j) Or sottosopra        | (o) Or all'improvviso, di repente |
| (f) Or per scherzo    | (k) Or a diotte lagrime  |                                   |

- Lavorarono siffattamente (a),  
che dappoi il terreno pro-  
duce fromento a dovizie (b).  
In somma (c) volete leggere ad  
alta voce (or voce alta) o no ?  
Sicuro, comincerò da capo.
- Dove debbo cominciare ? a capo  
di riga ? Sicuro (d)
- Mi chiamò da parte (h) e mi  
raccontò tutto sotto voce
- La tratto alla buona (i) cioè (j)  
come vorrei ch'ella trattasse  
me
- Uscì diverse volte al buio (k)  
ed i soppiatto, (l) ma coll'andar  
del tempo fu acchiappato
- Guadagna più vendendo all' in-  
grosso che vendendo a minuto.
- Io sto sempre alla larga (h)  
quando veggio baruffe
- Egli si veste sempre alla moda,  
per lo più all'inglese.
- Fa sempre al rovescio di quel  
che gli si dice
- Egli va sempre a zonzo, sciope-  
rato.
- Invece di (m) star lì colle mani a  
cintola, venite ad aiutarmi
- Vorrei morire, piuttosto (n) che  
servire un tal tiranno.
- Inoltre, non agì bene
- Forse arriveranno questa sera,  
ma non si sa per certo.
- A che ora arriva il treno ? Non  
saprei precisamente, circa  
alle cinque
- È così bravo che, per poco che  
studiasse, farebbe facilmente  
il suo esame.
- They worked in such a manner  
that since then the soil has  
produced corn in abundance.
- In short, will you or will you  
not read louder ?
- Certainly, I shall begin over  
again
- Where shall I begin from ? at the  
head of the line ? Certainly.
- He called me aside and whis-  
pered to me all that had  
happened.
- I treat you without compli-  
ments, that is as I would like  
you to treat me.
- He went out several times in the  
dark and by stealth, but at  
length he was caught.
- He gains more by selling whole-  
sale than by retail.
- I always keep aloof when I see  
disturbances.
- He always dresses in the fashion,  
generally in the English style
- He always does the reverse of  
what he is told.
- He is always sauntering about,  
wasting his time.
- Instead of staying there idle,  
come and help me.
- I would sooner die than serve  
such a tyrant.
- Besides, he did not act well
- Perhaps they will arrive this  
evening, but it is not certain
- At what time does the train  
arrive ? I could not tell you  
exactly, at about five o'clock.
- He is so clever that, if he studied  
ever so little, he would easily  
pass his examination.

(a) Or per modo che  
(b) Or a bizzeffe  
(c) Or in fine, in breve  
(d) Or sicuramente, già

(h) Or in disparte  
(i) Or senza complimenti  
(j) Or cioè a dire, vale a dire  
(k) Or all'oscuro

(l) Or di nascosto  
(m) Or in luogo di  
(n) Or prima che, avanti  
che, innanzi che.

## REMARKS ON "ONDE,"\* "BENE," AND "PURE."

886. The adverb "Onde" is used especially in the higher style and in poetry instead of "di cui," "del quale," &c., "da cui," "dal quale," &c., "per cui," "pel quale," &c. Ex.

"Di quei sospiri ond'io nutriva il core" (Petrarca)

*Of those sighs with which I nourished my heart.*

887. "Onde" and "donde" have also the meaning of *good reason* for Ex.

"Oimè, bene il conosco ed ho ben donde." (Tasso)

*Alas, I know him well and I have good reasons for it*

888. "Onde" has also the meaning of *therefore* Ex

Si fa buio, onde è meglio andar- It is getting dark, therefore we  
sene had better go

889. "Onde" has also the meaning of *in order to*. Ex

Egli riparò qui, onde salvarsi. Here repaired here, to save himself.

890. "Onde" has also the meaning of *from whence* Ex.

Onde venite, così tardi? Whence do you come so late?

891. "Bensi" ("bene sì") means *it is true* Ex.

Sempre mi prometteva bene† It is true that he always pro-  
(or bensì) del danaro, ma non mises me money, but he never  
me ne dava mai gives me any.

892. "Ben altro" means *quite another matter*. Ex

Ben altro udrai fra poco. You will soon hear more impor-  
tant news

893. "Pure" is sometimes used for "*solamente*," *only*. Ex.

Ciò accadde non pure una volta, That happened not only once,  
ma cento. but a hundred times

894. "Pure" is sometimes used to give strength to an expression  
Ex

A che pur pensa? What are you still thinking of?

Dite pure quel che volete You may say what you like.

895. "E pure," or "eppure," means *and yet*. Ex

"E pur si move!" (Galileo) It moves though!

896. "Nè pure," or "neppure" means *not even*. Ex.

Non avevo neppure un soldo I had not even a half-penny.

897. "Pur troppo" means *alas too well, alas too true* Ex

E vero che Carlo è fuggito? Is it true that Charles has fled?

Pur troppo! It is but too true!

\* The word "onde," as a noun, means *waves*

898. † "Bene" and "bensì" may be put before the verb Ex "Bene (or Bensì) mi prometteva sempre del danaro, ma," etc

## 899 SENTENCES CONTAINING ADVERBS OF QUANTITY

(To be learnt by heart.)

Ho speso a bastanza (a) danaro, più (b) di voi, non voglio spender di più.	I have spent enough money, more than you, I will not spend any more.
Studiano poco, meno (b) di noi, non più di tre ore ogni giorno.	They study little, less than we do, not more than three hours a day.
Ho veduto solamente (c) tre elefanti in vita mia.	I have only seen three elephants in my life.
Non avevo che (d) cento lire sterline, eppure furono abbastanza.	I had only a hundred pounds, and yet it was enough.
Era alquanto (e) spiacente di non essere stato eletto, ma non molto.	He was somewhat displeased at not having been elected, but not much.
Fu quasi (f) ucciso in quella zuffa, erano tre contr'uno.	He was almost killed in that quarrel, they were three to one.
Non pensò guari, e poi mi domandò un poco (g) di danaro in prestito.	He did not think much, and then asked me for a little money as a loan.
V'erano molti soldati alla rivista? A un dipresso (h) ventumila.	Were there many soldiers at the review? About twenty thousand.

## EXERCISE LXXIX.

At what o'clock must they depart? At half past seven. Then, I shall lay the cloth at once. The dinner will be ready in half an hour. Walk slowly, my daughter, I have a pain in my foot; I cannot walk quickly. Do what I tell you, otherwise I shall dismiss you. Do you speak in earnest? Certainly. Why did you break my penknife? I did not do it (209) on purpose; it was a mere accident. I tell you frankly that you ought to apologise to him, at once. He started up suddenly (885, o) and gave Francis a fearful blow. The most beautiful flowers last but (802) a short time. The compass was not invented (799) by a mariner, nor (800) the telescope by an astronomer, nor the microscope by a philosopher, nor printing by a man of letters, nor gunpowder by a soldier. The loadstone always points towards the north.

- |  |   |  |
|--|---|--|
| (a) Or a sufficienza   | (c) Or soltanto   | (e) Or un tantino                              |
| (b) The adverbs "più" and "meno" are the comparative forms of "molto" and "poco" | (d) When <i>only</i> means <i>but</i> , it is translated into Italian by "non (ver)b che" | (f) Or presso che                              |
|  |   | (g) "Poco" is the only adverb followed by "di" |
|  |   | (h) Or presso a poco.                          |



## LESSON XXXIX.

## ON PREPOSITIONS.

900. THE PRINCIPAL PREPOSITIONS ARE :—

Di,	of.	Accanto a,	beside.
A,	to, at.	Vicino a,*	} near.
In,	in within.	Presso a,	
Per,	} for, through, in order to.	Intorno a,	} about, around,
Con,		D'intorno a,	
	with.	Attorno a,	} near.
Fra, <i>or</i> tra,	} between.	Lontano da,+	} far.
Infra, <i>or</i> intra,		Lungi da,	
In mezzo a,		Lungo,	} along, alongside
Entro,		Lunghesso,	
Su, <i>or</i>	} on, upon	Stante,	} according to.
Sopra,		Secondo,	
Sotto,	} under,	A seconda di,	
Di sotto di,		Durante,	during
Dentro,	} in,	Eccetto,	} except.
Di dentro di,		Salvo,	
Fuori di,	} outside.	Mediante,	} by means of,
Di fuori di,		Rispetto a,	
Prima di,	} before	Rispetto a,	} concerning.
Avanti di,+		Tranne,	excepting.
Davanti a,		Senza,	without.
Innanzi di,*		Contro,	} against.
Dinanzi di,		Contra,	
Dietro a,	} behind.	In vece di,	instead of.
Di dietro a,		Oltre,	beyond.
In faccia a,	} opposite.	Verso,	} towards.
Rimpetto a,		Alla volta di,	
Di rimpetto a,		Malgrado,	} in spite of,
Dopo,	after.	Nonostante,	
		Ad onta di,	notwithstanding.

"Avanti," "innanzi," "vicino," and "lontano" can also be used as adverbs.

## THE PREPOSITION "DI," OF

901. The preposition "di" is used to denote relation of property, affinity, and connection between one word and another. Ex.

Il padrone di questa casa.	The master of this house.
Una casa di campagna.	A country-house.
Il libro di mio fratello.	My brother's book.
La Divina Commedia di Dante.	Dante's Divine Comedy.
Il regno di Spagna.	The kingdom of Spain.
Il duomo di Milano.	The cathedral of Milan.
Un abito d'inverno.	A winter coat.
Questo signore è di Napoli.	This gentleman is from Naples.

902. The Preposition "di" is also used to connect two nouns when the second of them is the name of the material which the object indicated by the first noun is "made of," "full of," or "deals in." Ex

Un cappello di paglia	A straw hat.
Un bicchiere di vino.	A glass of wine.
Mercanti di tè	Tea merchants.

903. The Preposition "di" is also used after an adjective, or a past participle preceded by a verb, expressing any idea of rest, or state. Ex

Il mio cavallo era coperto di fango.	My horse was covered with mud
Egli era carico di onori	He was loaded with honours.
Ella è dotata di bonissimo ingegno	She is endowed with very great intelligence.
Parve contento di vedermi	He appeared pleased at seeing me.
Sono felice di proporle cosa di tanta utilità.	I am happy to propose to you a thing so useful
Mio padre mi ha promesso di condurmi a Milano.	My father has promised to take me to Milan.
Ho dimenticato di mandare queste lettere alla posta	I have forgotten to send these letters to the post.

904. The Preposition "di" is also used in the phrases :—  
 Viaggiar di giorno,\* di notte, *to travel by day, by night.*  
 Vivere di frutti, di legumi, &c., *to live on fruit, on vegetables, &c*

\* That is to say "in tempo di giorno"

THE PREPOSITION "A" *TO, AT.*

905. The preposition "a" is used to indicate the end or object to which the action of the verb is directed. Ex.

Ho parlato a Carlo.	I have spoken to Charles.
Vado sovente a Parigi.	I often go to Paris.

906. The preposition "a" is also used to denote a state. Ex.

Mia sorella è a scuola	My sister is at school.
Mio padre è a casa di Paolo.	My father is at Paul's
Mio fratello è ancora a Venezia.	My brother is still in Venice.

907 The preposition "a" is also used to connect two nouns, the second of which denotes the means by which the object expressed by the first noun acts Ex.

Un battello a vapore	A steam-boat.
Un mulino a vento.	A windmill.
Un bastimento a vela.	A sailing-vessel.

908. The preposition "a" is also used to indicate the form in which an object is made. Ex

Un abito a coda di rondine	A swallow-tail coat
----------------------------	---------------------

909 The preposition "a" is also used in the sense of "with" Ex

Un campo a luppoli	A hop-field
Un cappello a larghe falde	A hat with a broad brim
Lucia portava un bel busto di broccato a fiori	Lucy wore a pretty bodice of flowered brocade.

910 The preposition "a" is also used in the following phrases --

Tagliare a fette	To cut in slices
Stare a bocca aperta.	To remain open-mouthed
Stare a occhi bassi.	To remain with downcast eyes.
Cantare a meraviglia.	To sing wonderfully well
Darsi a conoscere	To make one's-self known
Morire a centinaia	To die by hundreds
Andare a due a due, &c.	To go two by two, &c
Un cannone carico a mitraglia	A cannon loaded with grapeshot.

\* Besides the phrases given above, the preposition "a" is used in the verbal expressions "andare a gara," *to vie*, "stare a galla," *to float*, "tener a bada," *to take care of*, &c, which have been already given

911. The preposition "a" is also used in the adverbial expressions "alla francese," *in the French fashion*, "alla rinfusa," *in a confusion*, &c, already given, rule 885.

912. The preposition "a" is also used before a verb in the Infinitive mood, preceded by another verb expressing motion. Ex.

Venga a trovarmi domani. Come to see me to-morrow.

Andate ad impostare queste lettere Go to post these letters.

Venga a pranzo con me. Come and dine with me

#### THE PREPOSITION "DA," FROM, BY, &c.

913 The preposition "da" is used in the sense of "from." Ex.

Arrivai ieri da Vienna. I arrived yesterday from Vienna

Ho ricevuto regali da lui I have received presents from him

Raffaello da Urbino morì Raphael (from) Urbino died at the age of thirty-seven.

Rimase prigioniero da maggio He remained a prisoner from May to November

914 The preposition "da" is also used in the sense of "by," "near," "in the direction of," "through." Ex

Andando a Costantinopoli In going to Constantinople I passed by Athens.

Nell'andare a scuola passai da In going to school I went through Cross Street.

915. The preposition "da" is also used in the sense of "by" when preceded by a past participle. Ex.

Egli è stimato da tutti. He is esteemed by everybody.

Ho comprato un bellissimo quadro dipinto da Landseer. I have bought a beautiful picture painted by Landseer.

916. The preposition "da" sometimes means "by myself," "by my own will," &c, "by yourself," "by your own will," &c. Ex.

L'ha fatto da sè. He did it by himself.

Da me non venni. I did not come by my own will.

\* As already stated, the preposition "a" is used in Italian instead of the English conjunction *and*, after a verb expressing motion Ex

Andate a prendermi il mio cappello Go and fetch my hat

917. The preposition "da" is also used to connect two nouns, the second of which expresses the use or destination of the first.  
Ex.

Carta da scrivere.	Writing paper
Una bottiglia da vino.	A wine bottle
Una veste da camera.	A dressing-gown
Un istrumento da fiato.	A wind instrument
Un cavallo da corsa.	A race-horse.

918. The preposition "da" is also used in the sense of "to," "towards" Ex.

Ecco là i vostri amici, andate da loro.	There are your friends, go to them
---	------------------------------------

919 The preposition "da" is also used in the sense of "at the house of" Ex

Passerò da Lei domani, o posdomani	I will call on you to-morrow, or the day after to-morrow.
------------------------------------	---

920. The preposition "da" is also used in the sense of "where-with." Ex

Questo povero vecchio non ha da mangiare	This poor old man has nothing to eat
Datemi da scrivere; voglio scrivere a mio fratello.	Give me something to write with, I want to write to my brother.

921. The preposition "da" is also used in the sense of "fit for." Ex.

Vi assicuro che non è cosa da ridere	I assure you it is no laughing matter.
Mi ha fatto un azione da mariuolo	He played me a knavish trick

922. The preposition "da" is also used in the sense of "like a." Ex.

Egli combattè da eroe, e morì da Cristiano.	He fought like a hero, and died like a Christian.
L'ho sempre trattato da amico	I always treated him as a friend.
Vi parlo da padrone, e voi dovreste ubbidirmi da servo.	I speak to you as a master, and you should obey me as a servant.

923. The preposition "da" is also used in the sense of "on" Ex

Da una parte c'era un bel praticello, dall'altra un vigneto.	On one side there was a pretty little meadow, on the other a vineyard.
--	--

---

924 \* The expressions "da me," "da te," &c, must not be used instead of "a casa mia," &c, when ambiguity may be incurred, for instance, *I am going home*, must be translated by "vado a casa," and not "vado da me."

THE PREPOSITION "IN," *IN, INTO.*

925 The Italian preposition "in" has generally the same meaning as the English preposition *in, into.* Ex

Sua moglie è in Svizzera	His wife is in Switzerland.
L'ho tradotto in francese	I translated it into French.

926 In Italian the preposition "in" does not require the definite article after it in sentences like the following. —

Era in giardino con Giovanni.	He was in the garden with John.
Non vado mai in cucina.	I never go into the kitchen.
Carlo è in cantina a mettere vino in bottiglia	Charles is in the cellar bottling some wine.

Aveva un bastone in mano	He had a stick in his hand.
Essi discutono in strada.	They are discussing in the street.

927 In sentences like the following the preposition "in" is not translated literally into English —

Non posso stare in piedi	I cannot stand on my feet.
Tiene il cappello in testa.	He keeps his hat on his head.
Aveva in dito un anello d'oro.	He had a gold ring on his finger.
Il pranzo era già in tavola.	The dinner was already served
Lingua toscana in bocca romana	The Tuscan language as it is spoken by the Romans
Mi piace molto andare in barca	I am very fond of rowing on the river
Va in chiesa ogni domenica.	She goes to church every Sunday.
Andò in Austria un mese fa.	He went to Austria a month ago.
Scriverò la mia lettera in un'ora	It will take me an hour to write my letter.

THE PREPOSITION "PER," *FOR, THROUGH, IN ORDER TO*

928 The preposition "per" is also used in the sense of "for." Ex.

L'ho dipinto apposta per Lei.	I painted it on purpose for you
-------------------------------	---------------------------------

929 The preposition "per" is also used in the sense of "in order to." Ex

Ritorno presto per compiacervi	I will return soon to please you.
--------------------------------	-----------------------------------

930 The preposition "per" is also used in the sense of *because, on account of* Ex.

Fu espulso per aver osato mettere in caricatura il suo maestro.	He was expelled because he caricatured his master.
---	--

\* In this case "per" is used instead of "per causa di," *because, on account of*

931 The preposition "per" is also used in the expressions "per uno," *each*, and "per tempo," *early*. Ex

Ricev <del>e</del> ettero uno scellino per	They received a shilling each,
uno, perchè vennero per	because they came early.
tempo.	

932 The prepositions "su per" are used together to express graphically an upward progress Ex

Andammo su per la collina	We went up the hill
---------------------------	---------------------

### THE PREPOSITION "CON," WITH.

933. The preposition "con" has *generally* the same meaning as the English preposition *with* Ex

Oggi ho pranzato con un vecchio amico di scuola	To-day I dined with an old schoolfellow
Dipingo senpre con colori francesi	I always paint with French colours

### "FRA," AND "TRA," BETWEEN, AMONGST.

934 "Fra" and "tra," besides meaning "between," "amongst," "in the midst of," are used in the sense of "after the space of," "hence." Ex

Scriv <del>e</del> rò la mia lettera fra un' ora.	I shall write my letter in an hour (in an hour hence)
Carlo ritornerà fra (or da qui a) due mesi.	Charles will return in two months (two months hence).

935 "Parlare tra sè" means *to speak to one's self*. Ex  
 Egli soleva passeggiar soletto e parlare tra sè ad alta voce. He used to walk alone speaking aloud to himself.

### THE PREPOSITIONS "SU," "SOPRA," "SOVRA," ON, UPON.

936 The prepositions "su," and "sopra," have generally the same meaning and are used in the same way as the English preposition *on, upon*. In the following sentences, however, "su" and "sopra" are translated by other prepositions than *on* or *upon* —

Egli abitava una villa a venti miglia sopra Firenze.	He inhabited a villa twenty miles beyond Florence
Partimmo in sull'alba, e ritornammo sulla sera	We started at break of day, and returned at dusk
Ordinarono un grandissimo esercito per andare sopra i nemici. (Boccaccio)	They organized a very numerous army to go against the enemy.

---

\* The other prepositions given on page 198 do not require any explanation

## LESSON XL.

## ON THE COMPLEMENTS OF VERBS

. One of the most difficult things for English people learning Italian, is the proper use of the complements of verbs, that is to say, the proper use of the prepositions which ought to follow verbs to complete their meaning. In some cases the English and Italian languages agree on this point, but in many instances there is a remarkable difference between them, as will be shown in the seven following exercises

937 VERBS WHICH DO NOT REQUIRE ANY PREPOSITION IN ITALIAN, ALTHOUGH THEY REQUIRE ONE AFTER THEM IN ENGLISH.

## EXERCISE LXXX

Do not listen to (a) him, if he begins to talk, he will not stop all day. I am waiting for (b) (251) my brother. I have been looking (714) for (c) some red ink this half hour. I have bought (to buy for) (d) these steel pens for sixpence a dozen. Charles is well acquainted with (e) our affairs. We look upon (f) him as your best friend. She wished for (g) her mother's return. He puts off (h) his decision from (di) day to day, I do not like that (608) I have asked (to ask for) (i) him for some matches† several times (602). They were (695) ignorant of (j) what we intended to do. I never met with (I have never met with) (k) a man so witty. Martial music inspires (inspire with) (l) soldiers with courage and confidence. She set off (m) yesterday morning by (per) the first train. I cannot bear with (n) his nonsense any longer (817). He sold (to sell for) (o) his house for two hundred pounds (656).

(a) Ascoltare

(f) Considerare

(k) Incontrare

(b) Aspettare

(g) Desiderare

(l) Inspirare a

(c) Cercare

(h) Differire

(m) Partire

(d) Comprare

(i) Domandare a

(n) Soffrire

(e) Conoscere

(j) Ignoriare

(o) Vendere

938 \* The expressions *to begin to*, *to set about to*, are rendered in Italian by "Mettersi a," "Cominciare a"

939 † *Match*, "zolfanello" *Match* (in artillery), "miccia" *Match* (marriage), "matrimonio" *To match*, "assortire."



940. VERBS WHICH DO NOT REQUIRE ANY PREPOSITION IN ENGLISH,  
ALTHOUGH THEY REQUIRE ONE AFTER THEM IN ITALIAN.

EXERCISE LXXXI.

He wants (a) money to (225) furnish his house. He was told to mind (b) the horses while we were dining. They mocked (c) him, because he was poor. I ordered (d) him to leave the house, but he would not I distrust (e) him. They displease (f) everybody. You will be punished, because you disobeyed (707) (g) your father. We asked (h) him to take (459) us to the opera. She doubted (i) the truth of his assertion. Every time (636) he entered (j) (697) the drawing-room, he bowed to the company. For many years we enjoyed (k) (704) the advantages of his friendship. She taught us (707) (l) the art of painting upon china. She understands (m) the fine arts. He would not hurt (n) my reputation.

EXERCISE LXXXII

He was punished, because he would not obey (o) the king's order. I am sure (636) she will never pardon him for (p) (184) having broken her (562) watch. They permitted (q) him to make sketches of the castle. I persuaded (r) him to buy the pictures. It pleased (s) them to make me a (360) present of this pencil-case. He resisted (t) all the entreaties of his poor parents. Those who are not able to resist (t) temptations, ought (791) to avoid them. He had to (790) renounce (u) his bad companions. They used (707) (v) cement for the foundation of that building. I am sure that he will outlive (w) his nephew. He slanders (x) everybody. He ordered (d) the waiter to bring him a glass of wine, and a bottle of soda-water. The rivulet entered (j) a dark cavern on the western side of the hill.

---

(a) Abbisognare di	(i) Dubitare di	(q) Permettere a di
(b) Aver cura di	(j) Entrare in	(r) Persuadere a di
(c) Burlarsi di	(k) Godere di.	(s) Piacere a
(d) Commandare a di.	(l) Insegnare a.	(t) Resistere a
(e) Diffidarsi di	(m) Intendersi di	(u) Rinunciare a
(f) Dispiacere a	(n) Nuocere a	(v) Servirsi di.
(g) Disubbidire a	(o) Obbedire a	(w) Sopravvivere a
(h) Domandare a di	(p) Perdonare a di	(x) Sparlare di.

941. VERBS WHICH REQUIRE ONE PREPOSITION IN ITALIAN, AND A DIFFERENT ONE IN ENGLISH.

EXERCISE LXXXIII

The garden was embellished with (a) beautiful marble statues. This country abounds with (b) corn His sword was adorned with (c) jewels. He grieved at (d) the loss of his property. He was satisfied with (e) (696) the little he had earned. They were burning with (f) indignation When his deceit was (768) discovered, he blushed with (g) shame. I blame him for (h) having fled (685) The ship was laden with (i) provisions for the besieged fortress. All the guns were loaded with (j) balls. They loaded him with (k) kindness. He could (767, 695) not be consoled for (l) the loss of his child. They all agree (842, g) that it is a poem to be (921) greatly admired

EXERCISE LXXXIV.

They could (704) not agree about (m) the price. All the furniture was (696) covered with (n) dust. I took possession of the room destined for (o) me. Everything depends upon (p) what he is going to say He parted with (q) (704) his vicious horse as soon as he could. He was (702) endowed with (r) the finest (518) gifts that nature can give. They had filled (with) (s) the rooms with the old furniture they had taken from the castle. He was presented with (t) a beautiful gold watch (346). I congratulated him upon (u) the success he has obtained He glories in (v) the mischief he does She wore a beautiful white satin dress trimmed with (w) pearls He seized upon (x) our goods

---

(a) Abbellire di *	(i) Caricare di	(q) Disfarsi di
(b) Abbondare di	(j) Caricare a	(r) Dotare di
(c) Adornare di	(k) Colmare di	(s) Empire di. *
(d) Affliggersi di	(l) Consolare di	(t) Far regalo a di
(e) Appagarsi di	(m) Convenire di †	(u) Felicitare di
(f) Ardere di	(n) Coprire di ‡	(v) Glorificarsi di
(g) Arrossire di *	(o) Destinare a	(w) Guarnire di *
(h) Biasimare di	(p) Dipendere da	(x) Impadronirsi di *

---

\* This verb is conjugated like "Finire"

942 † "Convenire" (irregular) besides the above meaning of *to agree on, or about*, and the meaning of *to be obliged, or compelled*, explained in rule 136, it has also the meaning of *to meet by appointment* Ex.

Convennero nel Teatro della Scala

They met in the Teatro della Scala.

‡ This verb is conjugated like "Servire."

943. VERBS WHICH REQUIRE ONE PREPOSITION IN ITALIAN, AND A DIFFERENT ONE IN ENGLISH

EXERCISE LXXXV.

He was inflamed with (a) rage, on hearing (686) the losses he had sustained. He inquired about (b) the state of the country. The table was (696) covered with (c) books and papers. He fell in love with (d) my cousin. He languished from (703) (e) hunger for (311) three days, and then died. He praised them for (f) their honesty. She wondered at (g) the sudden return of my brother. He was threatened with (h) (767) death if he would not confess the truth. He meddles with (i) everybody's business. His mind was stored with (j) useful knowledge. The theft was concealed a long time from (k) everybody. He was fed on (l) (703) fish and fruit for three weeks. They were oppressed with (m) taxes. I shall call upon (n) you this evening.

EXERCISE LXXXVI.

What were you thinking of (o) when I met you? They wept for (p) joy when they heard that their father had arrived. They profited by (q) the ruin of their friend. He was punished for (r) the crime he had committed. They were speaking about (of) politics (419) till midnight. They rejoiced at (s) the good news. He laughed at (t) the misfortune of my brother. He returned thanks for (u) the favour he had received. He will have (790) to answer for (v) his bad conduct. They were surfeited with (w) food. In consequence of his behaviour at the last election he has (18) decreased in (x) popularity. He used (697) to take (y) the money from his sister. He triumphed over (z) his enemies at last. He lives upon (aa) a pension granted to him by the king.

---

(a) Infiammare di	(j) Punire di *	(s) Rallegrarsi di
(b) Informarsi di	(k) Nascondere a	(t) Ridersi di
(c) Ingombrare di	(l) Nutrire di	(u) Ringraziare di.
(d) Innamorarsi di	(m) Opprimere di	(v) Rispondere di.
(e) Languire di *	(n) Passare da	(w) Satollarsi di
(f) Lodare di	(o) Pensare a	(x) Scemare di.
(g) Maravigliarsi di	(p) Piangere di	(y) Togliere a.
(h) Minacciare di	(q) Profitare di	(z) Trionfare di.
(i) Ingerirsi in *	(r) Punire di *	(aa) Vivere di.

\* This verb is conjugated like "Fimre"

## LESSON XLI.

## ON CONJUNCTIONS AND INTERJECTIONS.

## § I. ON CONJUNCTIONS

944 The Italian conjunctions are followed by verbs either in the Indicative, the Subjunctive, or the Infinitive Mood.

945 THE FOLLOWING CONJUNCTIONS GOVERN THE VERB IN THE INDICATIVE MOOD.

E,	and	Pure,	
E pure, eppure,	and yet	Tuttavia,	
O,	or	Tuttavolta,	
O o,		Nonostante,	yet,
Ovvero ovvero,	} either or.	Nondimeno,	} for all that,
Ossia ossia,		Nulladimeno,	
Non (verb) nè nè,	neither nor.	Ciononpertanto,	
Ma,	but	Con tutto ciò,	
Però,	} however	Anche,	} also,
Pertanto,		Altresi,	
Perchè,		Eziandio,	moreover.
Perocchè,		In fine,	} in fact.
Perciocchè,	} because,	In somma,	
Conciossiachè,		Se non che,	
Poichè,	} since, in as	Salvo che,	} except that
Giacchè,		Eccetto che,	
Stantechè,		Tranne che,	
Quindi,	} therefore	Secondo che,	according as.
Laonde,		Cioè,	
Così,		Cioè a dire,	} that is to say.
Anzi,	} nay, more,	Vale a dire,	
Che dico,		Stante,	referring to.
Di più,		Tanto più che,	} so much the
Inoltre,		Quand'è così,	
D'altronde,	} besides	Quand'ecco,	more so that.
Oltracchè,			in that case
Oltracciò,		Ecco perchè,	when, behold.
			that is why

946 The conjunction 'anzi' is very expressive, it means *on the contrary, further, nay, rather* Ex.

Egli venne a vederci, anzi He came to see us, *nay more,*  
 pranzò con noi. he dined with us.

"Anzi impediva tanto 'l mio cammino" (Dante)  
*Nay, rather did impede so much my way.*

"E pure" has been illustrated in rule 894

947. NOTE.—As the Conjunctions which govern verbs in the Subjunctive Mood were given in rule 730 (page 162) and rule 740 (page 164), they will not be repeated here.

948. THE FOLLOWING CONJUNCTIONS GOVERN THE VERB IN THE  
INFINITIVE MOOD —

A fine di,	in order to.	Per tema di,	} for fear of
Avanti di	before.	Per paura di,	
A condizione di,	on condition of.	A meno di,	unless
Con patto di,		Lungi dal,	far from

§ 2 ON INTERJECTIONS.

949. Besides the interjections *ah!* *oh!* which in Italian, as in most languages, indicate almost any sudden emotion of the mind, the following are the principal Italian interjections —

950 ADMIRATION.

Buono!	good!
Capperi! Affè!	I say!
Bene! Bravo!	well done!
Bis!	encore!
Viva! Evviva!	hurrah!

954 GRIEF AND SURPRISE

Ahi! Ahi! lasso!	ay! oh dear!
Aimè! Oimè!	oh me!
Lasso! Lasso me!	alas!
Che peccato!	what a pity!
Povero me!	poor me!
O cielo!	O heavens!

951. ENCOURAGEMENT

Su! Via! Suvvia!	come now!
Animo! Coraggio!	courage!

955 AVERSION AND INDIGNATION.

Ma che!	nonsense!
Le zucche!	twice! not I!
Via! Oibò!	pshaw! fie!
Vergogna!	for shame!

952 ENTREATY

Deh! Di grazia!	pray!
Mercè!	mercy!

953 WARNING.

Guai a voi!	woe to you!
Badate!	take care!
Piano! Adagio!	softly!

956. CALLING AND SILENCING

Ehi! Qlà! St!	oh hey! st!
Silenzio!	silence!
Zitto! Cheto!	hush! be still!
Basta! Basta così!	enough!

957. \* The interjection “O !” is only used, before a noun, in the lofty style ; it expresses different emotions of the mind. Ex

O crudel destino! O cruel destiny! O patria mia! O my country!

## EXERCISE LXXXVII.

The eagle rises above the clouds. The wise man acts according to (900) the dictates of reason. He has gone to America in spite of (900) the advice of his best friends. The fleet cannot sail on account of (930) contrary winds. On (298) that occasion he acted like a (925) hero. You were playing, instead of (900) studying. When I went out, I saw her leaning against the window. Here is Mrs. Pettegola, she comes to propose an arrangement between us two. What a bore! Why does she not mind her own affairs; she has nothing to do with this matter †. Margaret wrote me a line ‡ the day before yesterday, informing me of her intended departure for Venice, in a week (549), or ten days.

## EXERCISE LXXXVIII.

"About that time I walked out into the fields towards Bow. Here§ I met a poor man walking on the bank of the river." "On the fifteenth of May they were ten miles from Pekin. They had now|| been travelling for six months." The immediate loss of Constantinople may be ascribed (771) to the bullet, or arrow, which pierced the gauntlet of John Giustiniani. "Into the ecclesiastic federation our Saxon ancestors were admitted¶. A regular communication was opened between our shores and that part of Europe in which the traces of ancient power and policy were yet discernible." Courage! (951) soldiers, fear nothing (672). For shame! (955) said he, to insult a poor old man. Softly (953), do not fly into a passion. Pray! (952) do not make such a noise. We have arrived at the end of the grammar. Hurrah!

958 \* After the verbs "*vedere*," to see, and "*scorgere*," to perceive, the Past Participle is employed to describe a person or thing in a state. Ex.

L'ho veduta appoggiata alla finestra. I saw her leaning against the window.

959 † The expressions *to concern*, *to have something to do with the matter*, are translated into Italian by the verb "*entare*" and the adverb "*ci*," thus "Io c'entro," "tu c'entri," "egli c'entra," "noi c'entriamo," &c. *It concerns me*, &c.

960 ‡ *A line* in writing is translated by "*una riga*," *a line* made with a pencil, or a pen, by "*una linea*," and *a line* of poetry, by "*un verso*."

961 § When *here* is used in English instead of *this*, it must be translated into Italian by "*là*," *there*.

962 || When *now* is used in English instead of *then*, it must be translated into Italian by "*allora*," *then*.

963 ¶ In a case like this, when, in English there are several sentences containing verbs in the passive form, in Italian, each sentence should be given a different turn. In this particular case the first phrase should be translated as if it was, "Our Saxon ancestors were admitted into," &c. The second should be translated as if it was, "One opened (or established) a regular communication," &c. The third must be translated so as to introduce "*sì*," followed by the verb in the singular, or plural, according to rule 771.

## TRANSPOSITION OF WORDS IN ITALIAN SENTENCES

964. In Italian poetry, words are constantly transposed so as to add force, and impart harmony to the verses, but in modern Italian prose the words in sentences preserve, as a rule, the most simple and direct order, and are arranged in accordance with the rules explained in this grammar. In some cases, however, clearness, force, and fluency of diction are obtained by inverting the order of words † The following examples may be interesting and instructive to the student —

I “Salirono la scala Don Michele e Boscherino, e vennero alla camera dov'era il duca,” (D'AZZGLIO) *instead of* “Don Michele e Boscherino salirono la scala, &c.,” *Don Michele and Boscherino mounted the stairs, and entered the room where the duke was.*

II. “Ventitrè o ventiquattro giorni stettero i nostri fuggitivi nel castello, in mezzo a un movimento continuo,” (MANZONI) *instead of* “I nostri fuggitivi stettero nel castello ventitrè o ventiquattro giorni, in mezzo a un movimento continuo,” *Our fugitives remained twenty-three or twenty-four days in the castle, in the midst of a general movement.*

III “Egli solo delle vostre ragioni e della mia fede potrà esser giudice,” (MONTI) *instead of* “Egli solo potrà esser giudice, &c.,” *He alone can be the judge of your reasons, and of my fidelity.*

IV. “Alle premure reiterate ed autorevoli, Caterina rispose sempre con un rifiuto,” (TOMMASIO) *instead of* “Caterina rispose sempre con un rifiuto alle premure reiterate ed autorevoli,” *Catherine always answered with a refusal to the often repeated and authoritative entreaties*

V. “Ma a nessuno (dei forni) la gente accorse in numero tale da poter intender tutto,” (MANZONI) *instead of* “Ma la gente non accorse a nessuno, &c.,” *But to none (of the bakers' shops) did the people rush in sufficient numbers to be able to undertake everything*

VI “Fin qui può correre il mio servizio,” (MONTI) *instead of* “Il mio servizio può correre fin qui,” *Thus far my services may extend*

VII. “La fantasia si rifugiò fredda nella mia memoria,” (FOSCOLO) *instead of* “La fredda fantasia si rifugiò nella mia memoria,” *My fancy (imagination) shrank cold into my memory*

\* In Manzoni's celebrated novel “I Promessi Sposi,” which is the best written book in modern Italian, upwards of ninety sentences out of every hundred are written in direct syntax, entirely in harmony with modern thoughts and feelings.

† This matter belongs rather to rhetoric than to grammar, nevertheless it may be acceptable not to leave it wholly unnoticed here.

IDIOMS AND SAYINGS.

- |  |   |
|--|---|
| 1. Non veggo l'ora di parlargli.                   | I long to speak to him.                                 |
| 2. Costui è nato vestito.                          | That fellow was born with a silver spoon in his mouth.  |
| 3. Egli vuol salvar la capra e i cavoli.           | He wants to run with the hare and hunt with the hounds. |
| 4. Sfido io! sa ben condurre la sua barca.         | I rather think so, he can paddle his own canoes.        |
| 5. Oramai siamo a buon porto.                      | We are now out of danger.                               |
| 6. Non si può fare un buco nell'acqua.             | There's no washing the black-a-moor white.              |
| 7. Questo ragazzo ha il cuore in bocca.            | This boy is very sincere.                               |
| 8. Suo fratello non ha sale in zucca.              | His brother is weak-minded.                             |
| 9. Gli è venuto il grillo di viaggiare.            | He has taken <sup>the</sup> fancy to travel.            |
| 10. È come portar acqua al mare.                   | It is like carrying coals to Newcastle.                 |
| 11. Egli ha perduto la tramontana (or la bussola). | He is quite bewildered (or at his wit's end).           |
| 12. Ei cerca sempre il pelo nell'ovo.              | He is always very particular.                           |
| 13. Costui si compra brighe a denari contanti      | This man wants to get into trouble                      |
| 14. Parlatesul serio o per scherzo?                | Do you speak in earnest or in jest?                     |
| 15. Fare un viaggio e due servizi.                 | To kill two birds with one stone.                       |
| 16. Questo c'entra come il cavolo a merenda        | This is entirely beside the question.                   |

LITERAL TRANSLATION

- |  |   |
|--|---|
| 1 I do not see the hour of speaking to him                           | 8 His brother has no salt in his pumpkin (head)                   |
| 2 That fellow was born dressed                                       | 9 The grasshopper (whim) has come to him to travel                |
| 3 He wishes to save the goat and the cabbages                        | 11 He has lost the point marking north (or the mariner's compass) |
| 4 I challenge (any one to do better), he knows how to steer his boat | 12 He always looks for a hair in the egg.                         |
| 5 Now we are in a good harbour                                       | 13 This man buys troubles with cash                               |
| 6 One cannot make a hole in the water                                | 16 This enters in it like the cabbage in a picnic                 |
| 7. This boy has his heart in his mouth                               |   |



## IDIOMS AND SAYINGS.

- |   |   |
|---|---|
| 1. Ma sapete che ne va la vita ?                            | But do you know that life is at stake ?   |
| 2. Colui fa la gatta morta, ma è molto astuto               | That fellow looks as if butter would not melt in his mouth, but he is very astute |
| 3. Promette mari e monti, per tenermi a bocca dolce.        | He is very prodigal of promises with me, in order to keep me quiet.               |
| 4. Egli vuol vendere lucciole per lanterne.                 | He wants to make one believe that the moon is made of green cheese.               |
| Non posso trovare il bandolo della matassa                  | I cannot find the proper way.   |
| 6. I paperi voglono menar a ber le ochc                     | The goslings try to teach the ganders how to swim.                                |
| 7. Camminavano a braccetto                                  | They were walking arm-in-arm  |
| Non so cosa abbia nome.                                     | I don't know what his name is   |
| 9. La mia finestra dà sur un bellissimo giardino            | My window looks upon a beautiful garden   |
| 10. La collera ha la meglio della sua ragione               | Passion prevails over his reason.   |
| 11. Non li posso soffrire perchè lavorano sempre sott acqua | I cannot bear them because they always act in an underhand manner                 |
| 12. Essa rende sempre pane per focaccia                     | She always gives tit for tat  |
| 13. Il bosco si estende oltre il tiro dell'occhio           | The wood extends further than the eye can see                                     |
| 14. Egli s'intende di libri.                                | He is a good judge of books   |
| 15. Ma perchè la prende con me ?                            | Why do you find fault with me ?   |
| 16. Auguro a tutti felicissime feste e buon capo d'anno.    | I wish you all a merry Christmas and a happy new year.                            |

## LITERAL TRANSLATION

- |  |   |
|--|---|
| 1 But do you know that for it goes life (life is risked) | 10 Anger has the better over his reason "Sott'acqua" literally means <i>under water</i> |
| 2 That fellow shams the dead cat, but he is very astute  | 12 She always gives bread for bun   |
| 3 He promises seas and mountains to keep my mouth sweet  | 13 The wood extends beyond the reach of the eye   |
| 4 He wishes to sell glow-worms for lanterns              | 14 He understands books   |
| 5 I cannot find the end of the skein                     | 15 But why do you take (up) the matter with me ?  |
| 6. The goslings wish to lead the ganders to drink        | 16 I wish to all very happy feasts, and a good head of the year                         |

## ITALIAN PROVERBS.

- |  |  |
|--|--|
| 1. Volere, è potere.                               | Where there's a will, there's a way          |
| 2. A chi ha testa, non manca cappello.             | A good head is never in want of a hat.       |
| 3. Acqua cheta rovina i ponti.                     | Still waters run deep.                       |
| 4. Batti il ferro quand'è caldo.                   | Make hay while the sun shines                |
| 5. Buon principio è la metà dell' opera.           | Well begun is half-done.                     |
| 6. Chi è in difetto, è in sospetto.                | He that is in fault, is in suspicion.        |
| 7. Chi la dura, la vince                           | A mouse in time may cut a cable.             |
| 8. Chi parla semina, chi tace raccoglie.           | The talker sows, the listener reaps.         |
| 9. Chi troppo abbraccia, nulla stringe.            | Grasp all, lose all.                         |
| 10. Chi va piano, va sano                          | Slow and sure wins the race.                 |
| 11. Dal detto al fatto vi è gran tratto.           | Easier said than done.                       |
| 12. Dimmi con chi vai, e ti dirò chi sei.          | Birds of a feather flock together.           |
| 13. E meglio piegare che rompere.                  | Better bend than break.                      |
| 14. Meglio è finguello in man, che tordo in frasca | A bird in the hand is worth two in the bush. |
| 15. L'abito non fa il monaco                       | It is not the cowl that makes the friar.     |
| 16. La bella gabbia non nutre l'uccello            | The fine cage won't feed the bird.           |
| 17. Oro non è tutto quel che risplende             | All is not gold that glitters.               |
| 18. Non v'è rosa senza spina.                      | No rose without a thorn.                     |
| 19. Pietra mossa non fa musco.                     | A rolling stone gathers no moss.             |
| 20. Povertà non ha parenti.                        | Poverty has no kin.                          |
| 21. Patti chiari, amici cari.                      | Short reckonings make long friends           |
| 22. La fine corona l'opera                         | All's well that ends well.                   |

## LITERAL TRANSLATION

- |   |  |
|---|--|
| 2 He who has a (good) head, is never short of a hat | 10 He who goes slow, goes safe                                   |
| 3 Quiet water ruins bridges                         | 11 From the said to the done there is a great distance           |
| 7 He who persists, conquers                         | 12 Tell me whom you go with, and I will tell you who you are     |
| 8 He who sows, sows, he who listens, reaps          | 14 It is better a chick in the hand, than a thrush on the branch |
| 9 He who embraces (grasps) too much, grasps nothing | 21. Clear arrangements, dear friends                             |

## ENGLISH-ITALIAN DIALOGUES

(To be learnt by heart.)

- Good morning, how do you do? Buon giorno, come sta?\*
- Very well, thank you, madam, and how are you? Benissimo, signora, a' suoi comandi, e come sta lei?
- Pretty well, I have had a slight cold in my chest, but I am better now. Benino, ho avuto una lieve infreddatura di petto, ma oggi sto meglio.
- I am glad to see you well again. Godo di vederla ristabilita in salute.
- How is your brother? Come sta il suo signor fratello?
- He has been ill for some days; he has to keep his room. Da qualche giorno è ammalato, deve rimanere in camera.
- I am very sorry for that, I hope it is not anything serious. Me ne rincresce assai, amino credere che non sia cosa seria.
- I do not think so, it is only a slight illness. Credo di no, la è una leggera indisposizione.
- Pray take a seat, you are not in a hurry, are you? Saccomodi, la prego, non ha fretta, è vero?
- Oh no, I have nothing to do to-day, but to make a few calls. Oh no, non ho altra occupazione oggi che da fare alcune visite.
- Then you had better stay and have luncheon with me. Quand'è così, farà meglio di rimanere a fare una seconda colazione con me.
- I do not usually take luncheon so early, however to keep you company, I will eat a little. Non son solito di fare una seconda colazione così per tempo, però per farle compagnia, mangerò un boccone.
- Let us go into the dining room. Andiamo nella sala da pranzo.
- Pray be seated. Si segga qui, la prego.
- May I offer you some oysters? Posso offrirle delle ostriche?
- I will trouble you for a few. Ne accetterò qualcuna.
- Allow me to pour you out a glass of white wine. Lasci che le mesca un bicchiere di vino bianco.
- Give me very little, I am not accustomed to drink wine. Me ne dia ben poco, non ho l'abitudine di ber vino.
- Will you take a mutton chop, or some fowl? Preferisce una costoletta di castrato o del pollo?
- Thank you, I will take the wing or the leg of a fowl. Io ringrazio, mi favorisca un'ala od una coscia di pollo.

\* These Dialogues are intended as a *bonaparte* to speak Italian. They are all in the third person singular, because, as explained in rule 120 (page 19), of this grammar, that is the mode of address between people not intimately acquainted, wishing to show respect to each other.

Will you have any fruit ?  
No, thank you, I would rather  
have a small piece of cheese.

Do you take tea or coffee ?  
I do not take either in the  
middle of the day  
Well do as you like  
Now, if you like we will go out  
together.  
Very well, let us go.

Shall we go on foot or drive ?  
I should like to walk a little  
way, and then take a cab  
We can do that.  
It is cold to-day, is it not ?  
Yes, it is rather cold, but the  
sky is clear.  
I prefer dry cold to damp un-  
healthy weather  
So do I, I hate rain, snow, and  
fog.  
I like when there is a hard frost,  
because I am very fond of  
skating.  
At what time must you be  
back to your hotel ?  
I should like to be in a little  
before dinner, so as to have  
time to dress

Then we had better take a  
cab  
I say, cabman, are you engaged ?  
No, sir.  
Very well, then, drive us to  
43, St. John's Street

How well you speak Italian,  
Miss Field, have you studied  
it long ?  
I do not know exactly, I think  
about two years

Vuol prendere un po' di frutta ?  
No, la ringrazio, preferirei un  
bocconcino di formaggio (or  
cacio)  
Beve tè o caffè ?  
Non bevo nè dell'uno nè dell'  
altro durante la giornata.  
Ebbene faccia a suo genio.  
Adesso se vuole usciremo in-  
sieme.  
Benissimo, usciamo.

Andremo a piedi o in vettura ?  
Amerei camminare un pochino  
e poi prendere un calèssino  
Ebbene si farà così.  
Fa freddo oggi, non è vero ?  
Anzi che no, ma però il cielo è  
sereno.  
Preferisco un freddo secco ad un  
tempo umido e malsano.  
Ed io pure, detesto la pioggia,  
la neve e la nebbia  
Amo quando c'è ghiaccio sull'  
acqua, perchè mi piace molto  
pattinare.  
A che ora deve ritornare al suo  
albergo ?  
M'aggradirebbe d'esser di ritor-  
no un po' prima dell'ora del  
pranzo, per aver tempo di  
cambiar vestito.  
In questo caso sarà meglio di  
prendere un cabriolet.  
Eh ! cocchiere siete impegnato ?  
No, signore  
Va bene, guidate (portateci) Via  
San Giovanni, No. 43.

Come parla bene l'italiano, Signo-  
rina Field, è molto tempo che  
lo studia ?  
Non me ne rammento precisa-  
mente, da circa due anni

Have you ever been to Italy ?  
No, I have never been there  
Really ? I have been there  
three times, and yet I cannot  
speak Italian as correctly  
as you do

That is because you do not  
study it, you cannot learn  
a foreign language without  
studying it

Have you taken many lessons ?

Yes, I take two lessons regularly  
every week

Have you read many Italian  
books ?

Yes, I have read three novels,  
about half of the "Divina  
Commedia," also "Saul,"  
by Alfieri, several comedies,  
and the lyrics of Leopardi.

Which is the most interesting  
of the Italian books you have  
read ?

Dante, of course, and of  
modern books, "I Promessi  
Sposi" is the one I care  
most for.

Do you intend to visit Italy ?

Indeed I do, I intend to go  
there next spring

I wish you would allow me to  
accompany you.

I shall be very pleased, we  
will start together next  
March, if all goes well

Very well, that is settled,  
goodbye

Well, did you go to Mr Well's  
concert, last night ?

Yes, I did, and I liked it very  
much

Were there many people ?

Yes, the place was crowded

Who were the performers ?

E ella mai stata in Italia ?

No, non vi sono mai stata.

Davvero ? Io vi sono stata tre  
volte, eppure non so parlare  
italiano così correttamente  
come lei

Ciò è perché non lo studia, non  
si può imparare una lingua  
straniera senza studiarla sul  
serio

Ha prese molte lezioni ?

Sì, ho lezione regolarmente due  
volte la settimana

Ha ella letti molti libri italiani ?

Sì, ho letto tre romanzi, la  
metà della "Divina Com-  
media," anche "il Saul,"  
dell'Alfieri, parecchie commedie,  
e le liriche del Leopardi

Qual'è il più interessante dei  
libri italiani che ha letti ?

Dante, non occorre dirlo, e dei  
libri moderni preferisco "I  
Promessi Sposi" a tutti gli  
altri

Ha l'intenzione di veder l'Italia ?

Altroché ! faccio i conti di an-  
darvi la primavera prossima

Vorrei ch'ella mi permettesse  
d'accompagnarla.

Ne sarò contentissima, partire-  
mo insieme il prossimo marzo,  
se non accadon disgrazie

Benissimo, siamo d'accordo,  
addio.

Ebbene, andò ella al concerto  
del Signor Well, ieri sera ?

Sì, v'andai, e mi piacque assai.

C'erano molte persone ?

Sì, un vero formicolaio.

Chi vi si produsse ?

There were many *artistes*, but the most distinguished was the celebrated pianist Brook. Well, is the *artiste* really deserving of his great reputation?

Yes, I think so. He can draw from the piano the most exquisite sounds, and his execution is full of expression and grace.

Did the performance consist of instrumental music only?

Oh no, there was plenty of vocal music.

Miss Moretti sang a beautiful duet with Mr. Barnott.

What sort of voices have they?

Miss Moretti has a powerful and thrilling soprano voice, and she can make it very soft and melodious.

Mr. Barnott has a fine tenor voice, I have heard him several times, he is our best tenor.

His voice is not very powerful, but it is clear and very sympathetic.

Was the orchestra well managed?

As well as it could be, let it suffice to say that it was conducted by Mr. Warbling.

I see that you are, like myself, passionately fond of music.

I am indeed, I think it the best recreation we can enjoy.

What o'clock is it, Mr. Trench?

It is a quarter past eight.

Have you had your breakfast?

No, I have only just got up.

When do you take your meals?

C'erano molti virtuosi, ma il più distinto era il celebre pianista Brook.

Or bene, questo virtuoso merita veramente la grande riputazione che gode?

Credo di sì. Egli sa cavare dal pianoforte suoni tali che incantano, e la sua esecuzione è oltre modo espressiva e graziosa.

Fu eseguita soltanto musica strumentale?

Oh no, la musica vocale non venne dimenticata.

La Signorina Moretti cantò un bel duetto col Signor Barnott.

Che voce hanno?

La Signorina Moretti ha una voce di soprano, forte e vibrata, e sa renderla dolcissima ed armoniosa.

Il Signor Barnott ha una bellissima voce di tenore, l'ho sentito cantare parecchie volte, è il miglior tenore che abbiamo.

La sua voce non è molto forte, ma è chiara e assai simpatica.

Era ben condotta l'orchestra?

Non si poteva meglio, basti dire che ne era conduttore il Signor Warbling.

Veggio che lei, al par di me, è amatissima della musica.

Lo sono davvero, credo che sia il miglior divertimento che ci sia dato di godere.

Che ora è, Signor Trench?

Sono le otto e un quarto.

Ha fatto colazione?

No, mi sono appena alzato.

A che ora fa i suoi pasti?

We breakfast at nine, luncheon at half past one, and dine at six o'clock.

What are you going to do before breakfast?

I am going to write a letter to my uncle

Do you write with steel pens or quills?

I always write with steel pens, I am so accustomed to write with them that I can scarcely write with any others

Have you got a sheet of blotting paper to lend me?

Yes, here is some, but it is not of very good quality.

To complete my obligation to you, sell me a postage-stamp.

Here it is, I give it to you, but will not sell it to you

Waiter, run and take this letter to the post

Facciamo colazione alle nove, la seconda colazione a un'ora e mezzo, e pranziamo alle sei.

Di che cosa si occuperà prima di far colazione?

Voglio scrivere una lettera a mio zio

Scrivo con penne metalliche, o con penne d'oca?

Scrivo sempre con penne metalliche, ho tant'abitudine di servirmene, che con altre penne non so quasi più scrivere.

Avrebbe un foglio di carta sugante da prestarci?

Sì, eccogliene, ma non è di eccellente qualità

Perchè le sia vieppiù obbligato, mi venda un francobollo.

Eccogliene uno, glielo do, ma non voglio venderglielo

Garzone, correte presto ad impostare questa lettera

Do you draw, Miss Barretti?

Yes, a little, I am only a beginner, but I am very fond of it.

Do you draw from copies or from nature?

As yet I only draw from copies, but I long to copy from nature

Have you been to the Royal Academy, this year?

Yes, I went there last Monday

Well, what do you think of it?

It is a very fine exhibition, much more interesting than that of last year

Have you seen the New Gallery in Regent Street?

Yes, I have, I think it excellent.

Ella disegna, Signorina Barretti?

Sì, un pochino, sono una principiante sa, ma mi piace tanto

Copia da modelli o dalla natura?

Finora copio soltanto da modelli, ma non veggio l'ora di poter ritrarre dalla natura.

È ella stata a vedere l'esposizione dei quadri all'Accademia Reale, quest'anno?

Sì, v'andai lunedì scorso.

Ebbene, che gliene pare?

E una bellissima esposizione; molto più interessante che quella dell'anno scorso.

Ha visitata la Galleria Nuova nella strada del Reggente?

Sì, l'ho visitata, mi pare eccellente

As you take an interest in art, allow me, Miss Barretti, to introduce to you an intimate friend of mine, Mr. Trivelli.

How do you do, I am very happy to make your acquaintance

You are very kind

Is this the first time you have been in England?

No, I came here in 1891, to see the Naval Exhibition

How do you like England?

I like it very much, except the climate however, which at times is really very bad.

Siccome ella si occupa di belle arti, mi permetta, Signorina Barretti, di presentarle un mio intimo amico, il Signor Trivelli.

La riverisco, ho molto caro di fare la sua conoscenza.

Ella è molto cortese.

E questa la prima volta che viene in Inghilterra?

No, ci venni nel 1891, per veder l'Esposizione Navale.

Come le piace l'Inghilterra?

Mi piace moltissimo, ma non il clima, però, che qualche volta è veramente cattivo

How happy I am to see you, Miss Vestri, where have you been all this time?

I have been out of town with my family, we have been to the sea-side

You look very well, and how are you all?

We are all very well, thank you, except Mary, she sprained her ankle, just before we left Folkestone

Oh that is where you have been, it is a pretty place, is it not?

Beautiful, the air is very good, and the place has not become common yet

I am very glad to hear that, because we ourselves intend to go there next month

Oh, if that is the case, you had better call on me one day next week, and then I will tell you all about the place.

Very well, I will, let us say on Thursday Goodbye, for the present

Oh come sono lieta di vederla Signorina Vestri; dov'è ella stata dacchè non l'ho veduta?

Sono stata fuori di città con tutti i miei, siamo stati ai bagni di mare

Che bella città ha, e come stanno tutti i suoi?

Stiamo tutti in ottima salute, la ringrazio, tienne Maria che si è slogato un piede, appunto quando si lasciava Folkestone.

Oh sono stati là, è un bel sito, non è vero?

Bellissimo, l'aria è saluberrima, e quel paese non è ancora divenuto volgare

Son ben contenta d'udir ciò, perchè noi abbiamo l'intenzione d'andarvi il mese prossimo.

Oh, quand'è così venga da me qualche giorno della settimana prossima, e allora le dirò quanto mi sappia del luogo.

Benissimo non mancherò di venirvi, sia deciso per giovedì. Per ora, Addio



## TITLES AND EXPRESSIONS USED IN WRITING LETTERS IN ITALIAN

IN WRITING TO MINISTERS, (MINISTRI DI STATO) AMBASSADORS, (AMBASCIATORI) GENERALS, (GENERALI DI ARMA) AND CHIEF MAGISTRATES —

**Commence**—*Illustrissimo ed Eccellentissimo Signore, or Eccellenza*

**In the body of the letter**—*Illustrissimo ed Eccellentissimo Signore, or Vostra Eccellenza*

**Conclude**—*Con sensi di più profondo ossequio sono —*

**Or** *Desiderando occasione per poterle dar prova della mia devozione, ho l'onore di presentarmi—*

**Or** *Preganola di consegnarmi la di Lei grazia, mi dico,  
Di Vostra Eccellenza,  
umilissimo e devotissimo servitore—\**

**Address**—*All' Illustrissimo ed Eccellentissimo Signore, il Signor, &c*

IN WRITING TO MARQUISSES, (MARCHESI) COUNTS, (CONTI) BARONS, (BARONI), KNIGHTS OF THE ORDERS, (CAVALIERI) AND JUDGES —

**Commence**—*Illustrissimo Signore*

**In the body of the letter**—*Illustrissimo Signore, or Vossignoria illustrissima*

**Conclude**—*Colla massima stima ho l'onore di segnarvi—*

**Or** *Ossequiandola distintamente, ho l'onore d'essere,  
Di Vossignoria illustrissima,  
umilissimo e devotissimo servo —*

**Address**—*All' Illustrissimo Signore,  
il Signor Marchese, &c*

IN WRITING TO DOCTORS, (DOTTORI, MEDICI) PROFESSORS, (PROFESSORI) AND ESQUIRS (SIGNORI) —

**Commence**—*Pregiatissimo, or Stimatissimo, or Onoratissimo Signore*

**In the body of the letter**—*Pregiatissimo, or Stimatissimo, or Onoratissimo Signore*

**Conclude**—*Sono e sarò sempre, con tutto l'animo, suo devotissimo ed obbligatissimo servitore —*

**Or** *Con sensi del più profondo rispetto (or della più profonda stima) sono di Lei devotissimo servo—*

**Or** *Mi creda sempre come sono e sarò di cuore, suo affezionatissimo amico—*

**Or** *Mi offro a servirle e mi ripeto di tutto cuore suo affezionatissimo servitore ed amico—*

**Or** *Gradisca i miei affettuosi saluti e mi creda suo devotissimo servo—*

**Or** *Facendole i miei cordiali saluti, me Le dico devotissimo servo ed amico—*

**Address**—*Al Riveritissimo, or Pregiatissimo Signor, &c*

---

\* In Italian the address of the writer and the date of a letter were formerly always written at the end of a letter except in commercial letters and sometimes in letters to familiar friends, but now a days many people write address and date at the top or at the end of letters, as they like

IN WRITING TO FRIENDS OF ALL RANKS

**Commence**—*Caro*, or *Carissimo amico* (or the name of the person, or his title).

**In the body of the letter**—*Ella, voi*, or *tu*

**Conclude**—*E salutandoti affettuosamente con sincera stima, sono suo devotissimo amico*—

**Or** *Vogliatemi bene e credetemi il vostro affezionatissimo amico*—

**Or** *Salutatemi caramente N N*, e se mi volete bene, abbracciate cara sopra tutto alla vostra salute Addio, addio di tutto cuore—

**Or** *Salutandoti di voi e sono tuo vero amico*

**Address**—*Allo Stimatissimo, or Onoratissimo Signor, &c \**

**N.B**—In writing to ladies the same regard must be paid to rank as is paid towards gentlemen

ECCLESIASTICAL DIGNITARIES

IN WRITING TO ARCHBISHOPS (ARCIVESCOVI), AND BISHOPS (VESCOVI) —

**Commence**—*Monsignore Illustrissimo e Reverendissimo †*

**In the body of the letter**—*Monsignore Illustrissimo e Reverendissimo*

**Conclude**—*Ossequiandola rispettosamente, Le bacio la mano*

*Di Vossignoria Illustrissima e Reverendissima,  
umilissimo e devotissimo servitore—*

**Address** *Al Illustrissimo e Reverendissimo Signore, or Monsignore, &c*

IN WRITING TO DEANS (DECANI), AND ARCHDEACONS (ARCIPRETI)

**Commence**—*Reverendissimo Signore*

**In the body of the letter**—*Vossignoria Reverendissima.*

**Conclude**—*Sono colla massima stima,*

*Di Vossignoria Reverendissima,  
ubbidientissimo servitore—*

**Address**—*Al Reverendissimo signore, &c*

TO CLERGYMEN

**Commence**—*Molto Reverendo Signore*

**In the body of the letter**—*Vossignoria Reverenda, or Molto Reverenda*

**Conclude**—*Sono col più profondo rispetto,*

*Di Vossignoria Reverenda,  
ubbidientissimo servitore, &c.*

**Address**—*Al Molto Reverendo Padre, or Signor e il Signor, &c*

\* In addressing persons who have distinguished themselves in their professions or arts often instead of *Pregatissimo, Stimabilissimo, &c*, the titles, *Egregio, Esimo, Chiarissimo*, are used

† *Illmo, Illma, Revmo, Revma, V S, Pregiato, Stimato, Onorato, Umilmo, Devmo, Obbligmo, Sig* are written instead of *Illustrissimo, Reverendissimo, Pregatissimo, Vossignoria, or Vostia Signoria, &c*, but to write the title in full is an additional mark of respect

## A GUIDE TO ITALIAN COMPOSITION.

*Note.—The translations of the words occurring in these extracts, not given in the foot notes, are to be found in the English-Italian Vocabulary, beginning at page 246 of this grammar.*

## THE CONJUGATING DUTCHMAN.

Two Italian (468) gentlemen once stepped (entered) into a coffee-house in (di) Paris, where they observed a tall, odd-looking (a) man, who appeared not to be a native (b), sitting (seated) at one of the tables, and looking around with the most stone-like gravity of countenance upon every object (c) Soon after the two Italians had entered (832), one of them told the other that a celebrated dwarf had arrived in (207) Paris At this (d), the grave-looking personage above mentioned (e) opened his mouth (705) and said

"I arrive, thou arrivest, he arrives, we arrive, you arrive, they arrive "

The Italian, whose (625) remark (word) seemed to have suggested this mysterious speech, stepped up to (f) the stranger and asked, "Did you speak (do you speak) to me (210), sir ? "

"I speak," replied the stranger, "thou speakest, he speaks, we speak, you speak, they speak "

"How is this ? " (g) said the Italian much astonished; "do you mean (h) to insult me ? "

The other replied, "I insult, thou insultest, he insults, we insult, you insult, they insult "

\* "L'Olandese smasioso di coniugare "

(a) di strano aspetto  
(b) che pareva straniero

(c) "and looking " e  
che guardava ogni oggetto  
colla massima impassibilità  
(d) All'udir ciò

(e) prefato -  
(f) si mosse verso  
(g) "Che vuol dir ciò?"  
(h) "avreste l'intenzione" (rule 119)

"This is too much!" (a) said the enraged Italian. "I will have satisfaction!" (b) If you have any spirit with your rudeness (c), come along (come) with me "

To this defiance the stranger replied, "I come, thou comest, he comes, we come, you come, they come," and thereupon (d) he rose with great coolness (calm), and followed his challenger (e).

In those days, when every gentleman wore (the) a sword, duels were speedily despatched (771) (f) They went into a neighbouring alley, and the Italian, unsheathing (834) his weapon, said to his antagonist, "Now, sir, you must fight me" (g).

"I fight," replied the other, "thou fighest, he fights, we fight (here he made a thrust) (h), you fight, they fight" (and here he charmed his antagonist).

"Well," said the Italian, "you have the best of it (i), and I hope (868, 636) you are satisfied "

"I am satisfied," said the original, "thou art satisfied, he is satisfied, we are satisfied, you are satisfied, they are satisfied."

"I am glad (836, 'j) everybody is satisfied," said the Italian, "but pray leave off quizzing me (j) in this strange manner, and tell me what is your object, if you have any, in doing it" (k).

The grave gentleman now, for the first time, became intelligible.

"I am a (354) Dutchman," said he, "and am learning your language. I find it (763) very difficult to remember the peculiarities of the verbs, and my tutor has advised me, in order to fix them in my mind (l), to conjugate every Italian verb that I hear spoken (m). This I have made it a rule to do (n) I don't like to have my plans broken in upon (o) while they are in operation, or I would have told you this before "

- |  |  |  |
|--|--|--|
| (a) "Ciò è troppo "                                  | (g) "bisogna battersi in                       | uno, agisce così "                     |
| (b) "Me ne darete ragione "                          | duello meco "                                  | (l) se voglio fissarmi in              |
| (c) "Se avete cuore che basti alla vostra rozzezza " | (h) lanciò una botta.                          | bene in mente                          |
| (d) così dicendo                                     | (i) "mi do per vinto "                         | (m) che sento pronunciare              |
| (e) colui che l'aveva sfidato                        | (j) "non si faccia più beffe di me, la prego " | (rule 690)                             |
| (f) si decidevano presto                             | (rule 120)                                     | (n) "a questa regola aderisco sempre " |
|  | (k) "what is your "                            | (o) Non amo che si con                 |
|  | quale scopo, se pur ne ha                      | travenga ai miei disegni "             |

The Italians laughed heartily at this explanation (p) and invited the conjugating Dutchman to dine with them.

"I will dine," replied he, "thou wilt dine, he will dine; we will dine, you will dine, they will dine, we will all dine together"

This they accordingly did (q), and it (r) was difficult to say whether the Dutchman ate or conjugated with more perseverance (s).

### A CLEVER RETORT

A friend of Dean Swift one day sent him (193) a turbot, as a present (a), by a servant lad (b) who had frequently been on similar errands (c), but who had never received the most trifling mark (d) of the Dean's generosity. Having gained admission (e), he opened (704) the door of the study, and abruptly putting down the fish, cried, very rudely, "Master has sent you (sends you) (120) a turbot" "Young man," said the Dean, rising from his easy chair, "is that the way you deliver your message? (f) Let me teach you better manners (g) sit down in my chair, we will change situations (character), and I will show you (118, 197) how to behave in future" (h) The boy sat down, and the Dean, going (834) to the door, came up to the table at a respectful pace, and making a low bow (i), said, "Sir, my master (146) presents his kind compliments (j), hopes (868) you are well, and requests your acceptance of (k) a small present" "Does he?" (l) replied the boy, "return him my best (m) thanks, and there's (n) half-a-crown for yourself" The Dean, thus drawn (o) into an act of generosity, laughed heartily, and gave the boy a crown for his wit.

- |  |   |   |
|--|---|---|
| (p) "The Italians laughed<br>Sentito lo schiarimento,<br>gl' Italiani scoppiarono nelle<br>risa                                | * "Arguta Risposta."<br>(a) "as a present,"<br>in regalo    | come si agisce meno villana-<br>mente           |
| (q) Il che fecero  | (b) ragazotto.  | (h) come dovresti com-<br>portarti all'avvenire |
| (r) "it," in cases like this,<br>is not translated   | (c) che aveva sovente<br>escogito simili ordini             | (i) profondo inchino                            |
| (s) "whether the Dutch-<br>man ate or conjugated" se<br>l'Olandese fosse più perse-<br>verante nel coniugare o nel<br>mangiare | (d) la minima prova<br>(e) Tosto che si trovò<br>nella casa | (j) "presents his" la<br>saluta caramente       |
|  | (f) così che escogitò<br>gli ordini che ti son dati?        | (k) la prega di accettare.                      |
|  | (g) Ti fu veder subito                                      | (l) "Davvero?"                                  |
|  |   | (m) ringrazialo pure da<br>parte mia            |
|  |   | (n) ecco. (o) spinto.                           |

## THE DERVIS.

A Dervis, travelling through (a) Tartary, having arrived (689) at the town of Balk, went (704) into the king's palace by mistake, thinking it to be (b) a public inn or caravansary. Having looked about him for (311) some time, he entered into (c) a long gallery, where he laid down his wallet and spread his carpet, in order to (932) repose himself upon it (d), after the manner of (e) the Eastern nations (468). He had not been long (f) in this posture before he was (g) discovered by some of the guards, who asked him what was his business (h) in that place? The Dervis told them (636) he intended (838, f) to take up his night's lodging (i) in that caravansary. The guards let him know (j), in a very angry manner (k), that the house he was in (l) was not a caravansary, but (m) the king's palace. It happened (n) that the king himself passed through the gallery during this debate (o), and smiling at (p) the mistake of the Dervis asked him how he could possibly be so dull as (q) not to distinguish a palace from a caravansary? "Sire," said the Dervis, "give me leave to ask your majesty (r) a question (306) or two. Who were the persons that lodged in this house when it was first built?" The king replied "My ancestors." "And who," said the Dervis, "was the last person that lodged here?" (s) The king replied, "My father." "And who is it," said the Dervis, "that lodges here at present?" The king told him that it was he himself (t). "And who," said the Dervis, "will be here after you (your Majesty) (563)?" The king answered, "The young prince, my son." "Ah! Sire," said the Dervis, "a house that changes its inhabitants so often (u) and receives such a perpetual succession of guests, is not a palace, but (m) a caravansary."—ADDISON.

---

* "Il Dervigio"	(h) ciò che veniva fare	(q) abbastanza stupido
(a) che viaggiava in	(i) d'alloggiarsi per la	per
(b) credendolo	notte	(r) mi sia permesso di
(c) infilo	(j) gli fecero sapere	fare a Vostra Maestà.
(d) "upon it" is not	(k) con gran collera	(s) "E chi fu l'ultimo
translated	(l) in cui si trovava	che vi ebbe alloggio?"
(e) alla moda di.	(m) ma bensì	(t) che vi alloggiava egli
(f) Non era stato guarì	(n) il caso volle	stesso
(g) "before he was," al-	(o) discussione	(u) che cambia così spes-
lorquando fu	(p) See p. 208, note (t)	so di abitanti.

RABELAIS A TRAITOR.<sup>1</sup>

This celebrated wit (a) was once at a great distance from Paris, and without money to bear his expenses thither (b). The ingenious author being sharp set (c), got together (d) a convenient quantity of brickdust, and having disposed of it (e) into several papers (f), wrote upon one, *Poison for Monsieur* (g), upon a second, *Poison for the Dauphin* (h), and on a third, *Poison for the King*. Having made this provision for (i) the royal family of France, he laid his papers so that (j) the landlord, who was an inquisitive man and a good (faithful) subject, might get a sight of them (k). The plot succeeded as he desired (l), the host gave immediate intelligence to (m) the secretary of state. The secretary presently sent down (n) a special messenger, who brought up the traitor to court, and provided him, at the king's expense, with proper accommodation on the road (o). As soon as he appeared, he was known to be (p) the celebrated Rabelais, and his powder, upon examination, (q) being found very innocent, the jest was only laughed at (r), for which a less eminent droll would have been sent to the galleys — BUDGELL.

## THE CUNNING CUTLER.

There is (154) in London, at a place called Charing Cross, a very fine statue in bronze of Charles the First (543) on horseback (a). After the revolution and the decapitation of that monarch, the statue was taken down (b) and sold to a cutler who undertook to demolish it. He immediately manufactured great numbers

- |  |   |  |
|--|---|--|
| * "Rabelais Colpevole di Lesa Maestà"                                  | (h) A title given to the eldest son of the king of France | (o) "and provided him" facendogli dare sulla via, a spese del re, alloggio e vitto |
| (a) bell ingegno   | (i) Avendo provveduto così a' bisogni di                  | (p) riconobbero esser lui  |
| (b) "to bear his" pagar le sue spese, fin la                           | (j) in modo tale che.                                     | (q) analisi fatta  |
| (c) ridotto all'ultima risorsa   | (k) potesse vederli                                       | (r) non si fece che ridere della burla.  |
| (d) raccolse   | (l) come lo desiderava                                    | * "Il Sagace Coltellinaio"   |
| (e) mescolata (rule 689)   | (notice the pronoun "lo" referring to plot)               | (a) a cavallo.   |
| (f) "papers," involtini  | (m) ne avvertì immediatamente                             | (b) si tirò giù la statua  |
| (g) A title given to the eldest of the brothers of the kings of France | (n) spedì subito  |  |

(quantity) of knives and forks with bronze handles, and exposed them (c) in his shop as the produce of the statue which was supposed (771) to have been melted. They were so rapidly bought, (d) both by (e) the friends and the enemies of the late monarch, that the cutler soon made a (360) fortune and retired from business

Soon after the restoration it was proposed (771) to erect a new statue to the memory of the unfortunate king, the cutler hearing of this, (834) informed the government that he could spare them (456) the trouble and expense of casting a statue, as the old one (f) was yet in his possession, and that he would sell it to them (456) at a moderate price. The bargain (affair) was concluded (771), and the statue, which he had secretly preserved, was re-elevated (705) (g) on the pedestal at Charing Cross, where it now stands (h).

(i h )

### THE MONKEY AND THE TWO CATS.\*

Two cats, having stolen some cheese, could not agree (842, g) about dividing their prize (a). In order, therefore, to settle the dispute (b), they consented to refer the matter (c) to a monkey. The proposed arbitrator very readily (d) accepted the office, and, producing (taking) a balance, put a part (bit) into each scale. "Let me see," said he, "ay! this lump outweighs (e) the other," and immediately he bit off a considerable piece (f) "in order to reduce it," he observed, "to an equilibrium" (g). The opposite scale had now become the heavier, which (628) afforded our conscientious judge an additional (other) reason for a second mouthful. "Hold! hold!" (h) said the two cats, who began to be alarmed for the result (i), "give us our respective shares (j) and

c) li mise in mostra nella  
sua bottega dicen-  
doli fatti col bronzo  
(d) ebbero tale smercio  
(e) "by" is translated by "c"  
(f) stante che la vecchia  
(g) posta di bel nuovo  
(h) si vede tuttora

\* "La Scimia e i  
due Gatti"  
(a) quanto al modo di  
dividere il bottino  
(b) "In order" "Quin-  
di per decidere la lite  
(c) sottomettere il caso.  
(d) con gran premura

(e) pesa più che  
(f) ne levò co'denti un  
buon boccone.  
(g) "in order" per ista-  
bilire, disse, l'equilibrio  
(h) basta! basta!  
(i) temerne il risultato  
(j) dacci la nostra parte



we are satisfied " "If you are satisfied," returned (j) the monkey, justice is not (k), a case of this intricate nature is by no means (l) so soon determined " Upon this (m) he continued to nibble first at one piece and then the other, till the poor cats, seeing (834) their cheese gradually diminishing (314), entreated him to give himself no further trouble, but deliver (restore) to them what remained "Not so fast, I beseech you, friends," replied the monkey, "we owe justice to ourselves as well as (n) to you what remains is due to me in right of my office " Upon which (m) he crammed the whole into his mouth, (o) (572) and with great gravity dismissed the court (p) —DODSLEY.

### CURIOUS EXPEDIENT

Two Irishmen, blacksmiths by trade (857, k) went to Jamaica. Finding soon after their arrival, that they could do nothing without money to begin with (a), but that, with sixty or seventy pounds and industry, they might be able to do some business, they hit upon (b) the following ingenious expedient

One of them made the other black (blackened) from head to foot. This being done (c), he took him to one of the negro-dealers, who, after viewing (834) and approving his stout, athletic appearance, made a bargain (d) to pay eighty pounds for (251) him and prided himself on (845, g) the purchase, supposing him to be (e) one of the finest negroes on the island. The same evening this newly manufactured negro (f) made off to (g) his countryman, washed himself clean, and resumed his former appearance. Rewards were in vain offered in hand bills (h), pursuit was eluded, and discovery, by care and caution, was made impossible (i).

(j) rispose	"Curioso Spediente."	(g) scappò e andò dal
(k) non lo è	(a) per cominciare	(h) avvisò al pubblico
(l) "by no " punto	(b) immaginarono	(i) Turn "pursuit "
(m) Detto ciò	(c) Ciò fatto	"they eluded pursuit; and
(n) non meno che	(d) convenne	with care and caution made
(o) si ficcò il resto	(e) credendo che fosse	it impossible that any one
(p) finì l'udienza.	(f) negro improvvisato	should discover them "

The two Irishmen with the money commenced business (j), and succeeded (258) so well, that they returned to England with a fortune of several thousand (migliaia di) pounds (656). Previous however to their departure from the island (k), they went to the gentleman from whom they had received the money, recalled the circumstances of the negro to his recollection (l), and made amends, both for principal and interest, with thanks (m). (‘ ‘ \*)

### NAPOLEON AND THE BRITISH SAILOR.\*

Whilst the French troops were encamped at Boulogne, public attention was much excited by (270) the daring attempt at escape (a) made by an English sailor. This person (man) having escaped (689) from the dépôt and gained (b) the borders of the sea, the woods near which served him for concealment (c), constructed, (704), with no other instrument than a knife, a boat entirely of the bark of trees. When the weather was fair (853), he mounted (d) (697) a tree and looked out for (e) the English flag; and having at last observed (discovered) (689) a British cruiser, he ran to the shore with his boat on his back, and was about (842, p) to trust himself in his frail vessel to the waves, when he was (705) pursued, arrested, and loaded with chains. Everybody in the army was anxious (desired) (300) to see the boat, and Napoleon, having at length heard of the affair (f), sent for (g) the sailor and interrogated him. “You must” (h), said Napoleon, “have had a great desire

- |                            |                            |                          |                  |
|----------------------------|----------------------------|--------------------------|------------------|
| (j) si misero a negoziare  | ” “thanked him, paying     | diglio                   | (d) Add “su di.” |
| (k) “Previous ” Però       | him capital and interest ” | (e) guardava se potesse  |                  |
| prima di lasciar l’isola ” | ” “Napoleone e il          | vedere                   |                  |
| (l) “recalled ” “gli       | Marinaro Inglese ”         | (f) “having ” sentito    |                  |
| rammentarono l’affare del  | (a) audace tentativo di    | parlare dell’accaduto.   |                  |
| negro ”                    | evadersi (b) pervenuto     | (g) mandò a chiamare.    |                  |
| (m) Turn “made amends      | (c) servivano di nascon    | (h) Dovete, ne son certo |                  |

to see your country again, since you could resolve (i) to trust yourself on the open (full) sea in so frail a bark. I suppose you have left a sweetheart there ?" (239) "No," said the sailor, "but a poor infirm mother, whom I was (695) anxious (I desired) to see" "And you shall see her," said Napoleon, giving at the same time orders to set him at (j) liberty, and to bestow upon him (k) a considerable sum of money for his mother, observing that "she must be a good mother who had so good a (such a) son" ( ' ' )

### DESCRIPTION OF ENGLAND

Few countries exhibit a greater variety of surface than England, or have been more highly favoured by (270) nature "Although," says Dr. Aikin, "its features are moulded on a comparatively minute scale (a), they are marked with all the agreeable interchange (varieties) which constitute picturesque beauty In some parts, plains clothed in (covered of) the richest verdure, watered by copious streams, and pasturing innumerable cattle, extend as far as the eye can reach (b), in others (c) gently rising hills (d) and bending vales (e), fertile in corn (f), waving with woods (g), and interspersed with (266) flowery meadows, offer the most delightful landscapes of rural opulence and beauty Some tracts furnish (offer) prospects of the more romantic and impressive kind, lofty mountains, craggy rocks, deep dells, narrow ravines, and tumbling (precipitous) torrents nor are there wanting, as a contrast to (h) those scenes in which every variety of nature is a different charm, the vicissitude of (i) black barren moors and wide inanimated heaths." Such is (j) a vivid description of the general appearance of England. But the beauty and fertility of the country are not the only things to excite (which excite) admiration. The mild-

(i) v è bastato il cuore	colà proporzione.	mento in abbondanza
(j) metterlo in	(h) fin dove può giun-	(g) coperti di boschi on-
(k) e di dargli.	ger l'occhio	deggianti.
* "Descrizione dell'	(c) altrove	(h) "nor are there " nè
Inghilterra "	(d) collinette a dolce	manicavi, come per far risal-
(a) "its features " le	clivo.	tare.
sue prospettive non siano	(e) valloncelli tortuosi.	(i) l'aspetto vicendevole
relativamente che di più	(f) che producono fru-	di (j) Fcco.

ness of the climate, removed alike from the extremes of heat and cold (j), the multitude of rivers, their (560) depth, and the facility they afford to internal navigation, the vast beds of coal and other valuable minerals hid under the surface (k), the abundance and excellence of the fish in the rivers and surrounding seas, the extent of sea-coast, the number, capaciousness (l), and safety of the ports and bays, and the favourable situation of the country for commerce, give (m) England (330) advantages that are not enjoyed in an equal degree by any other nation (n).—Dr. AIKEN and J. R. McCULLOCH.

### CHARACTER OF RICHARD I.

This renowned prince was (701) tall, strong, straight and well-proportioned. His arms were remarkably long, (574) his eyes blue, and full of vivacity, his hair was of a yellowish colour; his complexion fair (782), his countenance comely, and his air majestic. He was endowed with good natural understanding, his penetration was uncommon, he possessed a fund of manly eloquence, his conversation was spirited, and he was admired for his talents of repartee (a), as for his courage and ability in war, both Europe and Asia resound with his praise. The Saracens stilled their children with the terror of his name, and Saladine, who was an accomplished prince, admired his valour to such a degree of enthusiasm, that immediately after Richard had defeated (710) him on the plains of Joppa, he sent him a couple of fine Arabian horses, in token of his esteem, a (342) polite compliment, which Richard returned with magnificent presents. These are the shining parts (b) of his character, which, however, cannot dazzle the judicious observer so much, but that he may perceive a number of blemishes, which no historian has been able (c) to efface from the memory of this celebrated monarch. His ingratitude and want of filial affection are unpardonable. He was proud, haughty, ambitious, choleric, cruel, vindictive, and vicious, nothing could (794)

(j) "removed alike"  
né troppo freddo, né troppo  
caldo

(k) che il suolo nasconde.

(l) grandezza

(m) tutto ciò dà

(n) "that are not"  
di cui nessun'altra nazione  
gode al medesimo grado

(a) "for his talents of re-  
partee," per la sua arguzia.

(b) qualità ammirabili.

(c) "the judicious observer"  
un osservatore di senno  
al punto di nascondergli i  
suoi difetti, che niuno sto-  
rico ha saputo

equal his rapaciousness but his profusion, and, indeed, the one was the effect of the other, he was a tyrant to (d) his wife, as well as (e) to his people (456), who groaned under his taxations to such a degree, that (f) even the glory of his victories did not exempt him from their execrations in a word, he has been aptly compared to a lion, a species of animal which he resembled not only in courage, but likewise in ferocity —SMOLLETT

### WILLIAM PITT, EARL OF CHATHAM.

On the stage, Pitt would have been the finest Brutus or Coriolanus ever seen (a) His figure when (b) he first appeared in Parliament, was strikingly graceful and commanding, (c) his features high and noble, his eye full of fire. His voice, even when it sank to a whisper (d), was heard (771) to the remotest benches, and when he strained it to his full extent (e), the sound rose like the swell of the organ (f) of a great cathedral—shook the house with its peal (g)—and was heard through lobbies (h) and down staircases, to the Court of Requests and the precincts (i) of Westminster Hall. He cultivated all these eminent advantages with the most assiduous care. His action is described by a very malignant observer (j) as equal to that of Garrick. His play of countenance (k) was wonderful, he frequently disconcerted a hostile orator by a single glance of indignation or scorn. Every tone, from the impassioned cry (l) to the thrilling aside, was perfectly at his command. It is by no means improbable (m) that the pains which he took to improve his great personal advantages had in some respects a prejudicial operation, and tended to nourish in him that passion for theatrical effect which, as we have already remarked (n), was one of the most conspicuous blemishes (defects) in his character —MACAULAY.

- |                            |                            |                                |
|----------------------------|----------------------------|--------------------------------|
| (d) verso                  | (e) "he strained it"       | (k) l'espressione del suo      |
| (e) come pure              | quando se ne serviva a più | volto                          |
| (f) a segno tale che.      | non posso                  | (l) "Every tone"               |
| (a) che si vedesse mai     | (f) "like the swell of     | Tenevo in freno completo       |
| (b) Turn, "When he first   | the organ," come quello    | ogni emozione dell'animo;      |
| appeared his "             | dell'organo                | dal grido della passione, fino |
| (c) imponente              | (g) ne faceva tremare la   | all'aparte commovente          |
| (d) "even" persino         | sala del senato            | (m) Egli è probabile.          |
| quando parlava sotto voce. | (h) gallerie (i) circuito  | (n) Come si è già fatto        |
|                            | (j) critico ostile         | osservare                      |

## ITALIAN POETRY

## VERSES AND SYLLABLES.

Italian "versi" consist of a fixed number of syllables; and their expression and harmony depend on the words they contain, and the manner in which these words are arranged

In Italian a syllable in poetry is not exactly the same as a syllable in prose, often a syllable in a verse consists of two prose syllables pronounced together so as to require but one emission of the voice, for instance, the following verse, which contains seven prose syllables, is counted as a verse of five syllables.

Metrical Syllables      1            2      3      4      5  
 " Già il cielo indora" † (ZENO).  
 Prose Syllables      1      2      3      4      5      6      7

Italian verses have different names given them, according to the number of the syllables they contain.

## VERSI QUINARI.

Verses of five (metrical) syllables<sup>1</sup> are called "versi quinari." They have generally two rhythmical accents, one on the first, or second, and one (essential) on the fourth syllable

## LA MELANCONIA.

FONTI e colline§	Gli onor che sono ?
Chiesi agli dei	Che val ricchezza ?
M'udiro al fine,	Di miglior dono
Pago io vivrò	Vommene altier ¶
Nè mai quel fonte	D'un' alma pura,
Co' desir miei,	Che la bellezza
Nè mai quel monte	Della Natura
Trapasserò	Gusta e del Ver.

\* In these pages the word *verses* is used in the sense of *lines in poetry*. In Italian the word "versi" means *lines of poetry*

† "It (the dawn) already gilds the sky"

‡ There are Italian verses of four syllables, called "versi quadrisillabi," which, though not musical, when used alone, have a very pretty effect when they are judiciously mixed with verses of eight syllables (see "Riso di Bella Donna," page 241). There are also verses of three, or even two syllables, but these are very seldom used, except to versify short trifles, they are utterly unmusical

§ For translation see Italian-English Vocabulary (page 260)

|| "Udiro," poetical form for "udirone," they heard me (see rule 261)

¶ "Vommene" = "me ne vo," I am (see rule 194, and rules 218 and 245 r).

Nè può di tēpre\*  
 Cangiar mio fato,  
 Dipinto sēmpre  
 Il ciel sarà,  
 Ritornēranno  
 I fior nel prato  
 Sin che a me l'anno  
 Ritornērà.

Melanconia,  
 Ninfa gentile  
 La vita mia  
 Consegno a te :  
 I tuoi piaceri  
 Chi tiēne a vile  
 Ai piacer veri  
 Nato non è.

PINDEMONTE (1753-1828).

### VĒRSI SĒNARI.

Verses of six syllables are called "vĕrsi sĕnari." They have two rhythmical accents, one on the second and the other (essential) on the fifth syllable.

### A IMĒLDA.

Nell'ora pīetosa  
 Che assōnna ognī cura,  
 L'affanno sol dura  
 Che amore destò

Solingo, scorato,  
 Disotto al verone  
 D'Imelda sī poue  
 Sprezzato amator

Mentr ella tornata  
 Nell'ērma stanzetta  
 Le vēstī s' affrētta  
 Del ballo a spōghiar.

E a lei che disdegna  
 D'amor la parōla  
 Al suon di mandōla  
 Ei dice cōsī \*

Nell'ora pīetosa  
 Che addōrme ognī cura,  
 La pena sol dura  
 Che amore destò.

La notte serena  
 Che al sonno tī chiama,  
 Del giovin che t'ama  
 Raddoppia il sospir

Ah ! solo un istante  
 M'ascolta, ben mio,  
 Alonzo son io  
 Che il cōre perdè.

E tu che il rapivī,  
 Ô Imelda crudele,  
 D'Alonzo fedele  
 Non senti pietà ! \*

I. RICCIARDA CAPECELATRO (1800-1860?).

\*The student is again desired to read over rules 5, 9, 48, 53, and 63, in order to thoroughly understand the directions for the double pronunciation of the letters "L," "O," "S" and "Z," and the meaning of the letters in darker type.

## VERSI SETTENARI.

Verses of seven syllables are called "versi settenari." They have two or three rhythmical accents. When they have two accents, the first can be on any of the first four syllables, and the other (essential) on the sixth syllable, when they have three accents, one is on the first or second syllable, the other on the fourth, and the last (essential) on the sixth syllable.

## IL CINQUE MAGGIO.

Ei fu. Siccome immobile, |  
Dato il mortal sospiro, |  
Stette la spoglia immemore  
Orba di tanto spiro,  
Così percossa, attonita,  
La terra al nunzio sta, ‡

Lui sfolgorante in solio  
Vide il mio genio e tacque ;  
Quando, con vece assidua, ||  
Cadde, risorse e giacque,  
Di mille voci al sonito  
Mista la sua non ha

Muta pensando all'ultima  
Ora dell'uom fatale, §  
Nè sa quando una simile  
Orma di piè mortale  
La sua cruenta polvere  
A calpestar verrà

Vergin di servo encomio¶  
E di còrardo oltraggio,  
Sorge or commosso al subito  
Sparir di tanto raggio,  
E scioglie all'urna un cantico,  
Che forse non morrà.

\* This sublime ode, the best Italian lyric of modern times, was written by Manzoni in commemoration of the 5th of May, 1821, the day on which Napoleon I died at St Helena, where he had been kept a prisoner for six years. Manzoni, who had always kept aloof alike from the detractors and the flatterers of the great man, takes a rapid survey of the hero's life, but leaves it to posterity to judge, and, like a true Christian poet, kneels down at the death bed of the dying penitent, and prays

† Notice that this line consists of eight metrical syllables, because it ends with a "parola sdrucciola" (see rule 60), but still it is reckoned as a "verso settenario," for the reason that the last (essential) rhythmical accent falls upon the sixth syllable.

‡ Notice that this line consists of six metrical syllables only, because it ends with a "parola tronea" (see rule 62), but still it is reckoned as a "verso settenario," for the reason that the last (essential) rhythmical accent falls upon the sixth syllable.

§ "Fatale," *marked by fate* || "Vece assidua," *rapid vicissitudes (changes)*.

¶ "Vergin di servo encomio," *pure from servile flattery (praise)*



Dall' Alpi alle Piramidi,	Ei si nomò due secoli
Dal Mansanare al Reno, *	L'un contro l'altro armato,
Di quel sicuro il fulmine	Sommessi a lui si volsero *
Tenea dietro al baleno, †	Come aspettando il fato ;
Scoppiò da Scilla al Tanai, ‡	Ei fe' silenzio, ed arbitro
Dall'uno all'altro mar	S'assise in mezzo a lor.

Fu vera gloria ? Ai posteri	Ei sparve, e i dì nell'ozio
L'ardua sentenza nui §	Chiuse in sì breve sponda, ¶
Chiniam la fronte al Massimo	Segno d'immensa invidia,
Fattor, che volle in lui	E di pietà profonda,
Del creator suo spirto	D'inestinguibil odio
Più vasta orma stampar	E d'indomato amor.

La procellosa e trepida	Come sul capo al naufrago
Gioia d'un gran disegno,	L'onda s'avvolge e pesa,
L'ansia d'un cor che indocile	L'onda, su cui del misero,
Ferve, pensando al regno,	Alta pur dianzi e tesa,
E il giunge, e ottiene un premio	Scorrea la vista a scernere
Ch'era follia sperar,	Prode remote invan,

Tutto ei provò. la gloria	Tal su quell' alma il cumulo
Maggior dopo il periglio,	Delle memorie scese †
La fuga e la vittoria,	Oh † quante volte ai posteri
La reggia e il tristo esiglio	Narrar sè stesso imprese,
Due volte nella polvere, ¶	E sull'eterne pagine
Due volte sull'altar.	Cadde la stanca man †

\* From the Mansanare (a small river near Madrid) to the Rhine

† This bold image means "The thunderbolt (fulmine) of that fearless man (Napoleon) followed quickly its flash (baleno)", &c, He no sooner appeared on the battle-field than he smote down his enemies

‡ From Scylla (a famous rock in the Strait of Messina) to the River Don

§ "Nui" is used, as a poetical licence, instead of "noi"

¶ "Due volte," an allusion to Napoleon's exile at Elba, and at St. Helena.

¶ "In sì breve sponda," on so narrow a shore (St. Helena)

Oh quante volte al tacito  
 Morir di un giorno merte,  
 Chinati i rai fulminci,  
 Le braccia al sen conserte,  
 Stette, e dei dì che furono  
 L'assalse il sovvenir !

E ripensò le mobili  
 Tende, e i percossi valli,  
 E il lampo de' manipoli  
 E l'onda dei cavalli,  
 E il concitato imperio,  
 E il celere obbedir.

Ahi ! forse a tanto strazio  
 Cadde lo spirito anelo,  
 E disperò, ma valida  
 Venne una man dal cielo  
 E in più spirabil aere  
 Pietosa il trasportò,

#### IL POTERE DI DIO.

Dovunque il guardo io giro,  
 Immenso Dio ti vedo  
 Nell'opre tue t'ammiro,  
 Ti riconosco in me

La terra, il mar, le sfere  
 Parlan del tuo potere  
 Tu sei per tutto, e noi  
 Tutti viviamo in te.

E l'avviò per floridi  
 Sentier della speranza,  
 Ai campi eterni, al premio  
 Che i desideri avanza,\*  
 Dov'è silenzio e tenebre  
 La gloria che passò.

Bella immortal ! benefica  
 Fede ai trionfi avvezza !  
 Scrivi ancor questo, allegrati ;  
 Chè più superba altezza  
 Al disonor del Golgota†  
 Giammai non si chinò.

Tu dalle stanche ceneri  
 Sperdi ogni ria parola  
 Il Dio che atterra e suscita,  
 Che affanna e che consola,  
 Sulla deserta coltrice  
 Accanto a lui posò.

MANZONI (1785-1873).

#### LA GRATITUDINE.

Benchè di senso privo,  
 Fin l'arboscello è grato  
 A quell'annico rivo,  
 Da cui riceve umor,

Per lui di fronde ornato,  
 Bella mercè gli rende,  
 Quando dal sol difende  
 Il suo benefattor

METASTASIO (1698-1782).

\* *Exceeds all desires*

† "Al disonor del Golgota," *to the disgrace of Calvary*, which by Christ's death became a sign of salvation — an allusion to the Crucifix which Napoleon held in his hand on his death bed

## VERSI OTTONARI.

Verses of eight syllables are called "versi ottonari." They can have only two accents; one on the third and the other (essential) on the seventh syllable.

## LA RONDINELLA.

RONDINELLA pellegrina	Dove l'aria ancor m'è tolta,
Che ti posi in sul verone,	Donde a te la mia favella
Ricantando ogni mattina	Giunge appena, o rondinella.
Quella flebile canzone,	
Che vuoi dirmi in tua favella,	Il settembre innanzi viene,
Pellegrina rondinella ?	E a lasciarmi ti prepari
	Tu vedrai lontane arene,
Soltaria nell'oblio,	Nuovi monti, nuovi mari
Dal tuo sposo abbandonata,	Salutando in tua favella,
Piangi forse al pianto mio	Pellegrina rondinella
Vedovetta sconsolata ?	
Piangi, piangi in tua favella,	Ed io tutte le mattine
Pellegrina rondinella.	Riaprendo gli occhi al pianto
	Fra le nevi e fra le brine
Pur di me manco infelice	Crederò d'udir quel canto,
Tu alle penne almen t'affidi,	Onde par che in tua favella
Scorri il lago e la pendice,	Mi compiangi, ô rondinella
Empi l'aria de' tuoi gridi,	
Tutto il giorno in tua favella	Una croce a primavera
Lui chiamando, ô rondinella	Troverai su questo suolo
	Rondinella, in sulla sera
Oh se anch'io! Ma lo contende	Sovra lei raccogli il volo
Questa bassa, angusta volta,	Dimmi pace in tua favella,
Dove sole non risplende,	Pellegrina rondinella.

\* This very pretty song, a masterpiece of harmony and elegance, is taken from "Marco Visconti," a fine novel by Grossi (1800-1850). It is very popular in Italy, and has been set to music by several celebrated composers.

## RISO DI BELLA DONNA.

Se bel rio, se bell'auretta	Se giammai tra fior vermigh,
Tra l'erbetta	Se tra gigh
Sul mattin mormorando erra ;	Veste l'alba un aureo velo,
Se di fiori un praticello	E su rote di zaffiro
Si fa bello,	Move in giro,
Noi diciam ride la terra.	Noi diciam che ride il cielo.

Quando avvien che un zeffiretto	Ben è ver, quand'è giocondo
Per diletto	Ride il mondo ;
Bagni il piè nell'onde chiare,	Ride il ciel quand'è gioioso ,
Sicchè l'acqua in sull'arena	Ben è ver , ma non san poi.
Scherzi appena,	Come voi,
Noi diciam che ride il mare.	Fare un riso grazioso.

CHIABRERA (1552-1637).

## VERSI NOVENARI

Verses of nine syllables are called "versi novenari," but, as they are seldom used, they need not be illustrated.

## VERSI DECASILLABI.

Verses of ten syllables are called "versi decasillabi." They have three rhythmical accents, one on the third, one on the sixth, and the last (essential) on the ninth syllable.

## LA BATTAGLIA DI MACLODIO.\*

S'ode a destra uno squillo di tromba ,  
 A sinistra risponde uno squillo ;  
 D'ambo i lati calpesto rimbomba  
 Da cavalli e da fanti il terren.  
 Quindi spunta per l'aria un vessillo ;  
 Quindi un altro s'avanza spiegato :  
 Ecco appare un drappello schierato ;  
 Ecco un altro che incontro gli vien.

\* This masterly lyric is a part of the chorus in "Il Conte di Carmagnola," a fine tragedy by Manzoni. The great poet deplors the intestine warfare which desolate Italy in the Middle Ages, and, with words breathing the greatest humanity and purest patriotism, conjures his countrymen to keep friendly and united.

Già di mezzo sparito è il terreno ;  
 Già le spade respingon le spade ;  
 L'un dell'altro le immerge nel seno ,  
 Gronda il sangue, raddoppia il ferir.  
 Chi son essi ? Alle belle contrade  
 Qual ne venne straniero a far guerra ?  
 Qual è quei che ha giurato la terra  
 Dove nacque far salva, o morir ?

D'una terra son tutti , un linguaggio  
 Parlan tutti ; fratelli li dice  
 Lo straniero ' il comune lignaggio  
 A ognun d'essi dal volto traspar.  
 Questa terra fu a tutti nudrice,  
 Questa terra di sangue ora intrisa,  
 Che natura dall'altre ha divisa,  
 E recinta coll'Alpe e col mar.

Ahi ! qual d'essi il sacrilego brando  
 Trasse il primo il fratello a ferire ?  
 O terror ! del conflitto esecrando  
 La cagione esecranda qual'è ?—  
 Non la sanno a dar morte, a morire  
 Qui senz'ira ognun d'essi è venuto ;  
 E venduto ad un duce venduto,  
 Con lui pugna, e non chiede il perchè.

Ahi sventura ! Ma spose non hanno,  
 Non han madri gli stolti guerrieri ?  
 Perchè tutti i lor cari non vanno  
 Dall'ignobile campo a strappar ?  
 E i vegliardi, che ai casti pensieri  
 Della tomba già schiudon la mente,  
 Chè non tentan la turba furente  
 Con prudenti parole placar ?

. . . . .

MANZONI (1785-1873).

---

I very much regret to have no space here to print the whole of this splendid chorus, but I intend to republish it, in full, in my "Italian Reader." The poetry of Manzoni should be cherished by all who value heartfelt, religious, and patriotic sentiments expressed by a great poet.

## MESSINA

Chi non vide a marina Messina,  
 Mal può dir ch'egli vide beltà :  
 Di Triquetra è la figlia, è conchiglia,  
 E la perla che pari non ha !

Sei pur vaga supina, ô Messina,  
 Sul guancial di tue rose odorose,  
 Cinta ognor dal monile d' Aprile,  
 Circonfusa d' aroma e fulgor !

Mattutina, sei cara, ô Messina,  
 Se l'aurora ti bacia e colora,  
 Se in te cada, e t'imperi rugiada,  
 S'hai nel grembo un bel nembo di fior !

Sei divina al meriggio, ô Messina,  
 Tra palmeti, bei fonti e laureti,  
 Tra gli aurati ed olenti cedrati,  
 Con torrenti di luce e d'ardor !

Vespertina sei maga, ô Messina,  
 S'hai pacato, sereno stellato  
 Sei portento s'hai luna d'argento,  
 Danze, suoni e canzoni d'amor !

Sei regina, ô azzurrina Messina,  
 Per giardini di fate beate,  
 Per convali sott'onda in coralli,  
 Coronata Sirena del mar !

Chi non vide a marina Messina,  
 Mal può dir ch'egli vide brillar  
 Le beltà che rinserra la terra,  
 Chiude il flutto, ed il ciel sa versar !

PEPOLI (1801-1881).

## VERSI ENDECASILLABI.

Verses of eleven syllables are called "versi endecasillabi," or "versi eroici." They are the principal Italian verses and the best wherewith to express great and noble thoughts. These verses may have two, three, four, and even five (rhythmical) accents, arranged in almost every conceivable manner.

## BEATRICE

Tanto gentile e tanto onesta pare  
 La donna mia, quand ella altrui saluta,  
 Ch'ogni lingua divien tremando muta,  
 E gli occhi non ardiscon di guardare.  
 Ella sen va sentendosi laudare,  
 Benignamente d'umiltà vestuta, †  
 E par che sia una cosa venuta  
 Di cielo in terra a miracol mostrare.  
 Mostrasi sì piacente a chi la mira,  
 Che dà per gli occhi una dolcezza al core,  
 Che intender non la può chi non la prova.  
 E par che dalle sue labbia si mova ‡  
 Uno spirto soave e pien d'amore,  
 Che va dicendo all'anima sospira.

DANTE (1265-1321).

## LAURA.

Erano i capelli d'oro all'aura sparsi,  
 Che'n mille dolci nodi gli avolgea,  
 E'l vago lume oltra misura ardea  
 Di quei begli occhi, ch'or ne son sì scarsi;  
 E'l viso di pietosi color farsi,  
 Non so se vero o falso mi pareva  
 I' che l'esca amorosa al petto avea,  
 Qual meraviglia se di subit' arsi?  
 Non era l'andar suo cosa mortale,  
 Ma d'angelica forma, e le parole  
 Suonavan altro che pur voce umana.  
 Uno spirto celeste, un vivo sole  
 Fu quel ch'io vidi e se non fosse or tale,  
 Piaga per allentar d'arco non sana. §

PETRARCA (1304-1374).

\* In order to understand "sen va," see rule 845, 1

† "vestuta," for "vestita," *clothed, full of* ‡ "labbia," for "labbra," *lips*

§ "Piaga per allentar d'arco non sana," means "A wound (piaga) does not get healed (non sana) when the bow (arco) relaxes." After the words "the bow," the words "from which the arrow which inflicted the wound came," are understood. This pretty "conetto" of Petrarca, one of the earliest in the Italian language, is now used as a proverb

## SOPRA LA MORTE.

Morte, che se' tu mai ? Primo dei danni  
 L'alma vile e la rea ti crede e teme ;  
 E vendetta del ciel scendi ai tiranni,  
 Che il vigile tuo braccio incalza e preme.

Ma l'infelice, a cui de' lunghi affanni  
 Grave è l'incarco, e morta in cuor la speme,  
 Quel ferro implora troncator degli anni,  
 E ride all'appressar dell'ore estreme.

Fra la polve di Marte e le vicende  
 T'ì sfida il forte, che ne' rischi indura ;  
 E il saggio senza impallidir ti attende.

Morte, che se' tu dunque ? Un'ombra oscura,  
 Un bene, un male, che diversa prende  
 Dagli affetti dell'uom forma e natura.

MONTI (1754-1828).

## VERSI DODECASILLABI.

Verses of twelve syllables are called "versi dodecasillabi." They have four accents, one on the third, one on the fifth, one on the eighth, and the other (essential) on the eleventh syllable.

## UN POPOLO DEGRADATO.

Dai guardi dubbiosi, dai pavidì volti,  
 Qual raggio di sole da nuvoli folti,  
 Traluce de' padri la fiera virtù  
 Ne' guardi, ne' volti confuso ed incerto  
 Si mesce e discorda lo spregio sofferto  
 Col misero orgoglio d'un tempo che fu.

MANZONI (1785-1873).

Blank verses are called in Italian "versi sciolti."

I regret also to have no space here for more than these few lines taken from one of the two beautiful choruses in the other excellent tragedy by Manzoni, "Adelchi," but this also I intend to republish in full in my "Italian Reader"



## VOCABULARY.

## PART I.

## ENGLISH—ITALIAN.

NOTE.—Nouns ending in o are masculine, and those in a, as a rule, feminine.

The gender of nouns ending in e is given

A	Afford, v a dare, procurare	Antagonist, avversario, rivale
A, an, un, uno, una.	After, dopo	Any, del, dello, &c, al cuno, &c
Abandon, v a abbandonare	Afternoon, dopo pranzo.	Any, chiunque, ognuno, qualunque — one, alcuno — thing, qualche cosa
Ability, abilità	Afterwards, dopo	Anyone, alcuno
Able, abile	Again, ancora, di nuovo	Apartment, appartamento
About, circa	Against, contro	Apologise, v a far delle scuse a
Above, al di sopra — mentioned, suddetto	Age, età, secolo	Appear, v n apparire
Abruptly, bruscamente	Agitation, agitazione.	Appearance, apparenza
Abundance, abbondanza	Ago, fa	Apple, mela, pomo
Abyss, golfo abisso	Agreeable, piacevole	Apprehend, v a temere
Academy, accademia	Air, aria	Approve, v a approvare
Accent, accento	Album, album	Apply, attaccare
Accept, v a accettare	All, tutto, tutti	Arab, Arabian, Arabo
Accident, accidente	Allege, v i addurre	Arabia, Arabia
Accompany, v a accompagnare	Alley, chiasso	Arbitrator, arbitro
Accomplish, v a compire	Allow, v a permettere	Architect, architetto
Accomplished, compito	Almost, quasi	Argue, v n argomentare, discutere, ragionare
According, secondo	Alone, solo	Arm, braccio
Accusation, accusa	Along, lungo	Army, esercito, armata
Accuse, v a accusare	Alps, Alpi f	Arrangement, accommodamento
Aquaintance, conoscenza, (friend), conoscente	Already, già	Arrest, v a arrestare
Acquit, v a assolvere	Also, anche, ancora, altresì, eziando	Arrival, arrivo
Act, atto	Altar, altare, m	Arrive, v n arrivare
Act, v a agire	Although, benchè, sebbene	Arrow, freccia
Action, azione, f	Always, sempre	Art, arte, f.
Address, indirizzo	Ambitious, ambizioso	Artificial, artificiale, finto
Admiration, ammirazione, f	America, America	Artillery, artiglieria
Admire, v a ammirare	American, Americano	Artist, artista, m, ruse 370
Admission, entrata	Amiable, amabile	As, mentre, come
Admit, v a ammettere	Ammunition, munizione, f	As far as, fino a
Adorn, v a adornare	Among, amongst, fra, tra	As if, come se
Advance, v a avanzarsi	Ancestors, antenati, predecessori	As soon as, tosto che
Advantage, vantaggio	Ancient, antico	Ascribe, v a attribuire
Advice, consiglio	And, e, ed	
Advise, v a consigliare	Anger, collera	
Affair, affare, m	Animal, animale	
Affection, affetto	Another, un'altro	
Afflicted, afflitto	Answer, v n rispondere	



- Camp, campo  
 Can, I can, posso, we can, possiamo  
 Cannon, cannone  
 Canto, canto  
 Capital (of a country) la capitale, (funds) il capitale  
 Captain, capitano  
 Caravansary, caravansera-glio  
 Card, carta  
 Care, pensiero, cura  
 Carpenter, falegname  
 Carpet, tappeto  
 Carriage, carrozza, vettura  
 Carry, v a portare — away, portar via [carra-  
 Cart load, carro, plur,  
 Case, caso, soggetto  
 Cast, v a gettare  
 Cast iron, ghisa  
 Castle, castello  
 Cat, gatto  
 Catch, acchiappare — hold of, afferrare  
 Cathedral, cattedrale  
 Cattle, bestiame  
 Cause, causa, cagione  
 Cause, v a cagionare  
 Caution, cautela  
 Cavern, caverna  
 Celebrate, v a celebrare  
 Celebrated, (famous), celeb-  
 bre  
 Celebrity, celebrità  
 Cement, cemento  
 Century, secolo  
 Certainly, certamente  
 Chain, catena  
 Chair, sedia, seggiola Aim  
 —, seggiola a brac-  
 cioli Easy —, sedia  
 d'appoggio  
 Chauman, presidente  
 Challenge, sfida  
 Chance, caso, ventura  
 Change, v a cambiare  
 Chaplain, cappellano  
 Character, carattere, m  
 Charity, carità  
 Charles, Carlo  
 Charlotte, Carlotta  
 Charm, incanto  
 Check, guancia, gota  
 Cheerful, allegro  
 Cheese, cacio, formaggio  
 Cherry, ciregia  
 Chicken, pollastro  
 Child, fanciullo  
 Chimney-piece, quadro di  
 camino  
 China, porcellana  
 Chup, v n cantare  
 Choleric, collerico  
 Choose, v a scegliere  
 Christmas, Natale  
 Chronology, cronologia  
 Church, chiesa  
 Circumstance, circostanza  
 City, città  
 Clean, netto, pulito  
 Clergyman, parroco, pie-  
 vano  
 Clever, abile, destro  
 Climate, clima  
 Clock, pendola, orologio  
 O'clock (see rule 548)  
 Cloth (of linen, or cotton)  
 tela, (of wool) panno  
 Clothes, panni  
 Cloud, nube, nuvola  
 Coal, carbon fossile  
 Coast, costa, spiaggia  
 Coat, vestito, abito  
 Coffee and coffee-house,  
 caffè  
 College, collegio  
 Colonel, colonnello  
 Colour, colore  
 Columbus, Colombo  
 Come, v n venire — back,  
 ritornare — in, entrare  
 Comedy, commedia  
 Comely, piacevole, vago,  
 avvenente  
 Comfortable, confortevole,  
 comodo  
 Command, comando  
 Command, v a comandare  
 Commerce, commercio  
 Commercial, commerciale  
 Commission, commissione  
 Commit, v a commettere  
 Commute, comitato  
 Communication, comunica-  
 zione  
 Companion, compagno  
 Company, compagnia  
 Compare, v a paragonare  
 Compass, bussola  
 Compel, v a forzare  
 Complexion, carnagione, f  
 Compliment, complimento  
 Compose, v a comporre  
 Concited, vanitoso  
 Concert, concerto  
 Conclude, v a conchiu-  
 dere  
 Condemn, v a condannare  
 Condition, condizione, f  
 Conduct, v a condurre  
 Conduct, condotta  
 Confess, v a confessare  
 Confidence, confidenza  
 Confused, confuso  
 Conjugate, v a coniugare  
 Conquer, v a conquistare  
 Conscientious, conscienzioso  
 Consequence, conseguenza  
 Consider, v a considerare  
 Considerable, considerà-  
 bile  
 Conspicuous, cospicuo  
 Constitute, v a costituire  
 (like I make)  
 Construct, v a costruire,  
 (like I build)  
 Contain, v a contenere  
 Continue, v a continuare  
 Contrary, contrario  
 Contribute, v a contri-  
 buire (like I finish)  
 Convenient, conveniente  
 Conviction, convicazio-  
 ne, f  
 Copious, abbondante  
 Copper, rame  
 Copy, copia  
 Cornutus, Cornolano  
 Corn, fumento  
 Cornish, Cornchia  
 Correct, v a correggere  
 Cost, v n costare  
 Costly, dispendioso  
 Cottage, capanna  
 Cotton, cotone, m  
 Countenance, viso, aspetto,  
 carnagione, f  
 Country, (in a general sense)  
 paese, (out of town), in  
 campagna, (in opposi-  
 tion to the capital) pri-  
 vincia — house, casa  
 di campagna — man,  
 paesano, compatriota.  
 Couple, coppia, paio  
 Coupage, cniaggio  
 Course, corso  
 Court, corte, f cortile, m  
 Cousin, cugino, cugina  
 Cover, v a coprire (like  
 I serve)  
 Craggy, scosceso, diroccato.

- Crime, delitto  
 Criminal, criminale  
 Cresus, Creso  
 Cross, v a attraversare  
 ' rowd, calca, folla  
 Crown, corona  
 Cruel, crudele  
 Cruiser, vascello di corso  
 Cry, v a gridare  
 Crystal, cristallo  
 Cultivate, v a coltivare  
 Cur, cagnuccino  
 ( curious, curioso)  
 Custom-house, dogana
- D
- Danger, pericolo  
 Dangerous, pericoloso  
 Dare, v a ardire, (like  
 Finish)  
 Dark, oscuro, tenebroso  
 Daughter, figlia  
 Day, giorno, di  
 Day after-morrow, pos-  
 domani, m  
 Dazzle, v a abbagliare  
 Dean, decano  
 Dear, caro  
 Death, morte, f  
 Debt, debito  
 Decapitation, decapitazione,  
 ne, f  
 Deceit, frode, f  
 Decide, v a decidere  
 Decision, decisione, f  
 Deed, azione, f fatto  
 Deep, profondo  
 Defeat, v a sconfiggere  
 Defect, difetto  
 Defiance, sfida  
 Defray, v a pagare  
 Degree, grado, segno  
 Delight, delizia  
 Delight, v a diletare  
 Delightful, dilettevole  
 Dell, valle, f vallone, m  
 Demetrius, Demetrio  
 Demolish, v a demolire  
 (like Finish)  
 Deny, v a negare  
 Depart, v n partire (like  
 Service)  
 Departure, partenza  
 Depend, v n dipendere  
 Depict, v a dipingere  
 Dépôt, dépôt  
 Depth, profondità  
 Describe, v a descrivere
- Description, descrizione, f  
 Deserve, v n meritare  
 Desire, desiderio  
 Desire, v a desiderare, pie-  
 gare, v sce rule 300  
 Despise, v a disprezzare  
 Despotism, despoticismo  
 Desert, dopopasto  
 Destine, v a destinare  
 Detain, v a ritenere  
 Determine, v a determi-  
 nare  
 Diamond, diamante, m  
 Dictate, precetti  
 Dictionary, dizionario  
 Die, v n morire  
 Difference, differenza  
 Different, differente  
 Difficult, difficile
- E
- Lach, ogni  
 Eagle, aquila  
 Ear, orecchio  
 Early, per tempo  
 Earn, v a guadagnare  
 Earnest, in earnest, sul  
 serio, con amore  
 Earth, terra  
 Easily, facilmente  
 Eastern, orientale  
 Easy-chair, poltrona  
 Eat, v a mangiare  
 Eating, il mangiare  
 Ecclesiastic, ecclesiastico.  
 Education, educazione, f  
 Edward, Odoardo  
 Efface, v a cancellare  
 Effect, effetto  
 Egg, uovo  
 Egypt, Egitto  
 Eight, otto  
 Lightly, ottanta  
 Luther, o o, ovvero ov-  
 vero  
 Elect, v a eleggere  
 Election, elezione, f  
 Elephant, elefante  
 Elizabeth, Elisabetta  
 Eloquence, eloquenza  
 Elude, v a sfuggire  
 Embark, v n imbarcarsi.  
 Embellishment, abbelli-  
 mento  
 Emblem, emblema, m  
 Embroider, v a ricamare.  
 Eminent, eminente  
 Emperor, imperatore  
 Empress, imperatrice  
 Encamp, v n accamparsi
- Diligently, diligentemente  
 Diminish, v n diminuire  
 (like Finish)  
 Dine, v n pranzare  
 Dining room, sala da pran-  
 zo  
 Dinner, pranzo  
 Directly, in un subito  
 Director, direttore  
 Disaffection, scontento  
 Disarm, v a disarmare  
 Discernible, potevansi ve-  
 dere  
 Disconcert, v a sconcerta-  
 re  
 Discover, v a scoprire (like  
 Survive)  
 Discovery, scoperta  
 Discussion, discussione, f  
 Diserve, malattia  
 Disguise, travestimento  
 Dishonest, disonesto  
 Dishonour, disonore  
 Dismiss, v a dar licenza  
 Displease, v a dispiacere  
 Distance, distanza  
 Distant, distante  
 Distinguish, v a discer-  
 nere  
 Divine, divino  
 Do, v a fare —How do  
 you do? come sta? o  
 come state?  
 Doctor, dottore  
 Dog, cane  
 Door, porta  
 Down, giù  
 Dozen, dozzina  
 Draw, v a disegnare

Encourage, v a incoraggiare	Extend, v a stendere	Fire, fuoco — wood, legna.
End (termination), fine, f	Extent, ampiezza	First, primo
Endeavour, sforzo,	Extraordinary, straordinario	Fish, pesce
Endow, v a dotare	Extravagance, stravaganza	Five, cinque
Enemy, nemico	Extremely, estremamente	Flag, bandiera.
England, Inghilterra English and Englishman, Inglese	Eye, occhio	Flatterer, lusingatore
Enjoy, v a godere	Facility, facilità	Fleet, flotta
Enough, abbastanza	Fair, biondo, bello	Florence, Firenze
Enraged, arrabbiato	Faithful, fedele	Flower, fiore, m
Enrich, v a arricchire (like Finire)	Faithfully, fedelmente	Flowery, fiorito
Enter, v n entrare	Family, famiglia	Fly, v n volare, fuggire (like Seivre) — into a passion, andare in collera
Enthusiasm, entusiasmo	Famous, famoso	Follow, v a seguire
Entirely, interamente	Far, lontano	Following, seguente
Entreat, v a supplicare	Farm, podere, m	Food, cibo, vivanda
Entreaty, preghiera	Father, più lontano	Foot, piede, m
Entrenchments, fortificazioni, f	Fashion, moda, guisa In the —, alla moda	For, per
Envelope, sopracoperta, Equal, eguale, simile	Fast, presto	Force, v a forzare
Equal, v a pareggiare	Fat, grasso	Foreigner, straniero
Erect, v a erigere, innalzare	Father, padre — in law, suocero	Forest, foresta
Escape, fuga	A fault (mistake), sbaglio, (error), errore	Forget v n scordarsi di.
Escape, v n scappare, fuggire (like Seivre)	I avow, favoie	Forgive, v a perdonare
Essay, saggio (Finire)	Favour, v a favorire (like Finire)	Fork, forchetta
Establish, v a stabilire (like Esteem, stima)	Favourable, favorevole	Form, v a formare
Estimate, v a stimare	Favourite, favorito	Former, d altre volte
Europe, l'Europa	Fear, timore	Formerly, altre volte
Even, persino	Fearful, terribile	Fortress, fortezza
Evening, sera	Features, fettezze	Fortune, fortuna
Event, evento	February, febbraio	Forty, quaranta
Ever, mai, sempre	Federation, federazione	Found, v a fondare
Every, ogni — one, ognuno — thing, tutto — body, tutti	Feeling, sentimento	Foundation, fondamento.
Everywhere, da per tutto	Feigned, finto	Fountain, fontana
Examination, esame, m	Fellow, compagno — little, birichino	Fowl, quail
Excellence, eccellenza	Ferdinand, Ferdinando	Fourteen, quattordici
Except, eccetto, tranne	Fern, felce, f	Fourteenth, decimo quarto
Execute, v a eccitare	Ferocity, ferocità	Fourth, quarto
Excuse, scusa	Fertility, fertilità	Fragrance, fragranza
Execration, esecrazione, f	Fetch, v n andare a cercare	Frail, fragile
Execute, v a eseguire (like Finire)	Few, pochi, poche	Frame, cornice, f
Exempt, v a esentare	Field, campo	France, Francia
Exercise, esercizio, tema	Fifteen, quindici	Francis, Francesco
Exhibition, esposizione, f	Fifth, quinto	Frankly, francamente
Exile, esiglio	Fifty, cinquanta	Fredrick, Federico
Expect, v a aspettare	Fight, v n combattere.	Frederick, Federico
Expense, spesa	Figure, figura	Frederick, Federico
Explain, v a spiegare	Filial, filiale	Freeze, v n gelare
Exploit, gesto (rule 420)	Find, v a trovare	French, francese
	Fine, bello, fino	Frequently, sovente
	Finish, v a finire	Freshness, freschezza
		Friday, venerdì
		Friend, amico
		Friendship, amicizia
		From, da
		Fruit, frutto
		Fulfil, v a adempire
		Full, pieno
		Fund, fondo
		Furnish, v a annodare
		Furniture, mobili.

Gain, v a guadagnare	Green, verde	Himself, egli stesso
Gallery, galleria	Grey, grigio	His, il suo, la sua
Galley, galera	Groan, v n gemere	Historian, storico
Gamble, v a bizzare	Ground-floor, pianterreno	History, storia
Game, giuoco	Guard, guardia	Hollow, cavità
Garden, giardino	Guess, v n indovinare	Home, dimora
Gardener, giardiniere	Guest, convitato	Homer, Omero
Gather v a cogliere	Guide, v a guidare	Honest, onesto
Gauntlet, guanto ferrato	Guinea, ghinea, pl ghinee	Honesty, onestà
General, generale —in chief, generalissimo	Guitar, chitarra	Hope, v a sperare
Generally, generalmente	Gun, cannonc, fucile — powder, polvere da cannone	Horse, cavallo
Generosity, generosità		Host, oste
Gentleman, Signore	II	Hostile, ostile, nemico
Geography, geografia	Hair, capelli	Hour, ora
George, Giorgio	Half, (noun) metà a (adjective) mezzo —a crown, mezza corona	House, casa
German, Tedesco	Hall, sala	How? come? — many? quanti? — much, quanto
Get, v a guadagnare, ot- tenere —drunk, v. i an- nottare	Hand, mano, f	However, però, nulladi- meno
Gift, dono, regalo	Handle, manico	Hundred, cento
Girl, fanciulla, ragazza	Handsome, bello, vizzoso	Hunger, fame, f
Give, v a dare	Happen, v n accadere	Hurrah! Et viva!
Glance, occhiata	Happy, felice	I
Glass, bicchiere	Harbour, porto	I, io
Gloomy, buio, d'apparenza melanconica	Hardship, privazione	Ice, ghiaccio
Glorious, glorioso,	Humorous, umoroso	Idiot, idiota, sciocco
Glorious, glorioso,	Humour, umore	Idiot, idiota, sciocco
Glorious, glorioso,	Hut, capanno	If, se If you please, per piacere
Glove, guanto	Hate, v a odiare	Ignorance, ignoranza
Go, v n andare —out, uscire —away, andar via	Haughty, altero	Illustration, disegno
Goat, capra	Have, v a avere	Imitate, v a imitare
God, Dio, Iddio	He, egli, esso	Immediate, immediato
Gold, oro	Hcad, testa, capo	Immediately, immediate- mente
Good, buono	Health, salute, f	Immense, immenso
Good bye, addio	Heart, v a, intendere, sentire (like Scire)	Importance, importanza
Good for nothing fellow, buono a niente	Heart, by heart, a mente	Impossible, impossibile
Goods, beni, roba	Heartily, di cuore	Impressive, impressivo
Govern, v a governare	Heaven, cielo	Improve, v n migliorare
Government, governo	Heavy, pesante	Imprudence, imprudenza
Governor, governatore.	Height, altezza at the—, all'apice	Imprudent, imprudente
Graceful, grazioso	Hclp, v a aiutare	In, in, (hence), sia
Gradually, più e più, gra- dualmente	Henry, Enrico	Inanimate, inanimato
Grammar, grammatica	Hcl, lei, lei	Inch, dito
Grandfather, nonno, avo.	Here, qui, qua	Indeed, in verità
Giant, v a accordare.	Here is, ecco qui	Indignation, indignazio- ne, f
Grapes, uva	Here it is, eccolo, eccola	Induce, v a indurre
Grave, grave	Here they are, eccoli, ec- cole	Industry, industria
Gravity, gravità	Hero, eroe	Inferior, inferiore
Great, grande —A great deal, moltissimo	Hide, v a nascondere	Infirm, infermo
Greatly, moltissimo	High, alto, pronunciato	Influence, influenza
Greek, Greco.	Highly, generosamente.	Inform, v a istruire (like Finire)
	Hill, collina	Ingenious, ingegnoso
	Him, lui, lo	

Ingratitude, ingratitudine, f	Joy, gioia	Leave, v a lasciare
Inhabitant, abitante	Judge, giudice	Lecture, discorso, lettura.
Ink, inchiostro — stand, calamaio	Jug, boccale, m.	Lemon, limone, m
Inn, albergo	Jump, v n saltare	Lend, v a prestare
Innocent, innocente	Jupiter, Giove	Length, lunghezza At— finalmente
Innumerable, innumerabile	Just, adj giusto, adv. (just now) questo momento, or appunto	Less, meno
In order to, per, onde	Justice, giustizia	Lesson, lezione, f
Inquisitive, curioso		Lest, per paura che (see rule 733)
Inspire, v a ispirare	K	Letter, lettera
Instead of, in luogo di, in vece di	Keep, v a tenere — waiting, far aspettare	Liberty, libertà
Institution, istituzione, f	Kill, v a uccidere.	Life, vita
Instrument, strumento	Kind, buono	Light, leggero
Insult, v a insultare	Kind quality, sorte, f	Light, v a accendere
Intelligible, intelligibile	Kindness, bontà	Like, come, simile
Intend, v a aver l'intenzione, fare i conti	King, re	Like, v a amare, andare a genio
Interest, interesse	Kneel v n inginocchiarsi	Likeness, ritratto
Interesting, interessante	Knife, coltello	Likewise parimente anche.
Internal, interno	Knight, cavaliere	Lily, giglio
International, internazionale	Knock, v a picchiare, bussare	Limb, membro
Interrogate, v interrogare	Know, sapere, conoscere	Line, linea, riga (of writing or print)
Intersperse, v a fiamescolare	Knowledge, conoscenza, sapere	Lion, leone
Into, in	L	Listen, v n ascoltare
Intricate, imbrogliato	Lace, merletto	Literary, letterario, letterato
Introduce, v a introdurre	Lady, Signora — Young— signorina	Little, piccolo
Invent, v a inventare	Lake, lago	Live, v n vivere
Invention, invenzione, f	Lame, v a storpiare	Load, v a caricare.
Invest v a investire (like Service)	Landlord, proprietario padrone	Loadstone, calamita
Invitation, invito	Landscape, paesaggio	Lodge v n alloggiare
Invite, v a invitare	Language, lingua	Lofty, alto, sublime
Irishman, Irlandese	Large, grande, grosso	London, Londra
Iron ferro Wrought —, ferro battuto Cast —, ghisa	Last, passato — night (yes terday evening) ieri sera Last-night, meaning till this morning, is translated by "La notte scorsa"	Lonely, isolato
Isabella, Isabella	Late, defunto	Long, lungo
Island, isola	Latter, questo, questi	Look, v a guardare — upon, considerare — out, cercar degli occhi.
Issue, successo, impressione, f	Laugh, v n ridere.	Looking glass, specchio.
It, esso, lo, la	Law, legge, f	Lord, conte, marchese.
Italian, Italiano.	Lay, v a mettere — down, deponere — the cloth, mettere la tovaglia.	Lose, v a perdere
Italy, Italia	Lean, magro	Loss, perdita
J	Learn, v a imparare. — by heart, imparare a mente	Louis, Luigi
Jamaica Giamaica	Learning, sapere	Louvre, Luigi
James Giacomo	Leather, cuoio.	Love, amore, m
Jane, Giovanna	Leave, permissione, f.	Love, v a amare
January, gennaio		Lowest, infimo
Janet, Gioia		Luncheon, la seconda colazione, merenda
John, Giovanni,		Lustre, lustro
Joppa, Grippa		M
Johnny, viaggio		Madehne, Maddaen
		Magazine, rivista, magazzino
		Magnificent, magnifico

Majestic, maestoso  
 Majesty, maestà  
 Make, v a fare —haste,  
 affrettarsi —up one's  
 mind, decidersi  
 Man, uomo — of letters,  
 letterato  
 Mankind, genere umano  
 Manly, virile  
 Manner, maniera, usanza  
 Manufacture, v a fabbricare  
 Many, molti  
 Marble, marmo  
 Margaret, Margherita  
 Mariner, marinaio  
 Mark, pegno  
 Mark, v a marcare  
 Market, mercato  
 Marry, v a sposare  
 Mars, Marte  
 Marsh, palude, f  
 Martial, marziale  
 Mary, Maria  
 Master, maestro padrone,  
 (see rule 146) — piece,  
 capo lavoro  
 Match, zolfanetto  
 Mathematics, matematica  
 Matter, materia  
 May, maggio  
 Me, mi, me, a me  
 Meadow, prato  
 Means, mezzo  
 Measure, misura  
 Meet, or meet with, v a  
 incontrare  
 Meeting, riunione  
 Melodious, melodioso  
 Melt, v a fondere  
 Member, membro, pl  
 membri, or membra  
 (rule 420)  
 Memory, memoria  
 Mercury, Mercurio  
 Mere, puro, mero  
 Merit, merito  
 Messenger, messaggero  
 Metal, metallo  
 Microscope, microscopio  
 Midnight, mezzanotte  
 Mildness, dolcezza  
 Mile, miglio, plur miglia  
 Milk jug, bocciale da latte  
 Mind, spirito, mente, f  
 Mind, v a badare a  
 Mine, il mio, la mia, &c  
 Mineral, minerale, m

Minister, ministro — for  
 Foreign Affairs, Mini-  
 stro degli Affari Esteri  
 Minute, minuto  
 Mischievous, malizioso  
 Misfortune, disgrazia  
 Miss, v a mancare  
 Mistake, sbaglio  
 Moderate, moderato  
 Modesty, modestia  
 Moment, momento  
 Monarch, monarca  
 Monday, lunedì  
 Money, danaro, soldi  
 Monkey, scimmia  
 Month, mese, m  
 Moon, luna, brughiera  
 Moralist, moralista  
 More, più  
 Morning, mattina  
 Mosaic, mosaico (rule 410)  
 Most, il più  
 Mother, madre — in law,  
 suocera  
 Motive, motivo  
 Mountain, montagna  
 Mouth, bocca  
 Mouthful, bocciata  
 Mr, Signore  
 Mrs, Signora  
 Much, molto  
 Music, alla borghese  
 Multitude, moltitudine, f  
 Municipal, municipale  
 Museum, museo  
 Music, musica  
 Must — I must, debbo — we  
 must, dobbiamo, &c  
 My, il mio, la mia, i miei  
 Mysterious, misterioso  
 Mythology, mitologia

Necklace, monile, vizzo  
 Needle, ago  
 Negro, negro — dealer,  
 mercante di schiavi  
 Neighbourhood, vicinato  
 Neighbouring, nel vicinato  
 Neither, nè  
 Nephew, nipote  
 Neptune, Nettuno  
 Nest, nido  
 Never, non mai, no, mai  
 New, nuovo — born, pur  
 mo' nato  
 News, nuova, notizie —  
 paper, giornale.  
 Next, prossimo  
 Nibble, v a morsocchiare  
 Nice, Nizza  
 Night, notte, f  
 Nine, nove  
 Ninth, nono  
 No, no — body, nessuno —  
 doubt, senza dubbio,  
 senz'altro — longer,  
 non più.  
 Noble, nobile  
 Noise, rumore, strepito  
 Nonsense, sciocchezze,  
 spropositi  
 Noon, mezzogiorno  
 Nor, ne  
 Norman, Normanno  
 Normandy, Normandia  
 North, tramontana, set-  
 tentrione  
 Not, non  
 Nothing, niente, nulla  
 Nourish, nutrire  
 Now, adesso, ora  
 Number, numero  
 Numerous, numeroso

N  
 Name, nome  
 Naples, Napoli  
 Napoleon, Napoleone  
 Narrate, v a raccontare  
 Narrow, stretto  
 Nation, nazione  
 National, nazionale  
 Natural, naturale  
 Nature, natura  
 Navigation, navigazione  
 Navigator, navigatore  
 Near, vicino  
 Nearly, quasi  
 Necessary, necessario  
 Necessity, necessità

O  
 Occasion, occasione.  
 O'clock, dell' orologio  
 Six—alle sei (see rule  
 548)  
 October, ottobre.  
 Obey, v a ubbidire (like  
 Finire).  
 Observe, v a osservare  
 Obtain, v a ottenere  
 Odd, singolare, bizzarro  
 Of, di  
 Off, in vista di  
 Offend, v a offendere  
 Offer, v a offrire (like  
 Servire)



Office, earien, officio	Parliament (member of), deputato al parlamento	Pleasure, piacere.
Officer, ufficiale	Parlour, salotto	Plot, congiura, trama
Often, sovente, spesso	Part, parte, f., porzione, f	Plunder, v a (persons) sva-
Old, vecchio	Partner, socio	lignare, (habitations),
Olive, uliva — tree, ulivo	Partridge, pernice, f	saccheggiare
On, su, sopra — behalf of	Pass, v n passare	Pocket, tasca, scarsella
in favore di	Passenger, passeggero	Poem, poema, m
Once, una volta At —,	Passion, passione, f	Poet, poeta
subito	Past, passato	Poetry, poesia
One, uno, una	Pasture, v a pasturare	Point, v a indicare
Only, solo, solamente, non	Patience, pazienza	Poison, veleno
ehe	Paul, Paolo	Policeman, agente di poli-
Open, aperto (Serve)	Pay, v a pagare — atten-	zia, sbirro
Open, v a aprire (like	tion to, badare a	Policy, politica
Opera, opera	Peace, pace, f	Polite, civile, cortese
Operation, operazione, f	Pear, pera	Politics, politica.
Op site, opposta	Peail, perla	Pomp, pompa
Opulence, opulenza	Peculiarity, singolarità	Poor, povero
Or, o, ovvero, ossia	Pedestal, piedestallo	Pope, papa
Orange and orange tree, a-	Pekin, Pechino	Popular, popolare
rancio	Pen, penna	Popularity, popolarità
Orator, oratore	Pencil, lapis, m, matita —	Port, porto
Orchard, pometo	case, porta-lapis	Portrait, ritratto
Order, ordine, m	Penetration, acume	Positively, positivamente
Order, v a comandare	Penknife, temperino	Possess, v a possedere
Origin, origine, f	Penny, due soldi	Possession, possessione, f
Original, originale	Pension, pensione, f	Possible, possibile
Other, altro	People, popolo, gente	Post (for letters), posta,
Otherwise altrimenti	Perfectly, perfettamente	(place), posto
Our, il nostro, &c	Perform, v a (to fulfil) a-	Postage stamp, francobollo
Ourselves, noi stessi	dempire To perform,	Posteriorly, posteriora
Oval, ovale	(to play) prodursi	Posture, posizione, f
Over, sopra, di sopra	Perhaps, forse	Pound, libbra, lira (see rule
Overturn, sovvertire, ro-	Perpetual, perpetuo	656)
vesciare	Persistence, perseveranza	Poverty, povertà.
Owe, v n dovere	Person, persona	Powder, polvere, f
Own, proprio	Personage, personaggio	Power, potere, m
Owner, proprietario.	Personal, personale	Practise, v a praticare,
	Philosophy, filosofia	esercitarsi
P	Piano, pianoforte	Praise, lode
Pace, passo	Pickpocket, borsaiuolo	Praise, v a lodare
Pain, male, dolore, m	Picture, quadro, pittura	Precede, precedere
Painful, doloroso	Picturesque, pittoresco	Precious, prezioso
Paint, v a dipingere	Piece, pezzo	Precept, precetto
Paint brush, pennello	Pierce, v a forare	Precept, precetto
Painter, pittore	Pineapple, ananas	Prefer, preferre, v a (like
Painting, pittura, quadro	Pipe, pipa	1 inire)
Pair, paio, coppia	Pink, garofano	Prejudicial, pregiudiziale
Palace, palazzo	Place, luogo, sito, posto	Preparation, preparativo
Paper, carta	Place, v a porre	Prepare, v a preparare
Pavement, pavimentazione	Plain, pianura, chiaro	Present, dono, regalo
Parchment, pergamena,	Planet, pianeta, m	Present, v a presentare
carta peggiora	Platina, platino	Preserve, v a conservare
Pardon, v a perdonare a	Play, v a suonare — on an	President, presidente
Parent, padre, madre, ge-	instrument, suonare	Pretty, bello, vago
nitore	Placid, placido (like Finire)	Prevent, v a evitare, im-
Paris, Parigi	Placing, piacevole.	pedire (like Finire)
Park, parco		Previous, prima di

Prey, preda  
 Price, prezzo, valore  
 Pride one's self, v r inorgogliarsi  
 Prince, principe  
 Princess, principessa  
 Principal, principio  
 Principle, principio  
 Print, v a stampare  
 Printing, stampa  
 Prison, prigione, f  
 Probably, probabilmente  
 Procession, processione, f  
 Produce, prodotto  
 Produce, v a produrre  
 Production, produzione, f  
 Profit, v n profitare  
 Profusion, profusione, f  
 Progress, progresso  
 Promise, v a promettere  
 Proof, prova  
 Property, proprietà, beni  
 Proportioned, proporzionato  
 Proposal, proposizione, f  
 Propose, v a proporre  
 Prospect, prospettiva, vista  
 Prosperous, prospero  
 Proud, orgoglioso  
 Prove, v a provare  
 Provision, provvisione, f  
 Provoke, v a provocare  
 Prudence, prudenza  
 Prudently, prudentemente  
 Prussia, Prussia  
 Prussian, Prussiano  
 Public, pubblico  
 Punish, v a punire (like Finire)  
 Pupil, scolare, allievo  
 Purchase, compra  
 Pure, puro, semplice  
 Purpose, interazione On—, a disegno  
 Pursue, v a inseguire  
 Pursuit, incalzò  
 Put, v. a mettere —off, v n indugiare

Q  
 Quantity, quantità.  
 Queen, regina  
 Question (see rule 306)  
 Quickly, presto  
 Quietly, tranquillamente  
 Quill, penna d'oca  
 Quire, quinterno di carta  
 Quite, affatto, interamente

R  
 Rage, rabbia  
 Rain, pioggia  
 Rain, v i piovere  
 Rapaciousness, rapacità  
 Raphael, Raffaello  
 Raven, corvo  
 Ravine, burrone, m  
 Reach, v a giungere  
 Read, v a leggere  
 Reading-room, sala di lettura  
 Ready, pronto  
 Really, realmente  
 Reason, ragione, f senno  
 Recall, v a richiamare  
 Receive, v a ricevere  
 Recognise, v a riconoscere  
 Recommend, v a raccomandare  
 Red, rosso  
 Re-enter, v n rientrare  
 Reflect, v a riflettere  
 Regular, regolare  
 Reign, v a regnare  
 Reindeer, cervo (della Lapponia)  
 Rejoice, v a rallegrarsi  
 Relation, parente, m  
 Religion, religione, f  
 Remain, v n rimanere, restare. [dire  
 Remark, v a far osservare  
 Remarkably, notevolmente  
 Remember, v n ricordarsi  
 Remote, remoto  
 Renowned, rinomato  
 Repent, v n pentirsi  
 Reply, v a rispondere  
 Report, rapporto —of a gun, lo strepito d'un cannone  
 Repose, v r riposarsi  
 Represent, v a rappresentare  
 Republic, repubblica  
 Reputation, riputazione  
 Request, richiesta, domanda  
 Request, v a domandare  
 Resemble, v a somigliare  
 Resist, v. a resistere  
 Resolve, v a risolvere  
 Resound, v a risuonare, rimbombare  
 Respect, rispetto  
 Respectful, rispettoso  
 Respectfully, rispettosamente

Respective, rispettiva  
 Restoration, restaurazione  
 Restore, v a rendere  
 Result, risultato, risultato  
 Resume, v a ripigliare  
 Retire, v n ritirarsi  
 Return, ritorno  
 Return, v n ritornare, scambiare, rispondere.  
 Reveal, v a rivelare  
 Review, rivista  
 Revolution, rivoluzione, f  
 Reward, ricompensa, taglia  
 Ribbon, nastro, fettuccia  
 Rich, ricco  
 Richard, Riccardo  
 Riches, ricchezze  
 Ride, v n cavalcare, andare a cavallo  
 Right, dritto  
 Ring, anello  
 Ring v a and n suonare  
 Ripe, maturo  
 Rise, v n levarsi  
 River, fiume, m riviera  
 Rivulet, ruscellino  
 Road, strada, cammino  
 Robber, ladro  
 Rock, roccia, rupe, balza.  
 Roman, Romano  
 Romantic, romantico  
 Rome, Roma  
 Romulus, Romolo  
 Room, camera, stanza.  
 Drawing —, salone.  
 Rose, rosa  
 Round, adj rotondo, prep. attorno, intorno  
 Rout, v a sfrattare  
 Royal, reale, regale  
 Rude, grossolano, zotico, impertinente  
 Rudely, rozamente.  
 Ruin, rovina  
 Ruin, v a rovinare.  
 Rule, regola  
 Run, v n correre  
 Rural, campestre.

S  
 Sack, v a saccheggiare  
 Safe, adj sano  
 Safety, sicurezza  
 Sail, v a far vela  
 Sailing vessel, bastimento a vela

- Sailor, marinaio  
 Saladin, Saladino  
 Salary, stipendio  
 Same, medesimo, stesso  
 Saracen, Saraceno  
 Sardinia, Sardegna  
 Satin, raso  
 Satisfied, soddisfatto con tenio  
 Satisfy, v. a. soddisfare  
 Saturday, sabato  
 Saturn, Saturno  
 Save, v. a. salvare  
 Savon, sapone  
 Scale, bilancia, guscio  
 Scene, scena, teatro  
 Scheme, progetto  
 School, scuola  
 Science, scienza  
 Scorn, disprezzo  
 Scotland, Scozia  
 Sculptor, scultore  
 Sculpture, scultura  
 Sea, mare — coast, spiaggia del mare  
 Seize, v. a. prendere  
 Seize on self, v. n. sedersi  
 Second, secondo  
 Secretary, segretario  
 Secretly, segretamente  
 See, v. a. vedere — again, rivedere  
 Seek or seek for, v. a. cercare — after, ricciare  
 Seem, v. n. parere, sembrare  
 Seldom, di rado, raramente  
 Sell, v. a. vendere  
 Send, v. a. mandare  
 Sentry, sentinella, m. and f.  
 Separate, v. a. disgiungere  
 Servant, servo  
 Service, servizio  
 Seven, sette — Sevenleen, diciassette — Seventy, settanta  
 Several, molti, parecchi  
 Severely, severamente  
 Sew, v. a. cucire — again, ricucire  
 Shadow, ombra  
 Shame, vergogna  
 Share, parte, f.  
 She, ella, essa  
 Sheep, pecora  
 Sheet, foglio  
 Shield, scudo  
 Shilling, scellino  
 Ship, nave, f. vascello  
 Shop, bottega  
 Shore, spiaggia, lido  
 Short, corto  
 Show, v. a. mostrare  
 Shudder, v. n. tremare  
 Shut, shut up, v. a. chiudere  
 Side, parte, f.  
 Side board, credenza  
 Siege, assedio  
 Sight, vista, prospettiva  
 By —, di vista  
 Silver, argento  
 Simple, semplice  
 Simplicity, semplicità  
 Since, di poi, da, poichè — since that, dacchè  
 Sing, v. a. cantare  
 Singer, cantante  
 Single, solo, semplice  
 Sir, signore  
 Sire, sire  
 Sister, sorella  
 Sister in law, cognata  
 Sit, v. n. sedere, sedersi  
 Situation, situazione, f.  
 Six, sei  
 Sixth, sesto  
 Sixty, sessanta  
 Slitch, schizzo  
 Skip about, v. n. saltellare  
 Slate, lavagna  
 Sleep, v. n. dormire (like Servire)  
 Slow, slowly, adagio  
 Smell, piccolo  
 Smile, v. n. ridere  
 Snow, neve  
 Snow, v. i. nevicare  
 So, così  
 Society, società  
 Soldier, soldato  
 Solon, Solone  
 Some, del, dello, &c, al cunio, &c, qualche, poco (po')  
 Something, qualche cosa  
 Sometimes, qualche volta  
 Son, figlio  
 Song, canzone, f.  
 Sonnet, sonetto  
 Soon, tosto, presto  
 Sound, suono, rimbombo  
 Source, sorgente, f.  
 South, mezzogiorno  
 Spain, Spagna  
 Spamish, spagnuolo  
 Spire, v. a. risparmiare  
 Speak, v. a. parlare  
 Speaker, oratore  
 Special, speciale  
 Species, specie  
 Speculation, speculazione, f.  
 Speech, discorso  
 Spend, v. a. spendere  
 Spirited, animato  
 Spite, rancore, m. — In spite of, ad onta di  
 Splendid, magnifico  
 Spoil, v. a. gustare  
 Sport, divertimento  
 Spread, v. a. distendere  
 Spring (person), primavera (source), fonte, sorgente  
 Squander, v. a. sciogliere  
 Square, quadrato  
 Stage, scena, teatro  
 Staircase, scala  
 Star, stella  
 Start, v. n. partire — up, saltare  
 State, stato  
 Statement, dichiarazione, f.  
 Statue, statua  
 Steel, v. a. rullare  
 Stern boat, battello a rema  
 Steel, acciaio  
 Stewart, custode  
 Stick, bastone, m.  
 Still, v. a. quietare  
 Still, adv. eppure  
 Stock, v. a. fornire  
 Stone, pietra, m.  
 Stop, v. a. and n. fermare, fermarsi  
 Story, storiella  
 Stout, grosso  
 Straight, diritto  
 Strange, strano, bizzarro  
 Stranger, forestiero  
 Strawberry, fragola  
 Stream, miscelto, fiume  
 Street, strada, via  
 Strength, robustezza, f. forza, forza  
 Strife, sciopio  
 Strike, v. a. battere, ferire (like Finne)  
 Still, adv. soporificamente  
 Strong, forte, potente  
 Student, scolare, alunno  
 Study, studio

Study, v a studiare	Telescope, cannocchiale, m	Title, titolo
Style, stile, m.	Tell, v a dire	To, prep a <i>or</i> onde (see rule 225)
Subject (of a monarch), suddito	Temptation, tentazione, f	To, a verbal prefix, is not translated (see rules 226 and 227).
Substance, materia	Ten, dieci	To-day, oggi
Succeed, v n riuscire, succedere (see rule 258)	Tend, v n inclinare	Together, insieme.
Success, successo, esito	Terror, spavento	Token, segno.
Succession, successione, f	Than, che	To-morrow, domani. — after, posdomani
Such, tale — a, un tale — as, tale quale	Thank, v a ringraziare	Too, anche. — Too (meaning too much), troppo
Sudden, improvviso	That, quello, quel, quella, che	Tooth, dente
Suddenly, all improvviso	The, il, lo, la, &c	Top, sommità, vetta.
Suffer, v n soffrire (like Servire), patire (like Finire)	Theatre, teatro	Torrent, torrente
Sufficiently, abbastanza	Theatrical, teatrale.	Toulon, Tolone
Suggest, v a suggerire (like Finire)	Theft, ladrocinio	Towards, verso
Sum, somma	Their, il loro, la loro, &c	Tower, torre, f.
Summer, estate, f	Them, loro, essi, esse	Town, città.
Sun, sole, m	Then (at that time), allora	Trace, traccia
Superfluous, superfluo	Then (therefore), dunque	Tract, tratto
Superstition, superstizione	There, là, lì	Trade, mestiere, m commercio By —, di mestiere
Support, in support, per corroborare	There is, c'è, <i>or</i> v è — There are, ci sono, <i>or</i> vi sono &c	Tradition, tradizione, f
Support, v a sostenere, sopportare	These, questi, queste	Tragedy, tragedia.
Suppose, v a supporre	They, egli, elleno, essi	Train, treno, traino
Sure, sicuro, certo	Thief, ladro	Train, v a allevare, istruire
Surface, superficie, f	Thimble, ditale, m	Traitor, traditore.
Surprise, v a sorprendere	Thing, cosa	Translate, v a tradurre
Surround, v a circondare	Think (of), v n pensare a, credere	Translation, traduzione, f
Surrounding, circonvicino	Third, terzo	Transmit, v a trasmettere.
Sustain, v n subire (like Finire)	Thirteen, tredici	Travel, v n viaggiare
Sweet, dolce	Thirty, trenta	Treasure, tesoro.
Sweetheart, amante	This, questo, questa	Tree, albero
Swim (about), v n guizzare	Thom's, Tommaso	Trifles, cosecelle
Switzerland, Svizzera	Thorn, spina	Triumphant, trionfante
Sword, spada	Thoroughly, completamente	Troops, truppe, esercito
	Those, quelli, quei, quelli	Trouble, fatica
	Thou, tu	Troy, Troia
	Though, quantunque, sebbene	True, vero
	Thought, pensiero	Trunk, tronco, baule
	Thousand, mille, migliaia	I rust, v a confidare — one's-self, confidarsi
	Thread, filo	Truth, verità.
	Three, tre	Tune, aria
Table, tavola	Through, per, a traverso	Tarbot, rombo.
Take, v a prendere — a walk, fare una passeggiata. — away, condur via — care, aver cura — off, levare, <i>or</i> levarsi	Throw, v a gettare	Turk, Turkish, Turco
Talent, talento	Thunder, tuono	Turmoil, fracasso
Talk, v a chiacchierare	Thursday, giovedì	Tutor, precettore, maestro.
Talker, parlatore, ciarlone	Thy, il tuo, la tua, i tuoi, le tue	Twelve, dodici
Tall, grande, alto	Ticket, biglietto	Twenty, venti
Tartary, Tartaria	Tiger, tigre, f	Twice, due vol'te
Tax, taxation, tassa	Till, fino, infino	Twilight, crepuscolo.
Tea, tè — cup, tazza da tè	Time, tempo, volta (see rule 602)	Two, due
Teach, v a insegnare	Tint, tinta, colore, m.	Tyrant, tiranno.
	Tired, stanco	

- Ugly, brutto  
 Umbrella, ombrello  
 Uncle, zio  
 Uncommon, straordinario  
 Under, sotto  
 Understand, v a capire  
 (like finire)  
 Understanding, ingegno  
 Undertake, v a intraprendere  
 Undertaking, impresa  
 Unfortunate, sfortunato  
 Unfortunately, sfortunatamente  
 Uniform, uniforme, m  
 Universal, universale  
 University, università  
 Unless, a meno che  
 Unpardonable, impardonabile  
 Unshackle, v a sguanare  
 Until, fino  
 Up, upon, su, sopra — up  
 and down, su e giù  
 Uranus, Urano  
 Us, noi  
 Use (to be accustomed), v  
 n solere — To use (to  
 make use of), v a ser-  
 versì di — To use (to  
 wear out), v a usare  
 Useful, utile  
 Useless, inutile
- V  
 Vain, vano, inutile In —,  
 invano  
 Valour, valore, m  
 Valuable, prezioso  
 Variety, varietà  
 Vase, vaso  
 Va-t, vasto  
 Venice, Venezia  
 Venus, Venere  
 Verb, verbo  
 Verdure, verdura  
 Verse, verso, poesia  
 Blank —, verso sciolto  
 Very, molto, assai — much,  
 moltissimo — soon,  
 presto, fra poco  
 Vessel, vascello, nave, f  
 Vice, vizio  
 Vicious, vizioso  
 Victim, vittima  
 Victory, vittoria
- View, vista prospettiva —  
 v a esaminare  
 Village, villaggio  
 Vindictive, vindicativo  
 Virtue, virtù, f  
 Visit, v a visitare  
 Vivacity, vivacità  
 Vivid, vivido, allegro  
 Voice, voce, f  
 Volcano, vulcano  
 Vote, v a votare
- W  
 Waistcoat, panciotto, sot-  
 toveste, giù  
 Wait, v n aspettare  
 Walter, gr/one  
 Wales, Gallia  
 Walk, passeggiata  
 Walk, v n camminare  
 Wall, muro  
 Wallet, valigia  
 Wander, v a vagare  
 Want, mancanza  
 Want, v n abbisognare di  
 War, guerra  
 Warble, v a cantare  
 Warlike, bellicoso  
 Warm, caldo, ardente  
 Warmly, affettuosamente  
 Warrior, guerriero  
 Wash (one's-self), v a la-  
 versì  
 Watch, orologio  
 Water, v a annaffiare  
 Water, acqua Soda —, ac-  
 qua di seltz  
 Wave, onda  
 Way, strada, modo, maniera  
 We, noi  
 Weapon, arma  
 Wear, v a portare  
 Weather, tempo  
 Wednesday, mercoledì  
 Week, settimana  
 Weight, peso  
 Well, bene  
 Well! Ebbene!  
 Western, occidentale  
 What, che, che cosa, quale,  
 ciò che  
 Whatever, checché  
 When, quando  
 Whence, donde  
 Where, dove  
 Wherever, ovunque  
 Whether, se  
 Which, che, quale
- While, whilst, mentre  
 White, bianco  
 Who, he who, chi  
 Whole, tutto  
 Whom, cui, quale, &c.  
 Whose, di che, del quale,  
 &c (see rule 619)  
 Why? perché?  
 Wide, largo  
 Widower, vedovo  
 Wife, moglie  
 William, Guglielmo  
 Wind, vento  
 Window, finestra  
 Wine, vino  
 Winter, inverno  
 Wise, saggio, savio  
 Wisely, saviamente  
 Wish (to desire), v a bra-  
 mare, desiderare — To  
 wish (to somebody  
 else), v a augurare  
 Wit, ingegno, spirito, bell'  
 ingegno  
 With, con  
 Without, senza, fuori  
 Witness, v a assistere a  
 Witty, spiritoso  
 Woman, donna  
 Wonderful, meraviglioso  
 Wood, bosco  
 Wool, lana  
 Word, parola  
 Work, lavoro  
 Work, v a lavorare  
 Workman, operaio  
 World, mondo  
 Worst, peggiore  
 Worthy, degno  
 Wound, ferita  
 Write, v a scrivere  
 Writing-desk, scrittoio  
 Writing paper, carta da  
 scrivere  
 Wrought iron, ferro battuto  
 or manellato  
 Y  
 Yard, braccio  
 Year, anno  
 Yellowish, giallognolo  
 Yes, sì  
 Yesterday, ieri  
 Yet, ancora  
 Yield, v a cedere  
 You, voi, ella [giovinoito  
 Young, giovane — man,  
 Your, vostro — self, voi,  
 voi medesimo.

## VOCABULARY.

## PART II.

## ITALIAN—ENGLISH.

A  
A, to, at  
Abbandonata, abandoned  
Accanto, at the side of  
Acqui, water  
Addorme, to lull to sleep  
Aere, air (see page 114)  
Affanni, he afflicts  
Affanno affanni, sorrow, sorrows  
Affetti affection  
Affidi you trust  
Affrettu she hastens  
Ah! alas  
Al all, all to the  
Alba, dawn  
Allegri, rejoice  
Alma, soul, mind (see page 114)  
Almen at least  
Alpe Alpi Alps  
Alta high  
Altar, altar  
Altezza, height  
Altier, proud  
Altr, other, another — che, more than  
Altru, others  
Ama, he loves  
Amator, lover  
Amal, amala, both  
Amico friendly  
Amirato, I admire  
Amor, amore, love  
Amoroso, love inspiring  
Anche, and, also  
Ancor, also  
Andar, gait  
Anelo, breathless  
Angelica, angelic

Angusta, narrow  
Anima, soul  
Anno, anni, year, years  
Ansia, anxiety  
Appare, it appears  
Appena, scarcely  
Appressa, approaching  
Aprile, April, spring  
Arbitro, judge  
Arbo cello, shrub  
Ardet it was burning  
Ardiscon, they dare  
Ardor, warmth  
Ardur, difficult  
Arenar areni sands, shores  
Argento, silver  
Aria air  
Armato armed  
Armore, fragrance  
Aria, I burnt  
Ascolta, listen  
Aspettando, awaiting  
Assalto, it assailed  
Assi (si) pl. I humbly  
Assonno it lulls to sleep  
Attende he waits  
Attenti he prostrates  
Attonita, astonish  
Aure breeze (see page 114)  
Aurati, golden  
Aureo golden  
Auretta gentle breeze (see page 114)  
Aurora, dawn  
Avanza, it advances  
Avea, I had  
Avezza, accustomed  
Avvien, it happens  
Avvio, it sent him  
Avvolgea, twisted

Avvolge (s') coils up.  
Azzurina, azure

B  
Bacia, it kisses  
Bagno, it bathes  
Ballo, ball, dance.  
Basso, low  
Battaglia, battle  
Beate, happy  
Bella, belle, bella, beautiful, beauty  
Bella, beauty  
Bella, beauty, beauties (see page 114)  
Ben, love  
Bene although  
Bene blessing  
Benever, it is quite true  
Beneficent, benefactor  
Benefico, beneficent  
Benignamente kindly  
Braccia, braccia, arm, arms.  
Brando, sword  
Brillar, to shine  
Brina, hoar frosts

C  
Cada, it falls  
Calde, he it fell  
Cagione, cause  
Calpestu, to trample on.  
Calpesto, to tread upon  
Campo, campi field, fields  
Cangiare, to change  
Canuto song  
Canto, song  
Canzone canzoni, song, songs  
Capet hair (see page 114)  
Capo, head

Caro, cari, dear	Cruenta, blood-stained	Dura, it lasts.
Casti, chaste, pure.	Cui, whom, which	<b>E</b>
Cavalli, horses	Cumulo, heap	
Cedrai, citron trees	Cuor, cuore, heart.	
Celere, rapid	Cura, care	
Celeste, heavenly		E, ed, and
Ceneri, ashes	<b>I</b>	È, he, she, it is.
Che, ch', who, that, what,	Da, from, by	Fecco, behold
which, so that	Da, she gives	Egli, he
Chè, for, why	Dal, dall' dai, dagli, from	Ella, she
Chi, who, he who, whom	the	Empi, you fill
Chiama, he, it calls	Danni, ill, woes	Fra, it was
Chiamando, calling	Danze, dances	Erano, they were
Chiare, clear	Dar, to give	Erbetta, grass
Chiede, he asks	Dato, (having) given	Erma, secluded
Chiesi, I asked	Degradato, degraded	Erta, it wanders
Chinati, bent down	Dei, gods	Esca, fool, bait
Chinam, we bend low	Dell, della, dell', dei, de',	Esecrando, execranda, ex-
Chinò (si), it bent itself	degli, of the	crable
Chiuso, it encircled	Deserta, deserted	Esiglio, exile
Chiuse, he closed, finished	Desir, desires	Essi, they
Cielo, ciel, si y, heavens	Desto, it kindled	Estrume, last
Cinta, girt	Destra, right	Eterne, eternal, eternal
Circonfusa, bathed	Di, d', of	<b>F</b>
Codardo, cowardly	Di, days, days	Fa, makes Si fa, it makes
Col, col', co', with the	Dice, he, she says, names,	itself
Colline, hills	Dicendo, saying	Falso, false
Color, colours	Diciam, we say	Fanti, foot soldiers
Colora, it colours	Difende, it defends	Fare, far, to make, to do
Coltrice, bed (lit coverlet)	Diletto, delight, pleasure	Farsi, to make itself
Com, how, as if, like	Dimmi, tell me, bid me	Fate, furies
Commosso, moved	Dio, God	Fato, fate, destiny
Compiangi, you sympathise	Dipinto, painted	Fattor, maker
with	Dir, a to say	Favella, language
Comune, common	Dirni, to tell me	Fe', he did
Con, with	Discorda, it is out of har-	Fede, faith, belief
Conchiglia, sea shell	mony	Fedele, faithful
Concitato, rapid	Disdegna, she disdains	Ferire, furir, to wound,
Conflitto, conflict	Disegno, design	wounding
Confuso, confused, inter-	Disotto, under	Ferro, weapon
mingled	Disperò, he lost hope	Ferve, it is fervent, boils
Consegno, I consign	Diversa, different	Fiera, fierce, brave
Conserte, crossed	Divien, it becomes	Figlia, daughter
Consola, gives consolation	Divini, heavenly	Fin, even
Contende, it objects	Divisi, divided	Fin, end
Contrait, countries	Dolcezza, sweetness	Flor, fiori, flowers
Contro, against	Dolci, sweet	Ignobile, doleful
Convalli, valleys	Donde, whence	Florida, blooming
Coralhi, corals	Donna, woman, lady	Futto, waves, sea
Core, cor, heart	Dono, gift	Follia, folly
Coronata, crowned	Dopo, after	Folti, thick
Cosa, thing, being	Dov', dove, where	Fonte, fonti, fountain,
Così, thus, even so	Dovunque, wherever	fountains, springs
Creator, creating	Drappello, troop of soldiers	Forma, form
Crede, it believes	Dubbiosi, anxious	Forse, perhaps
Crederò, I shall think	Duc, duke, leader	Fortè, brave man
Croce, cross	Due, two	Fosse, he was
Crudele, cruel	Dunque, then	Fra, between, amongst
		Fiattelli, brothers

Fronde, leaves, branches  
 Fronte, brow  
 Fu, he, it was  
 Fuga, flight  
 Fulgor, splendour  
 Fulmine, thunderbolt  
 Fulminei, beaming  
 Furento, maddened  
 Furono, they were, they  
 have gone

G  
 Genio, genius  
 Gentile, gentle  
 Già, already  
 Giacque, he laid down, he  
 lay low  
 Giamaia, ever But when  
 "giamaia" is used  
 with a negation, it is  
 translated by *never*

Giardini, gardens  
 Gighi, blies  
 Giocondo, pleasant  
 Gioia, joy  
 Gioioso, happy  
 Giorno, day  
 Giovini, youth  
 Giro (noun) turn In giro,  
 around Move in giro,  
 spans the heavens.  
 Giro, I turn  
 Giunge, it arrives at it  
 Giurato, sworn  
 Gli, the, to him, to it, to  
 them

Gloria, glory  
 Gi, in, great  
 Gratitude, gratitude  
 Grato, grateful  
 Grave, heavy  
 Grazioso, graceful  
 Grembo, lap  
 Gridammo, we cried  
 Grido, gridi, cry, cries  
 Gronda, pours down  
 Guancial, pillow  
 Guardando, looking  
 Guardare, to look  
 Guardo, guardi, look, looks  
 Guerra, war  
 Guerrieri, warriors  
 Gusta, it enjoys

H  
 Ha, he, it has.  
 Hai, you have  
 Hanno, they have.

I  
 I, the  
 Ignobile, ignoble  
 Il, the, it  
 Immermore, unconscious,  
 uncared for  
 Immenso, immense  
 Immerge, he plunges  
 Immobile, motionless  
 Immortal, immortal  
 Impalidir, becoming pale  
 Imperio, command  
 Impurh it decks with pearls  
 Implora, he implores  
 Imprese, he undertook  
 In, on

Incalza, pursue hotly  
 Incarco, burden  
 Incerto, uncertain  
 Incontro, against  
 Indocile, unchecked  
 Indomato, unabated  
 Indura, he hardens himself  
 Inerte, idle  
 Inestinguibil, unquenched,  
 unassuaged  
 Infelice, unhappy  
 Innanzi, forward  
 Intendei, to understand  
 Intusa, soaked  
 In van, in vain  
 Invidia, jealousy  
 Io, I, I  
 Ira, anger  
 Istante, instant

L  
 La, le, l', the, her, it  
 Lago, lake  
 Lampo, lightning  
 Lasciarmi, to leave me  
 Lati, sides  
 Laudate, v a to praise  
 Laureti, laurel groves  
 Le, the, from her  
 Le, her, it  
 Li, them  
 Lignaggio, race, lineage  
 Lingua, tongue  
 Linguaggio, language  
 Lo, the, him, it  
 Lontana, distant  
 Lor, them, their  
 Luce, light  
 Lui, him, he, it  
 Lume, light, brilliancy  
 Luna, moon  
 Lunghi, long

M  
 Ma, but  
 Madri, mothers  
 Maga, enchantress  
 Maggior, greater  
 Mai, ever  
 Mal, badly  
 Male, ill, woe  
 Man, hand  
 Manco, less  
 Mandola, mandoline.  
 Manipoli, battalions  
 Mar, mari, sea, seas  
 Maraviglia, wander.  
 Marina, sea-shore A-by  
 the sea shore  
 Marte, mars, war  
 Massimo, greatest  
 Mattin, morning  
 Mattine, mornings  
 Mattutina, in the morning  
 Me, m', me, from me  
 Melanconia, melancholy  
 Memoire, recollection  
 Mente, mind, memory  
 Mentr', whilst  
 Mercè, reward  
 Meriggio, mid day  
 Mesce, it mixes itself  
 Mezzo, middle  
 Mi, m', me, to me  
 Mici, my  
 Miglior, better  
 Mille, a thousand  
 Mio, mia, my, mine  
 Mita, he looks  
 Miracol, miracle  
 Mifero, miserable  
 Mista, mingled  
 Misura, measures  
 Mobili, changing  
 Mondo, world  
 Moule, necklace  
 Montagna, mountain  
 Monte, monti, hill, hills.  
 Morir, morire, to die  
 Mormorando, murmuring.  
 Morrà, he, it will die  
 Morta, dead  
 Mortal, mortale, mortal  
 Mortalmente, mortally.  
 Morle, death  
 Mostrare, to show  
 Mostrasi, she shows her-  
 self  
 Mova (si), there moves.  
 Move, it moves  
 Muta, dumb-struck



**N**  
 Nacque, he was born  
 Narrar, to relate  
 Nato, born  
 Natura, nature  
 Naufrago, shipwrecked  
 Ne, of it, to us  
 Ne, nor  
 Nel, nella, nell', nei, ne',  
 in the  
 Nembo, cloud, shower  
 Nev, snows  
 Ninf, nymph  
 Nodi, curls  
 Noi, we  
 Nomo (si), he named him  
 self  
 Non, not  
 Notte, night  
 Nudice, mother  
 Nunzio, announcement  
 Nuovi, new  
 Nuvoli, clouds

**O**  
 O, or, either  
 O, O!  
 Obbedir, to obey  
 Oblio, oblivion, neglect  
 Occhi, eyes  
 Od, o, ode, one hears  
 Odio, hatred  
 Odoroso, perfumed  
 Ogni, each, every  
 Ognor, always  
 Ognun, each one  
 Olenti, sweet scented  
 Oltre, beyond  
 Oltraggio, outrage  
 Ombra, shade  
 Ombroso, shady  
 Onde, onde wave, waves  
 Onde, by which  
 Onest, honest, modest  
 Onor, honours  
 Onorati, he honoured  
 Opre, work  
 Or, ora now  
 Ora, ora, hour, his  
 Orbi, heretics  
 Orgoglio, pride  
 Orma, mark, foot print  
 Ornato, adorned  
 Oro, gold  
 Oscura, dark  
 Ottene, he, it obtains  
 Ozio, idleness

**P**  
 Pacato, calm  
 Pace, peace  
 Padri, fathers  
 Pagine, pages  
 Pago, satisfied  
 Palmeti, palm groves  
 Par, pare, it appears  
 Parea, it appeared  
 Pari, equal  
 Parlan, they speak  
 Parola, parole, word, words  
 Passo, it passed away  
 Pavid, terrified  
 Pel, per, for the, through  
 the  
 Pellegrini, wandering  
 Penta, pent  
 Pundice, brow of the hill  
 Penne, feathers, wings  
 Pensando, thinking  
 Pensieri, thoughts  
 Per, for, through, in order  
 to, on account of  
 Perche, why  
 Percossa, struck  
 Perde, he lost  
 Periglio (poet for pericolo),  
 danger  
 Peril, peril  
 Pers, it weighs  
 Petto, breast  
 Picante, charming  
 Piacere, pleasure, pleasures  
 Piangi, weep  
 Pianto, weeping  
 Pic, foot  
 Piena, full  
 Pietra, pity, sympathy  
 Pictosi, solemn  
 Pictosi, compassionate  
 Piramidi, Pyramids  
 Più, more, it plus, the most  
 Piacu, to pacify  
 Poi, then, after  
 Polvere (poet.), polvere, dust  
 Ponere, he places himself  
 Popolo, people  
 Portento, miracle  
 Posi, you rest  
 Posso, he rested  
 Posteri, posterity  
 Potere, power  
 Praticello, meadow  
 Preme, weighs you down  
 Premio, reward  
 Prende, it takes  
 Preparazione, preparation

Prepari (ti), you prepare  
 yourself  
 Primavera, spring  
 Primo, first  
 Privo, deprived  
 Procellosa, stormy  
 Prode, shores  
 Profonda, profound  
 Prova, he experiences  
 Pivo, he experienced  
 Prudenti, prudent  
 Pugna, he fights  
 Puo, he, it can  
 Pur yet, merely, really  
 Pura, pure  
 Pur dianzi, just now

**Q**  
 Qual, quale, who, which,  
 what, like  
 Quando, when  
 Quante, how many  
 Quei, those, he who  
 Quel, quella, quell', that  
 Questo, questa, this  
 Qui, here  
 Quinci, on this side  
 Quindi, on that side

**R**  
 Raccogli, stay  
 Raddoppia, redouble  
 Raggio, ray  
 Rai rays (see page 114)  
 Rapivi, you stole  
 Ren, wicked (see page 121)  
 Recinto, surrounded, gilt  
 Regia, royal abode  
 Regina, queen  
 Regno, reign, power  
 Remote, distant  
 Rende, it gives  
 Respingono, clash against  
 Ria, insulting  
 Riaprendo, re opening  
 Ricantando, singing over  
 again  
 Ricchezza, riches  
 Riceve, it receives  
 Ricosco, I recognise  
 Ride, he, it smiles  
 Rimborso, re echoes  
 Rinserra, it contains  
 Rio, brook  
 Ripenso, he thought again  
 Rischio, risks, perils  
 Riso, smile  
 Risorse, he rose again

Risplende, it shines  
 Risponde, it answers  
 Ritornera, it will return  
 Ritornerranno, they will  
     return  
 Rivo, brook  
 Rondinella, swallow  
 Rose, roses  
 Rote, wheels  
 Rugiada, dew

Sa, it knows how to, it can  
 Sacrilego, sacrilegious  
 Saggio, wise man  
 Saluta, she greets, salutes  
 Salutando, greeting  
 Salva, safe, free  
 San, they know  
 Sangue, blood  
 Sanno, they know  
 Sarà, it will be  
 Scarsi, scarce, bereft  
 Scendi, you descend  
 Scernere, to perceive  
 Scese, it descended  
 Scherzi, it may sport, it  
     may ripple  
 Schierato, in battle array  
 Schiudon, they open  
 Scioglie, it bestows  
 Sconsolata, disconsolate  
 Scoppio, it burst out  
 Scorato, discouraged  
 Scorrea, it was looking  
 Scorni, you cross over  
 Scrivi, write  
 Se, s', if  
 Se stesso, himself  
 Secoli, centuries  
 Securo, secure, fearless  
 Segno, sign, mark.  
 Sei, s', you are  
 Sempre, always  
 Sen, seno, breast  
 Senso, sense, sentiment  
 Sentendosi, hearing her-  
     self  
 Sentenza, decision  
 Senti, you feel  
 Sentier, paths  
 Senza', senza, without  
 Sera, evening  
 Sereno, serena, cloudless.  
 Serve, he serves  
 Settembre, September  
 Sfere, spheres  
 Sida, he defies

Sfolgorante, shining  
 Si, s', himself, herself,  
     itself, themselves  
 Sì, so much  
 Sia, she may be  
 Sicche, in such a manner  
     that  
 Siccome, just as  
 Silenzio, silence  
 Simile, similar  
 Sin che, so long as  
 Sinistra, left  
 Sirena, syren  
 So, I know  
 Sofferito, suffered  
 Soglio, throne  
 Sogno, dream  
 Sol, solo  
 Sola, alone, only  
 Sole, sun  
 Solingo, lonely  
 Solitario, solitary  
 Sottomessi, humbly  
 Son, I am  
 Sonito, sound, din  
 Sonno, sleep  
 Sono, I am, they are  
 Sopra, on, concerning  
 Sorge, it rises  
 Sospiro, sigh  
 Sospira, sigh  
 Sott' onda, submarine  
 Sovra, upon  
 Souvenir, remembrance  
 Spade, swords  
 Sparir, disappearing  
 Sparito, disappeared  
 Sparsi, dishevelled  
 Sparve, he disappeared  
 Speme, hope (see page 114)  
 Speranza, hope  
 Sperar, to hope  
 Sperdi, do thou divert  
 Spiegato, unfurled  
 Spirabil, breathing.  
 Spiro, spirit  
 Spirito, spirito (see page  
     114), spirit.  
 Spoglia, corpse  
 Spogliar, to take off  
 Spose, wives  
 Sposo, husband, mate  
 Spregio, contempt, thral-  
     dom  
 Sprezzato, despised.  
 Spunta, it appears, looms  
     in the distance  
 Squillo, blast of a trumpet

Sta, it remains.  
 Stanpar, to mark  
 Stanca, fatigued  
 Stanche, fatigued  
 Stanzetta, little room  
 Stellato, starry sky  
 Stesso, himself  
 Stette, he, it stood  
 Stolti, foolish  
 Straniero, foreigner  
 Strappar, to snatch away  
 Strazio, torture  
 Su, upon, on  
 Subit', di subit', at once  
 Subito, sudden  
 Sul, sulla, sull', on the, in  
     the  
 Suo, sua, sue, his, hers, its  
 Suolo, soil  
 Suon, suoni, sound, sounds  
 Suonavan, they sounded  
 Superba, proud.  
 Supina, languid.  
 Suscita, it raises up  
 Sventura, misfortune.

## T

Tacito, silent  
 Tacque, it was silent  
 Tale, tal, such, even so  
 Tanto, so great  
 Te, t', you, to you  
 Temie, it fears  
 Tempo, time  
 Tempre, quality  
 Tenea dietro, it followed.  
 Tenebre, darkness  
 Tende, tents  
 Terra, earth, land  
 Terreno, terren, ground.  
 Terror, terror  
 Tesa, extended, intent  
 Ti, t, you, yourself  
 Tiene, he holds  
 Tiranni, tyrants  
 Tolta, taken away  
 Tomba, tomb  
 Tornata, having returned  
     (see rule 200)  
 Torrenti, torrents  
 Tra, amongst, between  
 Traluce, appears, shines  
 Trapasserò, I shall outpass  
 Traspar, appears  
 Trasporto, it transported  
 Trasse, unheated  
 Tremando, trembling  
 Trepida, anxious

Trionfi, triumphs  
 Triquetra, ancient name for  
   Sicilia, Sicily  
 Tristo, sad  
 Tromba, trumpet  
 Trovcai, you will find  
 Troneator, abbreviator  
 Tu, thou  
 Tua, tue, thy  
 Tuo, thy  
 Tuoi, thy, you  
 Turba, crowd  
 Tutte tutti, all  
 Tutto, tutta, all, everything

## U

Ubbidir, v n to obey  
 Udir, v a to hear  
 Uluma, last  
 Umana, human  
 Umilita, humility  
 Umoi moisture  
 Un, uno una, un' one an a  
 Uomo, uom, man  
 Urna, urn

## V

Va, he, she, it goes  
 Vago, vaga beautiful, lovely

Val, it is worth  
 Valida, helping  
 Valli, bulwarks  
 Vanno, they go  
 Vasta, vast, wide  
 Vedo, I see  
 Vedovetta, little widow  
 Vedrai, you will see  
 Vegliardi (poet for "vec-  
   chi)," old men  
 Vclo, vcl  
 Vendetta, vengeance  
 Venduto, sold  
 Vengr, he comes  
 Venne, nevonne, he, it came  
 Venuto, vcnuta, come  
 Ver, truth  
 Vera, true  
 Veri, true  
 Vermigli, red  
 Verone, verandah  
 Verrà, it will come  
 Versar, to pour down, to  
   bestow  
 Verso, towards  
 Vespertina, in the evening.  
 Vessillo, standard  
 Veste, it clothes  
 Vesti, clothes

Vicende, events  
 Vide, he, it saw  
 Vidi, I saw  
 Viene, vien, it comes  
 Vigile, vigilant  
 Vile, vile A—, in cc.  
   tempt  
 Virtù, virtue, valour  
 Viso, face  
 Vista, sight, view  
 Vita, life  
 Vittoria, victory  
 Viviamo, we live  
 Vivo, lively, brilliant  
 Vivrò, I shall live  
 Voce, voice  
 Voi, you  
 Volle, he willed  
 Volo, flight.  
 Volsero, they turned them-  
   selves  
 Volta, vault, dungeon  
 Volte, times  
 Volto, volto, face, faces  
 Vuoi? will you?

## Z

Zaffiro, sapphire  
 Zeffiretto, zephyr, breeze.

# WORKS BY THE LATE PROF. N. PERINI.

PUBLISHED BY

MESSRS HACHETTE & Co, 18, KING WILLIAM STREET,

CHARING CROSS, LONDON, W C

**"La Vita Nuova,"** by Dante Alighieri, with Notes and Comments in English Imperial 16mo, cloth lettered, 2s 6d

**"A First Italian Reading Book,"** containing Prose and Poetry, with Rules for the Pronunciation of the Italian Language, with Notes, Hints on Italian Versification, and a Complete Vocabulary of all the words contained in the text in which the "tonic accent" is marked in darker type, and the proper pronunciation of the letters "E," "O," "S," and "Z" are indicated Cloth gilt, 2s 6d

**The First Chapters of "I Promessi Sposi,"** by Manzoni, followed by a repetition of the text with an English Interlinear Translation Cloth gilt, 2s 6d

**"La Clemenza di Tito,"** by Metastasio, followed by a repetition of the text of the First Act, with an English Interlinear Translation, and numbers indicating the position of the words in the text Cloth gilt, 2s 6d

**Questions and Exercises on the Grammar and Idioms of the French Language;** with answers to the most Important Questions, and a Repetition of all the Questions, for the purpose of Class, or Self-Examination Ninth edition Price 2s

The above work, now in the hands of all Candidates preparing for all the Competitive Examinations, contains all the most important questions on the Grammar and Idioms of the French Language

Each question is followed by a blank for the answer thereto

**"The Bridge,"** or Exercises on Useful English Words, Phrases and Proverbs, for translation into other languages On the same plan as the above-mentioned work Second edition Price 9d

**Extracts in English Prose, from the Best Authors;** arranged progressively for translation into other languages The extracts are divided into numbered sections, to facilitate translation at sight, in class Third edition Price 2s

**Five-and-Twenty Exercises on French Verbs,** with an Index for Examination Large 8vo, 24 pages, in paper cover Eighth edition Price 6d

**A "Key"** to this work, sold to Teachers only Price 1s

The above work is intended to meet a want long felt in English Schools The plan of the book is very simple, and yet it goes thoroughly into the subject It possesses, moreover, the great advantage of entirely relieving the teacher of the tiresome and laborious task of setting verbs to conjugate

**Genealogical and Chronological Tables of the Kings and Princes of France.** Price 1s

THIRD EDITION

# School Gymnastics on the Swedish System

FULLY ILLUSTRATED

*A Handbook of Physical Exercises for Elementary Schools*

By ALLAN BROMAN

OF THE ROYAL GYMNASIUM, STOCKHOLM, LATE ORGANISING  
MASTER OF PHYSICAL EXERCISES TO THE SCHOOL BOARD FOR LONDON

Crown 8vo, cloth lettered, 3s 6d

## A HISTORY OF THAT OLD HISTORICAL HOUSE BURLEY-ON-THE-HILL.

By PEARL FINCH.

In Two handsome vols Crown 4to, imitation parchment, gilt tops

Beautifully Illustrated with Photogravure Frontispiece and about  
Seventy Collotype plates, *facsimile* Letter of Charles II.,  
and many old Autographs and Plans of Buildings

*Only 200 Copies printed.* Price £2 2s

London:

JOHN BALE, SONS AND DANIELSSON, LTD

OXFORD HOUSE,

83 89, GREAT TITCHFIELD STREET, OXFORD STREET, W

